ADAM'S
LATIN GRAMMAR,

WITH SOME IMPROVEMENTS,

AND THE

FOLLOWING ADDITIONS:

RULES FOR THE RIGHT PRONUNCIATION

OF THE

LATIN LANGUAGE;

A

METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE;

A

LIST OF LATIN AUTHORS

ARRANGED ACCORDING TO THE DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE;

TABLES,

SHOWING THE VALUE OF THE VARIOUS COINS, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES,

USED AMONG THE ROMANS.

BY BENJAMIN A. GOULD,
MASTER OF THE PUBLIC LATIN-SCHOOL OF BOSTON.

It must be remembered, that if the grammar be the first book put into the learner's hands, it should also be the last to leave them. *Pref. to Buttmann's Greek Gram.*

This Edition is adopted by the University at Cambridge, Mass. and is recommended to the use of those who are preparing for that Seminary.

BOSTON:
HILLIARD, GRAY, AND CO.

1839.

STEREOTYPED BY LYMAN THURSTON & CO.
BOSTON.

PREFACE.

The experience of twenty-six years, and the united approbation of the most judicious instructers in our country, give ample testimony to the excellence of Adam's Latin Grammar. And it is worthy of remark, that, amidst the changes of almost every thing connected with education, this work has maintained its popularity throughout the country since the year 1799, when it was recommended by the University at Cambridge. But several typographical errors, which were adopted from that Edinburgh edition, from which the first American edition was copied, have been transmitted through subsequent editions to the present time with such scrupulous exactness, that they have now become canonized, and are received as authority. Besides these, other errors have been creeping in, till a thorough revision of the work has become necessary.

At the time this book was first compiled, the state of education in Scotland may have been such as to render the connexion of the Latin with the English necessary, in the manner they were blended by Dr. Adam; but that necessity does not exist in this country, where English grammar is separately taught from the more complete systems of Lowth and Murray. For this reason, and because what is not used in a manual becomes a hindrance, the portion pertaining exclusively to English grammar has been omitted in this edition; and some few additions and alterations have been made which were deemed important. But in all cases where it was practicable, the words of the original grammar have been preserved.

The following are some of the principal alterations in the present edition. The powers and sounds of the letters are explained—a few concise rules are given for the right

Pronunciation of Latin — the quantity of the penultimate vowel is marked in every word throughout the book, where it is not determined by being placed before another vowel, a double consonant, or two single ones. The rules for pronunciation are founded on the system of Walker; and are agreeable to the usage of the University at Cambridge. They are general, and perhaps may admit of some exceptions. But it is hoped they will do something towards bringing about a greater uniformity of pronunciation; an object greatly to be desired. For the vicious pronunciation, arising from an entire neglect of the subject in some schools, and from the whimsical peculiarities of others, affords no little trouble and vexation to the tutor, when all the varieties of it are brought together in collegiate recitations. Besides, it is all-important that a correct pronunciation should be adopted from the beginning. So strong is the force of habit, that it has been found almost impossible to correct the pronunciation of boys who have been allowed to pronounce incorrectly in the commencement of their studies. This is of much more importance than most persons imagine. All parents are not sensible, when they allow their children to learn their Latin grammar first at home, without attention to this subject, or to commence the study of Latin with persons avowedly unfit to carry them through the course proposed, that they are preparing years of labour for the instructer to whom they are ultimately destined. But it is nevertheless true, that years have been spent in correcting habits of corrupt pronunciation formed in a few months; and sometimes it has been found impossible to correct them altogether.

The article on Gender, which was very incomplete in the original, has been written anew, and remarks on it, which were scattered in different places, have been brought together. The English has been added to the Nouns and Verbs used as paradigms. A greater variety of Nouns of the third declension are declined as paradigms; and several defective, irregular, and compound words have also been declined. The lists of Defective Nouns have been carefully revised and corrected. In declining the Adjectives, all unnecessary repetition has been avoided,

and an example in *ns* added. The table of Numeral Adjectives has been somewhat enlarged by the addition of the higher numerical letters. A few additional observations on the Pronouns have been subjoined. A paradigm has been given, in each of the four congregations, of a Verb displayed in all its parts, and with the corresponding English annexed to all. An example of a Verb in *io*, of the third conjugation, has been added to the paradigms. In giving the English, a little more precision has been attempted than is observed in the original; particularly in the *imperfect* and *future* of the Indicative. A Synopsis of all the Modes and Tenses is subjoined to each Voice. The Formation of the tenses, it is hoped, will be found more intelligible and practically useful than before. Some slight alterations have been made in the subsequent matter, in order to render more prominent certain portions which were thought confused and indistinct. To the Prosody has been added a Metrical Key, or explanation of the various metres and combinations of metres used by Horace, with an Index (after the plan of Dr. Carey) to all the Odes. The remarks, which stood at the end, upon English Versification, with the Latin rules of Prosody from Ruddiman, have been omitted as useless in that place. Instead of these are substituted a List of Latin Authors, arranged according to the golden, silver, and brazen ages of Roman literature; also Tables exhibiting the value of the Coins, Weights, and Measures, used by the Romans; with some Remarks on the method of computing Sesterces, and on the grammatical solution of expressions relating to them, which are drawn from the best treatises on these difficult subjects, and may assist young students to gain a more exact knowledge of them, than is to be derived from any other book in common use; and, lastly, Lyne's Rules for Construction, and for Position.

The editor hopes that this excellent compendium will be found to have derived some additional value, in a practical point of view, from the changes above-mentioned. The more he has examined the work, and compared it with other Latin Grammars, the higher it has risen in his estimation. There is contained in this little manual almost

every thing that is necessary for the student at school or at college; while at the same time the volume is so small as to be convenient for use, even where an abridgment would be sufficient. This is an important consideration; for no abridgment or compend should ever be put into the hands of a scholar, who is afterwards to use the original work. The force of first impressions, and of local associations, renders it almost impossible to use a different Grammar from that first learned, with the same readiness. The page, the situation on the page, the type, and other circumstances connected with it in the memory, all contribute to facilitate the turning to any rule or observation desired. And no small loss of time is occasioned by that confusion which results from having learned two or three Grammars of the same language. Even *a different paging* in different editions of the same Grammar should be carefully avoided, unless there be some good reason for the change.

THE EDITOR.

Boston, June, 1825.

CONTENTS.

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; words consist of one or more syllables; syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar, which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. All the rest are consonants.

---

* In English there is one letter more, viz. W.

RULES FOR THE ACCENT.

I. In all words of two syllables, the first is accented, without regard to *quantity;* as, *hómo*, *béllum*, *érat*.

II. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* be *long* in quantity, it is accented; if *short*, the antepenult is accented; as, *radícis*, *amícus; témpŏris*, *cónsŭlis*.

Obs. In prose, when the penult is *common*, the antepenult receives the accent; but in poetry it is placed where the verse requires it.

RULES FOR THE SOUND OF THE VOWEL.

I. Every vowel has either the *long* or the *short* sound which it has in English, except *a* in the end of a word of more than one syllable; where it is sounded broad, like *ah* in *Ramah;* as, *fama*, *penna*.

The diphthongs *æ* & *œ*, ending a syllable with the accent on it, are pronounced like the long English *e;* as, *Cæsar*, *Œta*, as if written *Cesar*, *Eta;* and like short *e*, when they are followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as, *Dædălus*, *Œdĭpus*, as if written *Deddălus*, *Eddĭpus*.

II. In monosyllables, when the vowel is the *final letter*, it has the *long* sound; as, *da*, *me*, *si*, *do*, *tu;* but otherwise the *short* sound; as, *ac*, *sed*, *in*, *ob*, *huc*.

Obs. All terminations in *es*, and plural cases in *os*, both in monosyllables and polysyllables, are in England and in this country usually pronounced *long;* as, *es*, *pes*, *homĭnes; nos*, *hos*, *popŭlos*.

III. If the *penult* be *accented*, its vowel before another vowel, or a single consonant, is *long* in its sound; but before two consonants or the double consonant *x*, it has the *short* sound; as, *māter*, *fīdes*, *pietātis;* which are *long: tandem*, *longus*, *mundus*, *respondens*, *buxus;* which have the *short* sound.

IV. If the *antepenult* be accented, its vowel has the *short* sound; as, *átăvis*, *édĭte*, *régĭbus*, *temporĭbus*.

Exc. 1. When *u* comes before a single consonant, and when any accented vowel comes before another vowel, it has the long sound; as, *júdĭces*, *consúlĭbus; océănus*, *pariĕtes*, *muliĕres*.

Exc. 2. When the vowel of the penult is *e* or *i* before another vowel, the antepenultimate vowel, except *i*, has the long sound; as, *dóceo*, *aggrédior*, *palátium*.

V. An accented vowel before a mute and a liquid has usually the long sound; as, *sácra*, *muliébrĭbus*, *patria*.

THE

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

It must be kept in mind, whilst applying the rules which follow, that *Accent* and *Quantity* are wholly distinct from each other, and must not be confounded; and also, that the *quantity* of the vowels in Latin is not supposed to be expressed by the *long* or the *short* sounds we give them in English. For, in that case, we should make short all vowels long by position; as we uniformly give the short *sound* to the first syllable of such words as the following; *vannus, pignus, penna, longus,* &c. In other words we give the *long* sound to vowels that are short in quantity; as in the first syllable of *fĕro, tŭli, dătum,* &c. all of which are short in quantity. Indeed, the sound of a vowel depends very much upon its situation in a word, and the place of the accent, as may be seen in the following words, and many others; *dĕcus, rĕgo, ĕques;* in each of which we give the *long* sound to the first vowel, though short in quantity, but the *short* sound to the same vowels when the words become trisyllables; as, *dĕcŏris, rĕgĕre, ĕquĭtis;** notwithstanding they remain short as before.

For these seeming inconsistencies we can only answer by saying, we know not how the Romans sounded these vowels under like circumstances; and as we probably never shall know, it seems most rational to give vowels in Latin the same sound we should give them in our own language when similarly situated. If we take, then, *the analogy of the English* for our guide, the way is plain, and leads, perhaps, to a result as satisfactory as could be obtained by a more intricate process.

---

* This illustrates a pretty general rule, with respect to the sound of vowels, viz. that in words of two syllables, the first, being always accented, has the long sound before a single consonant; whereas in trisyllables, when the first is accented, it is generally pronounced with the *short* sound; as, *Cæsar, Cæsăris.*

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a*, *e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b*, *d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound;* and the sounds formed by the concourse of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b;* *t*, *d;* *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g;* but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes;* because their sounds may be continued, whereas the sound of *p*, *t*, and *k*, cannot be prolonged.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The first four of these are called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r;* because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla*, *stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe*, *be*, &c. but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el*, *em*, &c.

The double consonants are, *x*, *z*, and, according to some grammarians, *j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*.

c, before *a*, *o*, *u*, is sounded hard like *k:* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, soft like *s*.

g, before *a*, *o*, *u*, is sounded hard, as in the English words *gave*, *gone;* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, or another *g* followed by *e*, soft like *j;* as in *gemma*, *gigno*, *agger*.

In Latin, *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

ch have the power of *k*.

h, by some, is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

ti, before a vowel, and unaccented, have the sound of *si* or *ci;* as in *ratio*, *prudentia*.*

Except in Greek words; as *asphaltion;* and when preceded by *s* or *x*, as, *istius*, *mixtio;* or in the beginning of words, as, *tiăra;* or in infinitives formed by paragoge, as *flectier*, *mittier*.

---

* Pronounced *ra-she-o*, *pru-den-she-a*.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong;* if not, an *Improper Diphthong.*

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au, eu, ei;* as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis.* To these some, not improperly, add other three; namely, *ai,* as in *Maia; oi,* as in *Troia;* and *ui,* as in *Harpuia,* or in *cui,* and *huic,* pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two; *ae,* or when the vowels are written together, *æ;* as, *aetas,* or *ætas, oe* or *œ;* as, *poena,* or *pœna;* in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately; thus, *aetas, poena.*

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as, *a, ad, hanc.*

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g, q,* or *s;* as in *lingua, qui, suadeo;* where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables;* of two, *Dissyllables;* and of more than two, *Polysyllables.* But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables.*

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *ăb-ūtor, ĭn-ops, proptĕr-ea, et-ĕnim, vel-ut,* &c.

Observe, a long syllable is marked with a horizontal line, [–]; as in *amāre;* or with a circumflex accent, [^]; as in *amâris.* A short syllable is marked with a curved line, [˘]; as in *omnĭbŭs.*

What pertains to the quantity of syllables and to verse will be treated of hereafter.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words is called *Etymology* or *Analogy*.*

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound is called their *Figure;* into primitive and derivative, their *Species*, or sort.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ĕgo*, I; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdŏceo*, I unteach; *ĕgŏmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *dŏceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *piĕtas*, piety; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words are called *Parts of Speech.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; viz.

1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle;* declined:

2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction;* undeclined.†

---

* All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives.* Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home,*" the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

† Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of wor

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.*

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy*, *school*, *book*.

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals: as the names of persons and places; such are *Cæsar*, *Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal*, *man*, *beast*, *fish*, *fowl*, &c.

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*the* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns;* as, *hardness*, *goodness*, *whiteness*, *virtue*, *justice*, *piety*, &c.

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number;* when two or more, of the *plural*.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words, which admit of different terminations, were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

* The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun:* it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders; *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The cases are six; *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.*

There are two numbers; *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declensions*.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong; the second has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *ûs*; and the fifth has *ëi*, in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.†

* Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *regis*, of a king, *or* of the king.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cădo*, to fall; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case; and the other cases, *cāsus oblīqui*, the oblique cases.

† Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas*, *Thoma*; *Anchīses*, *Anchīse*; *Păris*, *Pari*; *Panthus*, *Panthu*; *Pallas*, *-antis*, *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrătes*, seldom *-e*; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais*, *Mysis*, *Pallas*, *-ădis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name be spoken of; as, *duŏdĕcim Cæsăres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a*.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	*a king*,	Nom.	*kings*,
Gen. *of*	*a king*,	Gen. *of*	*kings*,
Dat. *to* or *for*	*a king*,	Dat. *to* or *for*	*kings*,
Acc.	*a king*,	Acc.	*kings*,
Voc. *O*	*king*,	Voc. *O*	*kings*,
Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*a king*.	Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*kings*.

2. With the definite article, *the*.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	*the king*,	Nom.	*the kings*,
Gen. *of*	*the king*,	Gen. *of*	*the kings*,
Dat. *to* or *for*	*the king*,	Dat. *to* or *for*	*the kings*,
Acc.	*the king*,	Acc.	*the kings*,
Voc. *O*	*king*,	Voc. *O*	*kings*,
Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*the king*.	Abl. *with, from, in, by,*	*the kings*

GENDER.

Things considered according to their kinds are either male, or female, or neither of the two; and on this distinction of the sexes did gender originally depend. Males were said to be of the *masculine gender;* females of the *feminine gender;* and all other things of *neuter gender;* or, as the word implies, of *neither gender*.

But in Latin, although males are masculine, and females feminine, there are many nouns having no sex, which are said to be of different genders, chiefly from being joined with an adjective of one termination and not of another. Thus *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective of that termination which is applied to females; as, *bŏna penna*, a good pen, and not *bŏnus penna*. The gender of these nouns depends on their termination and different declension.

The gender, as depending on the sex, has been called *natural* gender; on termination and declension, *grammatical* gender

Grammarians distinguish the genders by the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter

Nouns which are used to signify either the male or the female are said to be of the *common* gender; that is, are either masculine or feminine, according to the sense. Such nouns as are not found uniformly of the same grammatical gender, but sometimes of one gender and sometimes of another, are said to be of the *doubtful* gender.

The *common* gender differs from the *doubtful* in this, that, as the signification of the noun includes the two sexes, it is always put in the masculine when applied to a male, and in the feminine when applied to a female; as, *hic conjux*, a husband; *hæc conjux*, a wife; and is confined to the masculine and feminine gender. Whereas a noun of the *doubtful* gender, being so only by usage, and not in sense, may be either masculine or feminine; as, *hic finis*, or *hæc finis;* feminine or neuter; as, *hæc Præneste, or hoc Præneste;* or may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter; as, *penus*, *pecus*, and others.

General Rules concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hŏmērus*, Homer; *păter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hĕlĕna*, Helen; *mŭlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sŏror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, *with reference to the sex*, either masculine or feminine; as, *hic bos*, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic părens*, a father; *hæc părens*, a mother.*

4. Nouns which are sometimes found in one gender and sometimes in another, without reference to the sense, are of the doubtful gender; as, *dies*, a day, either masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, either masculine or neuter.

---

* The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adŏlescens, Jŭvĕnis, } *a young man or woman.*
Affīnis, *a relation by marriage.*
Antistes, *a prelate.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *a soothsayer.*
Cănis, *a dog* or *bitch.*
Cīvis, *a citizen.*
Cliens, *a client.*
Cŏmes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a husband* or *wife.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*
Hæres, *an heir.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Jūdex, *a judge.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Mīles, *a soldier.*
Mūnĭceps, *a burgess.*
Nēmo, *nobody.*
Obses, *a hostage.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin german, by the father's side.*
Præs, *a surety.*
Princeps, *a prince* or *princess.*

OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. 1. *The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.*

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, either male or female, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *ăquĭla*, an eagle, either male or female, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fœmĭna;* as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fœmĭna passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. *A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.*

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprīlis*, April; *hic Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *hic Afrĭcus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tĭbĕris*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrŏna*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sŏracte*, a hill in Italy.

Săcerdos, *a priest* or *priestess*. Sus, *a swine*. Testis, *a witness*. Vātes, *a prophet*. Vindex, *an avenger*.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistĭta*, *clienta*, *hospĭta*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leæna*, a lioness; *ĕquus*, *ĕqua*; *mūlus*, *mūla*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only a masculine adjective; as, *advĕna*, a stranger; *agrĭcŏla*, a husbandman; *assecla*, an attendant; *accŏla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *ŏpĭfex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtezan; *mancĭpium*, *servĭtium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *ŏpĕræ*, slaves, or day labourers; *vĭgĭliæ*, *excŭbiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

---

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Muniqueceps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bos*que, *canis*que,
*Interpres*que, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rĕgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as *hæc Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sămos*, an island of that name; *Cŏrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship. Thus also the names of poems, *hæc Ilias*, *-ădos*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Æneïs*, *-ĭdos*, a poem of Virgil; *hæc Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessĭnus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Persis*, *-ĭdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthăgo*, *-ĭnis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain: *hoc Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tĭbur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelidâ Præneste*. Juvenal. iii. 190; *Alta Ilion*. Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *ŏleaster*, *ŏleastri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cўtĭsus*, a kind of shrub; *rŭbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lote-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *lĭgustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *-ĕris*, the cork-tree; *sĭler*, *-ĕris*, the osier; *rōbur*, *-ŏris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ăcer*, *-ĕris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *arbustum*, *quercētum*, *escŭlētum*, *sălictum*, *frŭtĭcētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow; also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pōmum* or *mălum*, an apple; *pĭrum*, a pear; *ĕbĕnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender: (*the rest are Greek.*)

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Voc.	*a.*	Nom. Voc.	*æ*
Gen. Dat.	*æ.*	Gen.	*ārum.*
Acc.	*am.*	Acc.	*as.*
Abl.	*â.*	Dat. Abl.	*is.*

Penna, *a pen*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. penna,	*a pen ;*	N. pennæ,	*pens ;*
G. pennæ,	*of a pen ;*	G. pennārum,	*of pens ;*
D. pennæ,	*to a pen ;*	D. pennis,	*to pens ;*
A. pennam,	*a pen ;*	A. pennas,	*pens ;*
V. penna,	*O pen ;*	V. pennæ,	*O pens ;*
A. pennâ,	*with a pen.*	A. pennis,	*with pens.*

In like manner decline,

Acerra, *a censer.*
Acta, *the shore.*
Æra, *a period of time.*
Ærumna, *toil.*
Agrĭcŏla, *a husbandman.*
Ala, *a wing.*
Alăpa, *a blow.*
Alauda, *a lark.*
Alga, *sea-weed.*
Alūta, *tanned leather.*
Ambrŏsia, *the food of the gods.*
Amĭta, *an aunt, the father's sister.*
Amphŏra, *a cask.*
Ampulla, *a jug*, plural, *bombast.*
Amurca, *the lees of oil.*
Ancilla, *a handmaid.*
Anchŏra, *an anchor.*
Anguilla, *an eel.*
Ansa, *a handle.*
Antenna, *a sail-yard.*
Antlia, *a pump.*
Aqua, *water.*
Aquĭla, *an eagle.*
Ara, *an altar.*
Arānea, *a spider.*
Arca, *a chest.*
Ardea, & -eŏla, *a heron.*
Area, *an open place.*
Arēna, *sand.*
Argilla, *potters' earth.*
Arista, *an ear of corn.*
Arrha, *an earnest penny.*
Arvīna, *fat.*
Ascia, *an axe.*
Athlēta, m. *a wrestler.*
Aula, *a hall.*
Aura, *a breeze.*
Aurīga, m. *a charioteer.*
Avia, *a grandmother.*
Axilla, *the arm-pit.*
Balæna, *a whale.*
Barba, *a beard.*
Bellua, *any large beast.*
Bestia, *a beast.*
Bēta, *beet, an herb.*
Bibliŏpōla, *a bookseller.*
Bibliŏthēca, *a library.*
Blatta, *a moth.*
Bractea, *a thin leaf of gold.*
Brassĭca, *cauliflower.*
Brūma, *winter solstice.*
Bucca, *the hollow of the cheek.*
Bulla, *a bubble, a ball*, or *boss.*
Byrsa, *an ox-hide.*
Calīga, *a kind of shoe set with nails.*
Caltha, *marigold.*
Calva, and calvaria, *a skull.*
Călumnia, *slander.*
Cămēna, *a muse, a song.*
Cămĕra, *a vault.*
Campāna, *a bell.*
Canna, *a cane or reed.*
Candēla, *a candle.*
Capra, *a she-goat.*
Capsa, *a coffer.*
Cărīna, *the keel of a ship.*
Căsa, *a cottage.*
Castănea, *a chestnut.*
Cătăpulta, *an engine to cast darts.*
Cătēna, *a chain.*
Căterva, *a body of men.*
Căthedra, *a chair, a pulpit.*
Cauda, *the tail.*
Caula, *a sheep-cote.*
Causa, *a cause.*
Căverna, *a cavern.*
Căvilla, *a banter.*
Cella, *a cell.*
Cēra, *wax.*
Cērĕmonia, *a ceremony.*
Cervīsia, *ale, beer.*
Cērussa, *white lead, paint*
Cetra, *a square target.*
Charta, *paper.*
Chorda, *a string.*
Cĭcāda, *a kind of insect*
Cĭcōnia, *a stork.*
Cĭcūta, *hemlock.*
Cinăra, *an artichoke.*
Cista, *a chest.*
Cisterna, *a cistern.*
Cĭthăra, *a harp.*
Clāva, *a club.*
Clepsydra, *an hour glass.*
Cloāca, *a sink.*
Cochlea, *a snail.*
Cœna, *a supper.*
Cŏlumba, *a pigeon.*
Cŏma, *the hair.*
Cōmœdia, *a comedy*

Concha, *a shell.*
Cōpia, *plenty.*
Cōpŭla, *a bond.*
Corrĭgia, *a shoe-latchet.*
Cŏrōna, *a crown, a circle.*
Cortīna, *a cauldron.*
Costa, *a rib.*
Coxa, *the haunch.*
Crăpŭla, *a surfeit.*
Crātēra, *a cup.*
Cratīcŭla, *a gridiron.*
Crēna, *a notch.*
Crĕpĭda, *a slipper.*
Crēta, *chalk.*
Crista, *a crest.*
Crŭmēna, *a purse.*
Crusta, & -um, *a morsel.*
Culcĭta, *a cushion.*
Cŭlīna, *a kitchen.*
Culpa, *a fault.*
Cŭmĕra, *a corn-basket.*
Cūpa, *a tun.*
Cūra, *care.*
Cūria, *a senate-house.*
Currūca, *a hedge-sparrow.*
Cymba, *a boat.*
Dĕcempĕda, *a pole of ten feet.*
Diæta, *diet, food.*
Dŏlābra, *an axe.*
Drachma, *a drachm, a weight,* or *coin.*
Epistŏla, *a letter.*
Esca, *a bait.*
Făba, *a bean.*
Fābŭla, *a fable.*
Fāma, *fame.*
Fărīna, *meal.*
Fascia, *a bandage.*
Făvilla, *embers.*
Fĕnestra, *a window.*
Fĕra, *a wild beast.*
Fĕrŭla, *a rod.*
Festūca, *the shoot of a tree.*
Fibra, *a fibre.*
Fībŭla, *a clasp.*
Fĭdēlia, *an earthen vessel.*
Fimbria, *a fringe.*
Fiscĭna, *a bag* or *basket.*
Fistūca, *a rammer.*
Fistŭla, a pipe.

Flamma, *a flame.*
Fœmĭna, *a woman.*
Forma, *a form.*
Formīca, *an ant*
Fossa, *a ditch.*
Fŏvea, *a pit.*
Frămea, *a short spear.*
Fŭlĭca, *a sea-fowl.*
Funda, *a sling.*
Furca, *a fork.*
Fuscĭna, *a trident.*
Gălĕa, *an helmet.*
Gallīna, *a hen.*
Gangræna, *an eating ulcer.*
Gaza, *a treasure.*
Gemma, *a gem.*
Gĕna, *the cheek.*
Gĕnista, *broom.*
Gingīva, *the gum.*
Glārea, *gravel.*
Glēba, *a clod.*
Gŭla, *the gullet.*
Gutta, *a drop.*
Hăbēna, *a rein.*
Hăra, *a hog-sty.*
Hărŭga, *a sacrifice.*
Hasta, *a spear.*
Hĕdĕra, *ivy.*
Herba, *an herb.*
Herma, *v.* -es, m. *a statue of Mercury.*
Hernia, *a rupture.*
Hilla, *a sausage.*
Hōra, *an hour.*
Hostia, *a victim.*
Hydria, *a water-pot.*
Jactūra, *loss.*
Jānua, *a gate.*
Idea, *a form, an idea.*
Idiōta, m. *an illiterate person.*
Ignōmĭnia, *an affront.*
Illĕcebra, *an allurement.*
Impensa, *expense.*
Indĭgĕna, m. *a native.*
Inēdia, *hunger.*
Infŭla, *a mitre.*
Injŭria, *a wrong.*
Inŏpia, *want.*
Instĭta, *a fringe.*
Insŭla, *an island.*
Inŭla, *elecampane, an herb.*
Invĭdia, *envy.*

Ira, *anger.*
Juba, *the mane.*
Lăcerna, *a riding-coat.*
Lăcerta, *a lizard.*
Lăcĭnia, *a fringe.*
Lacrўma, *a tear.*
Lactūca, *lettuce.*
Lăcūna, *a ditch.*
Lăgēna, *a flagon.*
Lāma, *a ditch.*
Lămia, *a sorceress.*
Lāmĭna, *a plate.*
Lāna, *wool.*
Lancea, *a lance* or *spear*
Lănista, m. *a fencing-master.*
Larva, *a mask.*
Lăterna, *a lantern.*
Latrīna, *a house of office.*
Lectīca, *a sedan* or *chair.*
Lēna, *a bawd.*
Lepra, *the leprosy.*
Libra, *a pound.*
Lĭgŭla, *a latchet.*
Līma, *a file.*
Līnea, *a line.*
Lingua, *the tongue.*
Līra, *a ridge* or *furrow.*
Lĭtĕra, *a letter.*
Lŏcusta, *a locust.*
Lūcerna, *a light.*
Lūna, *the moon;*
Luscĭnia, *a nightingale.*
Lympha, *water.*
Lyra, *a lyre.*
Māchĭna, *a machine.*
Mactra, *a kneading-trough.*
Măcŭla, *a stain.*
Māla, *the cheek-bone*
Mălăcia, *a calm.*
Malva, *a mallow.*
Mamma, *a pap.*
Mănĭca, *a sleeve.*
Mantīca, *a wallet.*
Mappa, *a napkin.*
Margărīta, *a pearl.*
Marra, *a mattock.*
Massa, *a lump.*
Mātĕria, *matter, stuff, timber.*
Mātertĕra, *the mother's sister.*
Matta, *a mat* or *mattress.*
Mătŭla, *a chamber-pot.*

Mĕdulla, *marrow.*
Membrāna, *a thin skin, a film, parchment.*
Mĕmŏria, *memory.*
Mensa, *a table.*
Mensūra, *a measure.*
Merda, *dung.*
Merga, *a pitchfork.*
Mĕrŭla, *a blackbird.*
Mēta, *a goal.*
Mĕtăphŏra, *a trope.*
Mīca, *a crumb.*
Mitra, *a mitre.*
Mŏla, *a mill.*
Mŏnēdŭla, *a jackdaw.*
Mŏnēta, *money.*
Mŏra, *a delay.*
Mulcta, *or* Multa, *a fine.*
Mūræna, *a lamprey.*
Mŭria, *pickle, brine.*
Mūsa, *a muse.*
Musca, *a fly.*
Mustēla, *a weasel.*
Myrrha, *myrrh.*
Myrīca, *a tamarisk.*
Mysta, *or* -es, m. *a priest.*
Nassa, *a net.*
Nausea, *sea-sickness.*
Nauta, m. *a mariner.*
Nĭtēdŭla, *a field-mouse.*
Nœnia, *a funeral-song.*
Norma, *a rule.*
Nŏvăcŭla, *a razor.*
Nŏverca, *a step-mother.*
Nympha, *a nymph.*
Occa, *an harrow.*
Ocrea, *a boot.*
Oda, *or* -e, *an ode* or *song.*
Offa, *a morsel.*
Olea, *an olive.*
Olla, *a pot.*
Ora, *a coast.*
Orbĭta, *a path.*
Orca, *a jar.*
Orchestra, *the stage,* or *the place next it, where the nobles sat.*
Ostrea, *an oyster.*
Pænŭla, *a riding-coat.*
Pāgĭna, *a page.*
Pāla, *a shovel.*
Pălæstra, *a wrestling,* or *place for it.*
Pălea, *chaff.*
Pălinōdia, *a recantation.*
Palla, *a large gown.*
Palma, *the palm.*
Palpebra, *the eye-lid.*
Păpilla, *the nipple.*
Păpŭla, *a pimple.*
Părăbŏla, *comparing things together.*
Parma, *a shield.*
Parra, *a jay.*
Pătĕra, *a goblet.*
Pausa, *a stop* or *pause.*
Pĕdīca, *a fetter.*
Pēnŭla, *a mantle.*
Pēnūria, *want.*
Pēra, *a purse.*
Perca, *a perch.*
Perfŭga, m. *a deserter.*
Pergămēna, *sc.* charta, *parchment.*
Perna, *a gammon of bacon.*
Persōnă, *a mask.*
Pertĭca, *a pole.*
Petra, *a rock.*
Phălărīca, *a long spear.*
Phărĕtra, *a quiver.*
Phāsiāna, *sc.* avis, *a pheasant.*
Phiăla, *a vial.*
Phĭlŏmēla, *a nightingale.*
Phĭl ra, *the linden tree, a leaf of paper.*
Phōca, *a sea calf.*
Pīca, *a magpie.*
Pīla, *a ball.*
Pīla, *a pillar.*
Pincerna, m. *a butler.*
Pinna, *a fin, a wing.*
Pīrāta, m. *a pirate.*
Piscīna, *a fish-pond.*
Pĭtuīta, *phlegm.*
Plăcenta, *a cake.*
Plăga, *a climate.*
Plāga, *a blow.*
Planta, *a plant.*
Plătēa, *or* Platĕa, *a broad street.*
Plūma, *a feather.*
Plŭvia, *rain.*
Pŏdagra, *the gout.*
Pœna, *a punishment.*
Poēta, m. *a poet.*
Poetria, *a poetess.*
Pŏlenta, *malt.*
Pŏlītia, *a policy.*
Pompa, *a procession.*
Pōpa, m. *a priest who slew the sacrifice*
Pŏpīna, *a tavern.*
Porta, *a gate.*
Præda, *plunder.*
Prærŏgātīva, *sc.* tribus, *or* centuria, *that voted first.*
Prŏcella, *a storm.*
Prōra, *the prow.*
Prōsa, *prose.*
Prōsapia, *a race.*
Pruīna, *hoar frost.*
Prūna, *a burning coal.*
Psaltria, *a music girl.*
Puella, *a girl.*
Pugna, *a battle.*
Pulpa, *the pulp.*
Pūpŭla, *the apple of the eye.*
Purpūra, *purple.*
Pustŭla, *a blister.*
Pyra, *a funeral pile.*
Quadra, & -um, *a square.*
Răbŭla, m. *a wrangler.*
Rāna, *a frog.*
Rĕpulsa, *a refusal.*
Resīna, *resin.*
Rhēda, *a chariot.*
Rīma, *a chink.*
Rīpa, *a bank.*
Rīxa, *a scold.*
Rŏsa, *a rose.*
Rŏta, *a wheel.*
Rūga, *a wrinkle.*
Ruīna, *a downfall.*
Runcīna, *a saw* or *plane.*
Rūta, *rue.*
Săburra, *ballast.*
Săga, *a sorceress.*
Săgīna, *cramming.*
Săgitta, *an arrow.*
Sălebra, *a rugged way.*
Săliunca, *lavender.*
Sălīva, *spittle.*
Salpa, *stock-fish.*
Sambūca, *an harp,* or *engine of war.*
Sanctĭmōnia, *devotion.*
Sandăpīla, *a bier.*
Sanna, *a scoff.*
Sarcīna, *a burden.*
Sărissa, *a long spear.*

Sătĭra, *a satire.*
Satrăpa, *or* -es, m. *a Persian governor.*
Scāla, *a ladder.*
Scandŭla, *a lath to cover houses.*
Scăpha, *a boat.*
Scăpŭla, *the shoulder.*
Scēna, *a stage.*
Schēda, *a sheet* or *scroll.*
Schŏla, *a school.*
Scintilla, *a spark.*
Scrīblīta, *a tart* or *wafer.*
Scrofŭla, *the king's evil.*
Scurra, m. *a buffoon.*
Scŭtĭca, *a scourge.*
Scytăla, *a kind of serpent,* or *a round staff.*
Sēlibra, *half a pound.*
Sēmihōra, *half an hour.*
Sēmĭta, *a path.*
Sententia, *an opinion.*
Sentīna, *a sink.*
Sĕra, *a lock.*
Serra, *a saw.*
Sesquihōra, *an hour and a half.*
Sēta, *a bristle.*
Sĭbylla, *a prophetess.*
Sīca, *a dagger.*
Sĭlĭqua, *a husk.*
Silva, *a wood.*
Sīmia, *an ape.*
Sĭmĭla, *flour.*
Sĭtŭla, *a bucket.*
Sōcordia, *sloth.*
Sŏlea, *a shoe.*
Sŏphista, & -es, m. *a sophist.*
Spĕcŭla, *a watch-tower.*
Spēlunca, *a cave.*
Sphæra, *a sphere.*
Spīca, *an ear of corn.*
Spīna, *the back bone.*
Spīra, *a wreath.*
Sponda, *a bedstead.*
Spongia, *a sponge.*
Sponsa, *a bride.*
Sporta, *a basket.*
Spūma, *foam.*
Squāma, *a scale.*
Squilla, *a prawn,* or *shrimp.*
Stătēra, *a balance.*
Stătua, *a statue.*
Stella, *a star.*
Stĭpŭla, *stubble.*
Stīria, *an icicle.*
Stīva, *the plough tail.*
Stŏla, *a gown.*
Strangūria, *the making of water with great pain.*
Strēna, *a new year's gift.*
Strūma, *a botch.*
Stūpa, *tow.*
Sublĭca, *a pile.*
Sŭbŭcŭla, *a shirt.*
Sŭbŭla, *an awl.*
Succīdia, *a flitch of bacon.*
Summa, *a sum, the whole.*
Sŭperbia, *pride.*
Sūra, *the calf of the leg.*
Sutrīna, *sc.* taberna, *a shoemaker's shop.*
Sūtūra, *a seam.*
Sycŏphanta, m. *a sharper.*
Syllăba, *a syllable.*
Symbŏla, *a club, a share of a reckoning.*
Symphōnia, *harmony.*
Syngrăpha, *a bill* or *bond.*
Tăberna, *a shop.*
Tăbŭla, *a table.*
Tæda, *a torch.*
Tænia, *a ribbon.*
Techna, *a trick* or *wile.*
Tēgŭla, *a tile.*
Tēla, *a web.*
Tĕrebra, *a wimble.*
Terra, *the earth.*
Tessĕra, *a dye.*
Testa, *an earthen pot.*
Textrīna, *a weaver's shop.*
Thēca, *a case.*
Tībia, *a pipe, the leg.*
Tĭlia, *the linden tree.*
Tĭnea, *a moth.*
Tonstrīna, *a barber's shop.*
Trăgœdia, *a tragedy.*
Trăgŭla, *a javelin with a barbed head.*
Trahea, *a sledge* or *dray.*
Trāma, *the woof.*
Trochlea, *a pulley.*
Trulla, *a trowel.*
Trŭtĭna, *a balance.*
Tŭba, *a trumpet.*
Tŭnĭca, *a waistcoat.*
Turba, *a crowd.*
Turma, *a troop.*
Ulna, *an ell.*
Ulŭla, *an owl.*
Ulva, *sedge.*
Umbra, *a shade.*
Unda, *a wave.*
Ungŭla, *a nail, the hoof.*
Upŭpa, *the houpoo, a bird.*
Urīna, *urine.*
Urna, *an urn.*
Urtīca, *a nettle.*
Uva, *a grape.*
Vacca, *a cow.*
Vāgīna, *a scabbard.*
Vappa, *palled wine, a spendthrift.*
Vēna, *a vein.*
Vĕnia, *leave.*
Verna, m. *an home-born slave.*
Verrūca, *a wart.*
Vēsīca, *the bladder*
Vespa, *a wasp*
Via, *a way.*
Vicia, *a vetch* or *tare.*
Victĭma, *a victim.*
Victōria, *a conquest.*
Villa, *a country seat.*
Vindēmia, *vintage.*
Vindicta, *vengeance: a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed.*
Viŏla, *a violet.*
Vīpĕra, *a viper.*
Virga, *a rod.*
Vīta, *life.*
Vitta, *a fillet.*
Viverra, *a ferret.*
Vŏla, *the palm of the hand.*
Zōna, *a girdle, a zone.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cŏmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes, *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi:* and sometimes likewise in *as*, which form the compounds of *fămĭlia* usually retain; as *māter-fămĭlias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiārum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us*, of the second declension:

Anĭma, *the soul, the life.*	Fīlia, & Nāta, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddess.*	Lĭberta, *a freed woman.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Mūla, *a she-mule.*
Famŭla, *a female servant.*	

Thus *deābus, filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in AS, ES, and E, of the first declension, are Greek-Nouns in AS and ES, are masculine; nouns in E are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna;* only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*, dat. *-æ*, acc. *-am*, or *-an*, voc. *-a*, abl. *â*. So *Bŏreas*, *-eæ*, the north wind; *tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Ossa*, acc. *-am* or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined:

Anchīses, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

Nom. Anchīses,	*Acc.* Anchīsen,
Gen. Anchīsæ,	*Voc.* Anchīse, *or -a.*
Dat. Anchīsæ,	*Abl.* Anchīse, *or* â.

Pēnĕlŏpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

Nom. Pēnĕlŏpe,	*Acc.* Penelŏpen,
Gen. Penelŏpes,	*Voc.* Penelŏpe,
Dat. Penelŏpe,	*Abl.* Penelŏpe.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless

when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.*

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrīdes*; *Persa*, for *Perses*, a Persian; *geometra*, for *-tres*, a geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *epitŏma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *grammătica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *rhĕtŏrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*. (*os* and *on* are Greek terminations.)

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom. *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.	Nom. } Voc. } *i* or *a*.
Gen. *i*.	Gen. *ōrum*.
Dat. } Abl. } *o*.	Dat. } Abl. } *is*.
Acc. *um*, or like the nom.	Acc. *os*, or *a*.
Voc. *e*, or like the nom.	

Gĕner, *a son-in-law*, masc.

Singular.

Nom. gĕner,			*a son-in-law*,
Gen. genĕri,	*of*		*a son-in-law*,
Dat. genĕro,	*to*		*a son-in-law*,
Acc. genĕrum,			*a son-in-law*,
Voc. gĕnĕr,	*O*		*son-in-law*,
Abl. genĕro,	*with*, *from*, or by		*a son-in-law*.

Plural.

Nom. genĕri,		*sons-in-law*,
Gen. generōrum,	*of*	*sons-in-law*,
Dat. genĕris,	*to*	*sons-in-law*,
Acc. genĕros,		*sons-in-law*,
Voc. genĕri,	*O*	*sons-in-law*,
Abl. genĕris,	*with*, *from*, or *by*	*sons-in-law*.

* The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Cælĭcŏlûm*, for *Cælicolārum*; *Æneădûm*, for *-ārum*.

After the same manner decline, *sŏcer*, *-ĕri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ĕri*, a boy: So *furcĭfer*, a villain; *Lucĭfer*, the morning star; *ădulter*, an adulterer; *armĭger*, an armour-bearer; *presbўter*, an elder; *Mulcĭber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtĭber*, *-ēri:* Also, *vir*, *vĭri*, a man, the only noun in *ir;* and its compounds, *lĕvir*, a brother-in-law; *semĭvir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *sătur*, *-ŭri*, full, (of old, *satŭrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, *a field*, masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. ăger,	*a field,*	N. agri,	*fields,*
G. agri,	*of a field,*	G. agrōrum,	*of fields,*
D. agro,	*to a field,*	D. agris,	*to fields,*
A. agrum,	*a field,*	A. agros,	*fields,*
V. ager,	*O field,*	V. agri,	*O fields,*
A. agro,	*with a field.*	A. agris,	*with fields.*

In like manner decline,

Aper, *a wild boar.*
Arbĭter, & -tra, *an arbitrator* or *judge.*
Auster, *the south wind.*
Cancer, *a crab fish.*
Căper, *a he-goat.*
Cŏlŭber, & -bra, *a serpent.*
Culter, *the coulter of a plough, a knife.*
Făber, *a workman.*
Măgister, *a master.*
Minister, *a servant.*
Onăger, *a wild ass.*
Scalper, *a lancet.*

Also, *lĭber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri;* but *līber*, free, an adjective, and *Līber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libĕri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mĕnander*, *Teucer*, *Mĕleăger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Dŏmĭnus, *a lord*, masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. dŏmĭnus,	*a lord,*	N. dŏmĭni,	*lords,*
G. domĭni,	*of a lord,*	G. domĭnōrum,	*of lords,*
D. domĭno,	*to a lord,*	D. domĭnis,	*to lords,*
A. domĭnum,	*a lord,*	A. domĭnos,	*lords,*
V. domĭne,	*O lord,*	V. domĭni,	*O lords,*
A. domĭno,	*with a lord.*	A. domĭnis,	*with lords.*

In like manner decline,

Abăcus, *a table* or *desk*.
Acervus, *a heap*.
Acūleus, *a sting*.
Agnus, *a lamb*.
Alnus, f. *an alder tree*.
Alveus, *the channel of a river*.
Angŭlus, *a corner*.
Anĭmus, *the mind*.
Annus, *a year*.
Annŭlus, *a ring*.
Anus, *a circle*.
Archĭtectus, *a master-builder*.
Argentārius, *a banker*.
Armus, *the shoulder of a beast; also of a man*.
Asīlus, *a gad bee*.
Asĭnus, & -a, *an ass*.
Autumnus, *the autumn*.
Avuncŭlus, *the mother's brother*.
Avus, *a grandfather*.
Bajŭlus, *a porter*.
Barrus, *an elephant*.
Bōlus, *a morsel*.
Bombus, *a buzz*.
Căballus, *a pack-horse*.
Căcăbus, *a kettle*.
Căchinnus, *a loud laugh*.
Cādūceus, *a wand*.
Cădus, *a cask*.
Călămus, *a reed*.
Călăthus, *a basket*.
Calceus, *a shoe*.
Callus, & -um, *hard flesh*.
Cămīnus, *a chimney*.
Campus, *a plain*.
Canthărus, *a cup* or *jug*.
Carduus, *a thistle*.
Carpus, *the wrist*.
Carrus, & -um, *a cart*.
Cāseus, *cheese*.
Cătălŏgus, *a roll*.
Cătīnus, *a platter*.
Caurus, *a west wind*.
Cedrus, f. *a cedar tree*.
Cervus, *a stag*.
Cētus, *a whale*, *pl*. cete, n. *indecl*.
Chīrurgus, *a surgeon*.
Chŏrus, *a choir*.
Cĭbus, *meat*.
Cincinnus, *a curl*.
Cinnus, *a medley*.
Cippus, *a grave stone*.
Circĭnus, *a pair of compasses*.
Circus, & circŭlus, *a circle*.
Cirrus, *a tuft* or *curl*.
Citrus, f. *a citron tree*.
Clathrus, *a grate*.
Clāvus, *a nail*.
Clibănus, *a portable oven*.
Clīvus, *a hill*.
Clypeus, *a round shield*.
Coccus, *or* -um, *scarlet*.
Cŏlăphus, *a box on the ear*.
Condus, *a butler*.
Condylus, *the knuckle*.
Congius, *a gallon*.
Consŏbrinus, *a cousin-german by the mother's side*.
Contus, *a long pole*.
Conus, *a cone*.
Cŏphĭnus, *a basket*.
Cŏquus, *a cook*.
Cornus, f. *the cornel tree*.
Corvus, *a raven*.
Cŏrȳlus, f. *a hazel tree*.
Cŏrymbus, *a bunch of ivy berries*.
Cŏryphæus, *a ring-leader*.
Cōrȳtus, *or* -os, *a bow-case*.
Cŏthurnus, *a buskin*.
Cŭbĭtus, *a cubit*.
Cŭcullus, *a hood*.
Cŭcullus, *or* cŭcŭlus, *a cuckoo*.
Cūleus, *a leathern bag*.
Culmus, *a stalk*.
Cŭlullus, *a pot* or *jug*.
Cŭmŭlus, *an heap*.
Cŭneus, *a wedge*.
Cŭnīcŭlus, *a rabbit*.
Cyăthus, *a cup* or *glass*.
Cygnus, *a swan*.
Cylindrus, *a roller*.
Dĭălŏgus, *a discourse between two or more*.
Dĭgĭtus, *a finger*.
Discus, *a quoit*.
Dīvus, *a god*.
Dŏlus, *deceit*.
Dūmus, *a bush*.
Echīnus, *an urchin*.
Elĕgus, *an elegy*.
Ephēbus, *a youth*.
Epĭlŏgus, *a conclusion*.
Episcŏpus, *an overseer, a bishop*.
Equŭleus, *an instrument of torture*.
Equus, *an horse*.
Erĕbus, *hell*.
Eurus, *the east wind*
Fāgus, f. *a beech tree*
Fămŭlus, *a man-servant*.
Făvōnius, *the west wind*.
Făvus, *an honeycomb*.
Fĭgŭlus, *a potter*.
Fiscus, *the exchequer*.
Floccus, *a lock of wool*.
Flŭvius, *a river*.
Fŏcus, *an hearth*.
Fraxĭnus, f. *an ash tree*
Frĭtillus, *a dice-box*.
Fūcus, *a drone bee, paint*.
Fūmus, *smoke*.
Fūnambŭlus, *a rope-dancer*.
Fundus, *a farm*.
Fungus, *a mushroom*.
Furnus, *an oven*.
Fūsus, *a spindle*.
Gallus, *a cock*.
Gerŭlus, *a porter*.
Gibbus, *a swelling*.
Glădius, *a sword*.
Glŏbus, *a globe*.
Grăbātus, *a couch*.
Grăcŭlus, *a jackdaw*.
Grūmus, *a hillock*.
Guttus, *a cruet* or *vial*.
Gyrus, *a circle*.
Hædus, *a kid*.
Hāmus, *a hook*.
Hāriŏlus, *a diviner*.
Hĕrus, *a master*.
Hespĕrus, *the evening*.
Hinnŭleus, *a young hind or fawn*.

Hinnŭs, *a mule.*
Hircus, *a goat.*
Hortus, *a garden.*
Hŭmĕrus, *a shoulder.*
Hydrus, *a water-serpent.*
Internuntius, *a go-between.*
Isthmus, *a neck of land between two seas.*
Juncus, *a bulrush.*
Jŭvencus, *a bullock.*
Labyrinthus, *a maze.*
Lăcertus, *the arm.*
Lănius, *a butcher.*
Lăqueus, *a noose.*
Lectus, *a couch.*
Lēgātus, *an ambassador.*
Lēgŭleius, *an ignorant lawyer, a pettifogger.*
Lethargus, *the lethargy.*
Limbus, *a selvedge.*
Līmus, *slime.*
Lĭtuus, *a crooked staff.*
Lūcus, *a sacred grove.*
Lumbrīcus, *an earth-worm.*
Lumbus, *the loin.*
Lŭpus, *a wolf.*
Lychnus, *a lamp.*
Măgus, *a magician.*
Malleus, *a mallet.*
Mālus, *the mast of a ship.*
Mālus, f. *an apple tree.*
Mannus, *a little horse.*
Măthēmătĭcus, *a mathematician.*
Mĕdiastīnus, *a slave, a drudge.*
Mĕdĭcus, *a physician.*
Mendīcus, *a beggar.*
Mergus, *a cormorant.*
Milvus, *a kite.*
Mīmus, *a mimic.*
Mŏdius, *a bushel.*
Mŏdus, *a manner*
Mœchus, *an adulterer.*
Mōrus, f. *a mulberry tree.*
Mucus, *the filth of the nose, snot.*
Mullus, *a mullet fish.*
Mulus, & -a, *a mule.*
Mūrus, *a wall.*
Muscus, *moss.*
Myrtus, f. *a myrtle-tree.*
Nævus, *a spot.*
Nānus, *a dwarf.*
Nāsus, *the nose.*
Nervus, *a string.*
Nīdus, *a nest.*
Nimbus, *a cloud.*
Nōdus, *a knot.*
Nŏthus, *a bastard.*
Nŏtus, *the south wind.*
Nucleus, *a kernel.*
Nŭmĕrus, *a number.*
Nummus, *a piece of money.*
Nuntius, *a messenger.*
Obŏlus, *a farthing.*
Oceănus, *the ocean.*
Ocŭlus, *the eye.*
Orcus, *hell.*
Ornus, f. *a wild ash.*
Ostrăcismus, *a voting with shells.*
Pædagōgus, *a servant who attended boys.*
Pāgus, *a canton* or *village.*
Pālus, *a stake.*
Pannus, *cloth.*
Părăsītus, *a flatterer.*
Pardus, *a panther.*
Părŏchus, *an entertainer.*
Patruus, *the father's brother.*
Patrōnus, *a patron.*
Pēdĭcŭlus, *a louse.*
Pessŭlus, *a bolt.*
Pĕtăsus, *a broad brimmed hat.*
Phārus, or -os, *a watch-tower.*
Phĭlŏsŏphus, *a lover of wisdom.*
Phœbus, (poet.) *the sun.*
Phȳsĭcus, *an inquirer into nature.*
Pīcus, *a wood-pecker.*
Pīleus, *a hat.*
Pĭlus, *a hair.*
Pĭrus, f. *a pear tree.*
Plăgiarius, *a plagiary, a man stealer;* or *one who steals from others' books.*
Plănus, *a vagrant, a beggar.*
Plŭteus, *a pent-house, a press for books.*
Pŏlus, *the pole, heaven.*
Pontus, *the sea.*
Pŏpŭlus, *a people.*
Pōpŭlus, f. *a poplar tree*
Porcus, *a hog.*
Porrus, *a leek.*
Primĭpilus, *the chief centurion.*
Prīvignus, *a step-son.*
Prŏcus, *a suitor.*
Prōmus, *a butler.*
Prūnus, f. *a plum-tree.*
Psittăcus, *a parrot.*
Pugnus, *the fist.*
Pullus, *a chicken.*
Pulvīnus, *a pillow.*
Pŭpillus, *an orphan.*
Pūpus, *a young child, a babe.*
Pŭteus, *a well.*
Quălus & quăsillus, *a basket.*
Răcēmus, *a cluster of grapes.*
Rădius, *a ray.*
Rāmus, *a branch.*
Rēmus, *an oar.*
Rhombus, *a turbot.*
Rhoncus, *a snorting.*
Rhythmus, *metre, rhyme.*
Riscus, *a trunk.*
Rīvus, *a rivulet.*
Rŏgus, *a funeral pile.*
Saccus, *a sack.*
Sarcŏphăgus, *a stone in which dead bodies were inclosed.*
Sătȳrus, *a satyr, a kind of demi-god.*
Scalmus, *a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung.*
Scăpus, *a stalk, a shaft or shank.*
Scărus, *the scar, a fish.*
Scirpus, *a rush.*
Sciūrus, *a squirrel.*
Scŏpŭlus, *a rock.*
Scŏpus, *a mark.*
Scrūpŭlus, *a doubt, or scruple.*
Scrūpus, *a little stone.*
Scyphus, *a bowl.*

Servus, *a slave.*
Sestertius, *two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.*
Sīcarius, *an assassin.*
Sīmius, & -a, *an ape.*
Sīrius, *the dog-star.*
Soccus, *a kind of shoe.*
Somnus, *sleep.*
Sŏnus, *a sound.*
Spărus, *a spear.*
Sponsus, *a bridegroom.*
Stĭmŭlus, *a sting, a spur.*
Stŏmăchus, *the stomach.*
Strūpus, *a thong, a strap.*
Stȳlus, *a style*, or *iron pen to write with on waxen tables.*
Sŭbulcus, *a swineherd.*
Succus, *juice.*
Sŭlcus, *a furrow.*
Surcŭlus, *a young twig.*
Sŭsurrus, *a whisper.*
Tālus, *the ankle, a die.*
Taurus, *a bull.*
Taxus, f. *the yew tree.*
Termĭnus, *a bound.*
Thălămus, *a marriage bed-chamber.*
Thĕolŏgus, *a divine.*
Thĕsaurus, *a treasure.*
Thŏlus, *the roof of a temple.*
Thrŏnus, *a royal seat.*
Thyăsus, *a chorus in honour of Bacchus.*
Thyrsus, *a spear wrapt with ivy.*
Tĭtŭlus, *a title.*
Tŏmus, *a volume.*
Tŏnus, *a note in music.*
Tŏphus, *a gravel stone.*
Tornus, *a turner's wheel.*
Tŏrus, *a couch.*
Trĭbŭlus, *a thistle.*
Triumphus, *a triumph.*
Trŏchus, *a top.*
Truncus, *the trunk.*
Tŭbus, *a tube or pipe.*
Tŭmŭlus, *a hillock.*
Turdus, *a thrush.*
Typus, *a figure* or *type.*
Tyrannus, *a tyrant.*
Ulmus, f. *an elm tree.*
Umbĭlĭcus, *the navel.*
Uncus, *a hook.*
Urceus, *a pitcher.*
Ursus, *a bear.*
Urus, *a buffalo.*
Utĕrus, *the womb.*
Vallus, *a stake.*
Vĕnĕfĭcus, *a sorcerer.*
Ventus, *the wind.*
Vīcus, *a village, a street.*
Villĭcus, & -a, *an overseer of a farm.*
Villus, *shaggy hair.*
Vĭtellus, *the yolk of an egg.*
Vitrĭcus, *a step-father.*
Vĭtŭlus, *a calf.*
Zĕphȳrus, *the west wind.*

Regnum, *a kingdom*, neut.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	regnum,	*a kingdom,*	N.	regna,	*kingdoms,*
G.	regni,	*of a kingdom,*	G.	regnōrum,	*of kingdoms,*
D.	regno,	*to a kingdom,*	D.	regnis,	*to kingdoms,*
A.	regnum,	*a kingdom,*	A.	regna,	*kingdoms,*
V.	regnum,	*O kingdom,*	V.	regna,	*O kingdoms,*
A.	regno,	*with a kingdom.*	A.	regnis,	*with kingdoms.*

In like manner decline,

Acētum, *vinegar.*
Acŏnītum, *wolf's bane, a poisonous plant.*
Adăgium, *a proverb.*
Admĭnĭcŭlum, *a prop.*
Adȳtum, *the most secret part of a temple.*
Album, *a register.*
Allium, *garlick.*
Amentum, *a thong.*
Amŭlētum, *a charm.*
Anēthum, *anise.*
Antīcum, *a fore-door.*
Antrum, *a cave.*
Apium, parsley.
Argentum, *silver.*
Armentum, *a herd.*
Arvum, & -us, *a field.*
Astrum, *a star.*
Asȳlum, *a sanctuary.*
Atrium, *a court* or *hall.*
Aulæum, *tapestry.*
Aurum, *gold.*
Auxīlium, *assistance.*
Aviārium, *a cage.*
Balsămum, *balm.*
Bărăthrum, *an abyss.*
Băsium, *a kiss.*
Bellum, *war.*
Biduum, *two days.*
Biennium, *two years.*
Brăchium, *an arm.*
Būtȳrum, *butter.*
Cælum, *a graving tool.*
Cæmentum, *materials for building.*
Cănistrum, *a basket.*
Căpistrum, *a halter* or *muzzle.*
Castrum, *a castle.*
Centrum, *the centre.*
Cĕrebrum, *the brain.*
Chīrogrăphum, *a hand-writing.*
Cilium, *the eyelashes.*

Citrum, *citron-wood.*
Classicum, *a trumpet.*
Cœlum, *pl.* -i, *heaven.*
Cœnum, *mire, dirt.*
Collŏquium, *a conference.*
Collum, *the neck.*
Commŏdum, *advantage.*
Confīnium, *a bound* or *limit.*
Congiārium, *a largess.*
Convīcium, *a reproach.*
Cŏrium, *a hide.*
Costum, *spikenard.*
Crĕmium, *a dry stick.*
Crĕpuscŭlum, *the twilight.*
Cribrum, *a sieve.*
Cŭbĭcŭlum, *a bed-chamber.*
Cumīnum, *cumin, an herb.*
Cymbălum, *a cymbal.*
Damnum, *loss.*
Dēlūbrum, *a temple.*
Dēmensum, *an allowance of meat.*
Detrīmentum, *damage.*
Diārium, *a day's wages.*
Dilūcŭlum, *the dawning of day.*
Dium, (poet.) *the open air.*
Dōlium, *a cask.*
Dŏmĭcĭlium, *an abode.*
Dōnum, *a gift.*
Dorsum, *the back.*
Effŭgium, *an escape.*
Electrum, *amber.*
Elĕmentum, *an element, a letter.*
Elŏgium, *a brief saying, a testimonial in one's praise.*
Emŏlŭmentum, *profit.*
Emplastrum, *a plaster.*
Empŏrium, *a mart* or *market-town.*
Ephippium, *a saddle.*
Epĭtăphium, *an inscription on a tomb.*
Ergastŭlum, *a work-house.*
Ervum, *vetches.*
Essĕdum, *a chariot.*
Everrĭcŭlum, *a drag-net.*
Exemplum, *an example.*
Exĭtium, *destruction.*
Exordium, *a beginning.*
Fānum, *a temple.*
Fascĭnum, *witchcraft.*
Fastĭgium, *the top.*
Fercŭlum, *a dish of meat.*
Ferrum, *iron.*
Filum, *a thread.*
Flăbellum, *a fan.*
Flagrum & Flăgellum, *a whip.*
Flammeum, *a veil.*
Fœnum, *hay.*
Fŏlium, *a leaf.*
Fŏrum, *a market-place.*
Frāgum, *a strawberry.*
Frĕtum, *a narrow sea.*
Frūmentum, *corn.*
Frustum, *a bit* or *piece.*
Fulcrum, *a prop.*
Furtum, *theft.*
Granārium, *a granary.*
Granum, *a grain.*
Graphium, *a pencil.*
Grĕmium, *the bosom.*
Gymnăsium, *a place of exercise.*
Gynæcēum, *the women's apartment.*
Gypsum, *plaster.*
Haustrum, *a bucket.*
Hellĕbŏrum, & -us, *hellebore, a plant.*
Hŏrŏlŏgium, *any thing that tells the hours.*
Idōlum, *an image.*
Idyllium, *a pastoral poem.*
Impĕrium, *command.*
Inceptum, *an enterprise.*
Indĭcium, *a discovery.*
Indūsium, *a shirt.*
Ingĕnium, *wit, genius.*
Inĭtium, *a beginning.*
Intervallum, *distance between.*
Jūdĭcium, *judgment.*
Jŭgŭlum, *the throat.*
Jŭgum, *a yoke, the ridge of a hill.*
Jurgium, *a quarrel.*
Jussum, *an order.*
Justĭtium, *a vacation.*
Lăbium, *the lip.*
Lardum, *bacon.*
Lăsănum, *a chamber pot.*
Lībum, *a sweet cake.*
Licium, *the woof.*
Lignum, *wood.*
Lilium, *a lily.*
Linteum, *a sheet.*
Līnum, *lint.*
Lōrum, *a thong.*
Lucrum, *gain.*
Lūdibrium, *a laughing-stock.*
Lustrum, [illegible]*ey.*
Lūteum, *or* [illegible]*um, woad, the yolk of an egg.*
Lŭtum, *clay.*
Macellum, *the shambles.*
Mănubrium, *a hilt* or *handle.*
Matrīmōnium, *marriage.*
Mausōlæum, *any sumptuous monument.*
Membrum, *a member.*
Mendācium, *a lie.*
Mentum, *the chin.*
Mĕtallum, *metal, a mine.*
Mīlium, *millet, a kind of grain.*
Minium, *vermillion.*
Mōmentum, *weight, importance.*
Mŏnŏpōlium, *the sole right of selling any thing.*
Monstrum, *a monster, any thing against the common course of nature.*
Mortārium, *a mortar.*
Mūsēum, *a study or library.*
Mustum, *new wine.*
Mysterium, *a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.*
Nasturtium, *cresses.*
Naulum, *freight.*
Naufrăgium, *shipwreck.*
Nĕgōtium, *a thing, business.*
Nitrum, *nitre.*
Obsĕquium, *compliance*

Odium, *hatred.*
Omăsum, *the paunch.*
Omentum, *the caul,* or *skin which covers the bowels.*
Oppĭdum, *a town.*
Opprobrium, *a reproach.*
Opsōnium, *fish* or *any thing eaten with bread.*
Orgănum, *any instrument.*
Oscŭlum, *a kiss;* pl. *the lips.*
Ostium, *the door.*
Ostrum, *purple.*
Otium, *repose.*
Ovum, *an egg.*
Păbŭlum, *fodder.*
Pactum, *an agreement.*
Pălātium, *a palace.*
Pălātum, *the palate.*
Pallium, *a cloak.*
Palūdāmentum, *a general's robe.*
Pānārium, *a bread-basket.*
Pătĭbŭlum, *a gibbet.*
Pensum, *a task.*
Peplum, *a woman's robe.*
Perjūrium, *perjury, taking a false oath.*
Perpendĭcŭlum, *a straight line upwards or downwards.*
Pĕtorĭtum, *a waggon.*
Pīlentum, *a chariot.*
Pīlum, *a javelin.*
Pistillum, *the pestle of a mortar.*
Pīsum, *pease.*
Plaustrum, *a waggon.*
Plectrum, *a quill* or *bow to play with on a musical instrument.*
Plumbum, *lead.*
Pōmārium, *an orchard.*
Pōmœrium, *a void space on each side of a town wall.*
Pōmum, *an apple.*
Postīcum, *a back door.*
Postlīmĭnium, *a return to one's own country.*
Prædium, a farm.
Prejūdĭcium, *a forejudging.*
Prœlium, *a battle.*
Præmium, *a reward.*
Præsĭdium, *a defence, a garrison.*
Prandium, *a dinner.*
Prātum, *a meadow.*
Prēlum, *a press.*
Prĕtium, *a price.*
Prīmordium, } *a beginning.*
Princĭpium, }
Prīvĭlēgium, *a private law* or *special right.*
Probrum, *a disgrace.*
Prŏdĭgium, *a prodigy, any thing preternatural.*
Prŏmissum, *a promise.*
Prŏpŏsĭtum, *purpose.*
Prŏpugnācŭlum, *a bulwark.*
Prŏverbium, *an old saying.*
Pulpĭtum, *a pulpit.*
Rāmentum, *a chip* or *shaving.*
Rastrum, *pl.* -i & -a, *a rake.*
Rĕfŭgium, *a shelter.*
Rĕmĕdium, *a cure.*
Rĕmulcum, *a tow-barge.*
Rĕpāgŭlum, *a bar.*
Rĕpŭdium, *a divorce.*
Responsum, *an answer.*
Rĕtĭnacŭlum, *a cable.*
Rostrum, *the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.*
Rŭdīmentum, *pl.* -a, *the first principles of any art.*
Rutrum, *a pick-axe.*
Sabbătum, *the sabbath.*
Săbŭlum, *gravel.*
Sacchărum, *sugar.*
Săceilum, *a chapel.*
Săcerdōtium, *the priesthood.*
Sacrāmentum, *a military oath.*
Sacrĭfĭcium, *a sacrifice.*
Sacrĭlĕgium, *stealing sacred things.*
Săgum, *soldier's cloak.*
Sălarium, *a salary.*
Sălīnum, *a salt-cellar.*
Salsāmentum, *salt meat.*
Sălum, *the sea.*
Sandălium, *a slipper.*
Sarcŭlum, *a weeding-hook, a spade.*
Sarmentum, *a twig.*
Sătisdătum, *a bond of security.*
Saxum, *a large stone.*
Scalprum, *dim.* Scalpellum, *a knife.*
Scamnum, *dim.* Scabellum, *a bench* or *form.*
Sceptrum, *a sceptre, a mace.*
Scītum, *a decree.*
Scortum, *a harlot.*
Scrīnium, *a coffer.*
Scriptum, *a writing.*
Scrūpŭlum, *a scruple, a certain weight.*
Scūtum, *a shield.*
Sēcŭlum, *an age.*
Sēmĭnārium, *a nursery.*
Sĕnācŭlum, *a senate-house.*
Sĕnātûs consultum, *a decree of the senate.*
Sērĭcum, *silk.*
Servĭtium, *slavery.*
Serpyllum, *wild thyme.*
Sertum, *a garland.*
Sĕrum, *whey.*
Sestertium, *a thousand sestertii.*
Sevum, *tallow.*
Signum, *a sign, a standard.*
Sigillum, *a seal.*
Sĭlĭcernium, *a funeral supper, an old man.*
Sīnum, *a milk-pail.*
Sistrum, *a timbrel.*
Sŏdălĭtium, *a company a corporation.*
Sōlārium, *a sun-dial.*
Sōlātium, *comfort.*
Sŏlium, *a throne.*
Sŏlum, *the ground.*
Somnium, *a dream.*
Spătium, *a space.*
Spectācŭlum, *a show.*
Spectrum, *a phantom or apparition.*

Spĕcŭlum, *a looking-glass.*
Spēlæum, *a den.*
Spĭcĭlĕgium, *a gleaning.*
Spīculum, *a dart.*
Spīrācŭlum, *a breathing hole.*
Spŏlium, *spoil.*
Spūtum, *spittle.*
Stăbŭlum, *a stable.*
Stădium, *a furlong.*
Stagnum, *a pond.*
Stannum, *tin.*
Sterquilinium, *a dung-hill.*
Stīpendium, *pay.*
Străgŭlum, *a blanket.*
Strātum, *a couch.*
Strigmentum, *a scraping.*
Stŭdium, *desire, study.*
Stuprum, *debauchery.*
Suāvium, *a kiss.*
Subsellium, *a bench.*
Subsĭdium, *help.*
Sŭburbānum, *a house near the town.*
Sŭburbium, *the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.*
Sūdarium, *a handkerchief.*
Suffrāgium, *a vote.*
Suggestum, & -us, ûs, *a place raised above others.*
Summārium, *an abridgment.*
Supercĭlium, *the brow, pride.*
Suspīrium, *a sigh.*
Symbŏlum, *a sign* or *token.*
Sympŏsium, & -on, *a banquet.*
Tabernāculum, *a tent.*
Tăbulātum, *a story.*
Tābum, *black gore.*
Tædium, *weariness.*
Tălentum, *a talent.*
Tectum, *the roof, a house.*
Tēlum, *a weapon.*
Templum, *a church.*
Tergum, *the back.*
Testĭmōnium, *an evidence.*
Theatrum, *a theatre.*
Thūrĭbŭlum, *a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.*
Tintinnābŭlum, *a little bell.*
Tīrōcĭnium, *an apprenticeship.*
Tormentum, *an engine, a torment.*
Toxĭcum, *poison.*
Trĭbūtum, *tax,* or *custom.*
Triclīnium, *a dining-room.*
Triduum, *three days.*
Triennium, *three years.*
Trĭpudium, *a dancing.*
Trĭvium, *a place where three ways meet.*
Tropæum, *a trophy, a token of victory.*
Tugurium, *a cottage.*
Tympănum, *a drum.*
Vaccīnium, *a berry.*
Vădĭmōnium, *bail; a promise to appear in court.*
Vădum, *a ford, the sea.*
Vallum, *a rampart.*
Vēlum, *a veil, a sail.*
Vēnābŭlum, *a hunting-pole.*
Vĕnēnum, *poison.*
Ventĭlabrum, *a fan.*
Verbum, *a word.*
Vestĭbŭlum, *a porch.*
Vestīgium, *the print of the foot.*
Vexillum, *a banner.*
Viātĭcum, *money,* or *provisions for a journey.*
Vincŭlum, *a chain.*
Vīnum, *wine.*
Vĭtium, *vice, a fault.*
Vitrum, *glass.*
Vīvārium, *a place to keep beasts in, a warren* or *fish-pond.*
Vŏcābŭlum, *a name* or *word.*
Vōtum, *a vow.*

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; ***hŭmus***, the ground; ***alvus***, the belly; ***vannus***, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os;*

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit.*
Antĭdŏtus, *a preservative against poison.*
Arctos, *the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.*
Carbăsus, *a sail.*
Diălectus, *a dialect* or *manner of speech.*
Diămetros, *the diameter of a circle.*
Diphthongus, *a diphthong.*
Erēmus, *a desert.*
Mĕthŏdus, *a method.*
Pĕriŏdus, *a period.*
Pĕrĭmetros, *the circumference.*
Phărus, *a watch-tower.*
Sŷnŏdus, *an assembly.*

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine, (*See Observations on Gender*, page 20).

Amĕthystus, *an amethyst.*
Chrysolĭthus, *a chrysolite.*
Chrysŏphrăsus, *a kind of topaz.*
Chrystallus, *crystal.*
Leucŏchrȳsus, *a jacinth.*
Sapphīrus, *a sapphire.*
Tŏpazius, *a topaz.*
Biblus, Păpȳrus, *an Egyptian reed, of which paper was made.*
Byssus, *fine flax or linen.*
Costus, *costmary.*
Crŏcus, *saffron.*
Hyssōpus, *hyssop.*
Nardus, *spikenard.*

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *bĕryllus*, the beryl; *carbuncŭlus*, a carbuncle; *pyrōpus*, a ruby; *smăragdus*, an emerald. And also names of plants; as, *aspărăgus*, asparagus or sparrowgrass; *ellebŏrus*, ellebore; *raphănus*, radish or colewort; *intȳbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine:

Atŏmus, *an atom.*
Balănus, *the fruit of the palm tree, ointment.*
Barbĭtus, *a harp.*
Cămelus, *a camel.*
Cŏlus, *a distaff.*
Grossus, *a green fig.*
Pĕnus, *a store-house.*
Phăsēlus, *a little ship.*

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pĕlăgus*, the sea; are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Hŏrātius*, *Hŏrāti; Virgĭlius, Virgĭli; Georgius, Georgi*, names of men: *Lārius, Lāri; Mincius, Minci;* names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also has *fili; gĕnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni;* and *deus*, a god, has *deus* in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dĕi* and *dĕis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e;* as, *tăbellārius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius, Dēlie; Tirynthius, Tirynthie;* and these possessives, *Laërtius, Laërtie; Săturnius, Saturnie;* &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative; as, *fluvius, Latīnus*, for *fluvie, Latīne*. Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely; thus, *Audi tu, pŏpŭlus*, for *pŏpŭle*. Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us;* as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander*, or *Evandre*. So *Meander, Leander, Tymber, Teucer*, &c.; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puĕre*, from *puĕrus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii;* *ingĕnī*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deûm, libĕrûm, fabrûm, duûmvirûm*, &c., for *deōrum, liberōrum*, &c.; and in poetry, *Teucrûm, Graiûm, Argivûm, Dănaûm, Pĕlasgûm*, &c. for *Teucrōrum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and ON are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *Ilion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus, Ilium*, which are declined like *domĭnus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphei* or *Orphi*. So *Thesēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o;* as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both of which are also found in the third declension; thus, nominative *Androgeo*, genitive *Androgeōnis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-ōnis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u;* as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodōri*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on;* as, *Delus*, or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ōn;* as, *Georgĭca*, genitive plural *Georgĭcōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x;* *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	*Plural.*	
Nom. *a*, *e*, *i*, &c.	Nom.	*es*, *a*, or *ia*.
Gen. *is*.	Acc.	*es*, *a*, or *ia*.
Dat. *i*.	Voc.	*es*, *a*, or *ia*.
Acc. *em*, or like the nom.	Gen.	*um*, or *ium*.
Voc. like the nom.	Dat.	*ĭbus*.
Abl. *e*, or *i*.	Abl.	*ĭbus*.

Sermo, *a speech*, masc.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. sermo,	*a speech*,	N. sermōnes,	*speeches*,
G. sermōnis,	*of a speech*,	G. sermōnum,	*of speeches*,
D. sermōni,	*to a speech*,	D. sermonĭbus,	*to speeches*,
A. sermōnem,	*a speech*,	A. sermōnes,	*speeches*,
V. sermo,	*O speech*,	V. sermōnes,	*O speeches*,
A. sermōne,	*with a speech*.	A. sermonĭbus,	*with speeches*.

Rūpes, *a rock*, fem.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	rūpes,	*a rock,*	N.	rūpes,	*rocks,*
G.	rupis,	*of a rock,*	G.	rupium,	*of rocks,*
D.	rupi,	*to a rock,*	D.	rupĭbus,	*to rocks,*
A.	rupem,	*a rock,*	A.	rupes,	*rocks,*
V.	rupes,	*O rock,*	V.	rupes,	*O rocks,*
A.	rupe,	*with a rock.*	A.	rupĭbus,	*with rocks.*

Lăpĭs, *a stone*, masc.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	lăpis,	*a stone,*	N.	lăpĭdes,	*stones,*
G.	lapĭdis,	*of a stone,*	G.	lapĭdum,	*of stones,*
D.	lapĭdi,	*to a stone,*	D.	lapĭdĭbus,	*to stones,*
A.	lapĭdem,	*a stone,*	A.	lapĭdes,	*stones,*
V.	lapis,	*O stone,*	V.	lapĭdes,	*O stones,*
A.	lapĭde,	*with a stone.*	A.	lapĭdĭbus,	*with stones.*

Căput, *a head*, neut.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	căput,	*a head,*	N.	căpĭta,	*heads,*
G.	capĭtis,	*of a head,*	G.	capĭtum,	*of heads,*
D.	capĭti,	*to a head,*	D.	capĭtĭbus,	*to heads,*
A.	caput,	*a head,*	A.	capĭta,	*heads,*
V.	caput,	*O head,*	V.	capĭta,	*O heads,*
A.	capĭte,	*with a head.*	A.	capĭtĭbus,	*with heads.*

Sedīle, *a seat*, neut.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	sĕdīle,	*a seat,*	N.	sedilia,	*seats,*
G.	sedīlis,	*of a seat,*	G.	sedilium,	*of seats,*
D.	sedīli,	*to a seat,*	D.	sedilĭbus,	*to seats,*
A.	sedīle,	*a seat,*	A.	sedilia,	*seats,*
V.	sedīle,	*O seat,*	V.	sedilia,	*O seats,*
A.	sedīli,	*with a seat.*	A.	sedilĭbus,	*with seats.*

Iter, *a journey*, neut.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	ĭter,	*a journey,*	N.	ĭtinĕra,	*journeys,*
G.	itinĕris,	*of a journey,*	G.	itinĕrum,	*of journeys,*
D.	itinĕri,	*to a journey,*	D.	itinĕrĭbus,	*to journeys,*
A.	iter,	*a journey,*	A.	itinĕra,	*journeys,*
V.	iter,	*O journey,*	V.	itinĕra,	*O journeys,*
A.	itinĕre,	*with a journey.*	A.	itinĕrĭbus,	*with journeys.*

Opus, *a work*, neut.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
N. ŏpŭs,		*a work*,	N. ŏpĕra,		*works*,
G. opĕris,	*of*	*a work*,	G. opĕrum,	*of*	*works*,
D. opĕri,	*to*	*a work*,	D. opĕrĭbus,	*to*	*works*,
A. opus,		*a work*,	A. opĕra,		*works*,
V. opus,	*O*	*work*,	V. opĕra,	*O*	*works*,
A. opĕre,	*with*	*a work*.	A. opĕrĭbus,	*with*	*works*.

Părens, *a parent*, common gender.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
N. părens,		*a parent*,	N. părentes,		*parents*,
G. parentis,	*of*	*a parent*,	G. parentûm,*	*of*	*parents*,
D. parenti,	*to*	*a parent*,	D. parentĭbus,	*to*	*parents*,
A. parentem,		*a parent*,	A. parentes,		*parents*,
V. parens,	*O*	*parent*,	V. parentes,	*O*	*parents*,
A. parente,	*with*	*a parent*.	A. parentĭbus.	*with*	*parents*.

OF THE GENDER AND GENITIVE OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ătis;* as, *diadēma*, *diademătis*, a crown.

Dogma, *an opinion*, neut.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. dogma,	N. dogmăta,
G. dogmătis,	G. dogmătum,
D. dogmăti,	D. dogmătĭbus,
A. dogma,	A. dogmăta,
V. dogma,	V. dogmăta,
A. dogmăte.	A. dogmătĭbus.

Ænigma, *a riddle.*
Apŏphthegma, *a short, pithy saying.*
Arōma, *sweet spices.*
Axiōma, *a plain truth.*
Diplōma, *a charter.*
Epigramma, *an inscription.*
Nŭmisma, *a coin.*
Phasma, *an apparition.*
Poēma, *a poem.*
Schēma, *a scheme*, or *figure.*
Sŏphisma, *a deceitful argument.*
Stemma, *a pedigree.*
Stigma, *a mark* or *brand*, *a disgrace.*
Strătăgēma, *an artful contrivance.*
Thĕma, *a theme*, *a subject to write* or *speak on.*
Tŏreuma, *a carved vessel.*

* Nouns in *ns* and *as* form their genitive plural in *ium* and *ûm*, but oftener admit a syncope of the *i*.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte, retis*, a net. So,

Ancīle, *a shield.*
Aplustre, *the flag of a ship.*
Campestre, *a pair of drawers.*
Cochleāre, *a spoon.*
Conclāve, *a room.*
Crīnāle, *a pin for the hair.*
Cŭbīle, *a couch.*
Equīle, *a stable for horses.*
Lăqueāre, *a ceiled roof.*
Mantīle, *a towel.*
Mŏnīle, *a necklace.*
Năvāle, *a dock* or *place for shipping.*
Ovīle, a *sheep fold.*
Præsēpe, *a stall* · *a beehive.*
Sĕcāle, *rye.*
Suīle, *a sow-cote.*
Tibiāle, *a stocking.*

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum; *zingĭbĕri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *ĭtis*; as, *hydrŏmĕli, hydromelĭtis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *mōly, molyos*, an herb; *mĭsy, -yos* vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

Sermo, sermōnis, speech; *draco, drăcōnis*, a dragon. So,

Agāso, *a horse-keeper.*
Aquĭlo, *the north wind.*
Arrhăbo, *an earnest-penny, a pledge.*
Bălatro, *a pitiful fellow.*
Bambălio, *a stutterer.*
Băro, a *blockhead.*
Būbo, *an owl.*
Būfo, *a toad.*
Cālo, *a soldier's slave.*
Căpo, *a capon.*
Carbo, *a coal.*
Caupo, *an inn-keeper.*
Cerdo, *a cobbler*, or *one who follows a mean trade.*
Cĭniflo, *a frizzler of hair.*
Crabro, *a wasp*, or *hornet.*
Cūrio, *the chief of a ward* or *curia.*
Equīso, *a groom* or *ostler.*
Erro, *a wanderer.*
Fullo, *a fuller of cloth.*
Helluo, *a glutton.*
Histrio, *a player.*
Latro, *a robber.*
Lēno, *a pimp.*
Lūdio, & -ius, *a player.*
Lurco, *a glutton.*
Mango, *a slave-merchant.*
Mirmillo, *a fencer.*
Mōrio, *a fool.*
Mucro, *the point of a weapon.*
Mūlio, *a muleteer.*
Nĕbŭlo, *a knave.*
Pāvo, *a peacock.*
Pēro, *a kind of shoe.*
Præco, *a common crier.*
Prædo, *a robber.*
Pulmo, *the lungs.*
Pūsio, *a little child.*
Salmo, *a salmon.*
Sannio, *a buffoon*
Săpo, *soap.*
Sīpho, *a pipe* or *tube.*
Spădo, *an eunuch.*
Stŏlo, *a shoot* or *scion.*
Străbo, *a goggle-eyed person.*
Tēmo, *the pole* or *draught-tree.*
Tīro, a *raw soldier.*
Umbo, *the boss of a shield.*
Upīlio, *a shepherd.*
Vŏlo, *a volunteer.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rătio, ratiōnis*, reason. So,

Captio, *a quirk.*
Cautio, *caution, care.*
Concio, *an assembly a speech.*
Cessio, *a yielding.*
Dictio, *a word.*
Dĕdĭtio, *a surrender.*
Lectio, *a lesson.*
Lĕgio, *a legion, a body of men.*
Mentio, *mention.*
Nōtio, *a notion* or *idea.*
Opīnio, *an opinion.*
Optio, *a choice.*
Orātio, *a speech.*
Pensio, *a payment.*
Perduellio, *treason.*
Portio, *a part.*
Pōtio, *drink.*
Prōdĭtio, *treachery.*
Proscriptio, *a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects.*
Quæstio, *an inquiry.*
Rĕbellio, *rebellion.*
Rĕgio, *a country.*
Rĕlātio, *a telling.*
Rĕlĭgio, *religion.*
Rĕmissio, *a slackening.*
Sanctio, *a confirmation.*
Sectio, *the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.*
Sēdĭtio, *a mutiny.*
Sessio, *a sitting.*

Stātio, *a station.*
Suspīcio, *mistrust.*
Tītillātio, *a tickling.*
Translātio, *a transfer-ring.*
Usūcăpio, *the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.*
Vacātio, *freedom from labour, &c.*
Vīsio, *an apparition.*

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curcūlio, *the throat-pipe, the weasand.*
Pāpĭlio, *a butterfly.*
Pūgio, *a dagger.*
Pūsio, a *little child.*
Scīpio, *a staff.*
Scorpio, *a scorpion.*
Septentrio, *the north.*
Stellio, *a lizard.*
Tītio, *a firebrand.*
Unio, *a pearl.*
Vespertīlio, *a bat.*
Ternio, *the number three.*
Quāternio, ——*four.*
Sēnio, —— *six.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭnis*; as, *ărundo, arundĭnis*, a reed; *ĭmāgo, imagĭnis*, an image.

Arundo, *a reed*, fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ărundo,	N. arundĭnes,
G. arundĭnis,	G. arundĭnum,
D. arundĭni,	D. arundĭnĭbus,
A. arundĭnem,	A. arundĭnes,
V. arundo,	V. arundĭnes,
A. arundĭne.	A. arundĭnĭbus.

So,

Ærūgo, *rust (of brass.)*
Cālīgo, *darkness.*
Cartĭlāgo, *a gristle.*
Crĕpīdo, *a creek, bank.*
Farrāgo, *a mixture.*
Ferrūgo, *rust (of iron.)*
Formīdo, *fear.*
Fūlīgo, *soot.*
Grando, *hail.*
Hīrūdo, *a horse-leech.*
Hirundo, *a swallow.*
Intercăpēdo, *a space between.*
Lānūgo, *down.*
Lentīgo, *a pimple.*
Orīgo, *an origin.*
Porrīgo, *scurf*, or *scales in the head; dandruff.*
Prŏpāgo, *a lineage.*
Rūbīgo, *rust, mildew.*
Sartāgo, *a frying-pan*
Scātūrīgo, *a spring.*
Testūdo, *a tortoise.*
Torpēdo, *a numbness.*
Ulīgo, *the natural moisture of the earth.*
Vălētūdo, *health.*
Vertīgo, *a dizziness.*
Virgo, *a virgin.*
Vŏrāgo, *a gulf.*

But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -ĭnis, *a hinge.*
Cūdo, -ōnis, *a leather cap.*
Harpāgo, -ōnis, *a drag.*
Lĭgo, -ōnis, *a spade.*
Margo, -ĭnis, *the brink of a river;* also feminine.
Ordo, -ĭnis, *order.*
Tendo, -ĭnis, *a tendon.*
Udo, -ōnis, a *linen* or *woollen sock.*

Cŭpīdo, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *ĭnis*:

Apollo, -ĭnis, *the god Apollo.*
Hŏmo, -ĭnis, *a man*, or *woman.*
Nēmo, -ĭnis, m. or f. *no body.*
Turbo, -ĭnis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Căro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. *Anio*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*. *Nerio, Neriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien, Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *onis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *ûs* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didûs;* dat. *Didô*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido, Didōnis:* so *ēcho, -ûs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo, -ûs*, the name of a ship; *hālo, -ōnis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

Dĭdo, *Dido*, the name of a woman, fem.

	Sing.
Nom.	Dido,
Gen.	Didōnis *or* Didûs,
Dat.	Didōni *or* Didô,
Acc.	Didōnem *or* Didô,
Voc.	Dido,
Abl.	Didōne *or* Didô.

C, D, L.

3. **Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is;* as,**

Anĭmal, anĭmālis, a living creature; *tŏral, -ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec, halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervīcal, *a bolster.* Mĭnerval, *entry-money.* Pŭteal, *a well-cover.* Cūbĭtal, *a cushion.* Mĭnūtal, *minced meat.* Vectīgal, *a tax.*

Except, Consul, -ŭlis, m. *a consul.* Fel, fellis, n. *gall.* Lac, lactis, n. *milk.* Mel, mellis, n. *honey.* Mūgil, -ĭlis, m. *a mullet-fish.* Sal, sălis, m. or n. *salt.* Săles, -ium, pl. m. *witty sayings.* Sol, sōlis, m. *the sun.*

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is;* as, *Dāvid, Davīdis.*

N.

4. **Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,**

Cănon, -ŏnis, *a rule.* Dæmon, -ŏnis, *a spirit.* Delphin, -īnis, *a dolphin.* Gnōmon, -ŏnis, *the cock of a dial.* Hȳmen, -ĕnis, *the god of marriage.* Lien, -ēnis, *the milt.* Pæan, ānis, *a song.* Phȳsiognōmon, -ŏnis, *one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.* Ren, rēnis, *the reins.* Splen, -ēnis, *the spleen.* Sȳren, -ēnis, f. *a Syren.* Tītan, -ānis, *the sun.*

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men*, are neuter, and make their genitive in *ĭnis;* as, *flūmen, flumĭnis*, a river. So,

Abdōmen, *the paunch.* Acūmen, *sharpness.* Agmen, *an army on march.* Alūmen, *alum.* Bĭtūmen, *a kind of clay.* Căcūmen, *the top.* Carmen, *a song, a poem.* Cognōmen, *a sir-name.* Cŏlūmen, *a support.* Crīmen, *a crime.* Discrīmen, *a difference.* Exāmen, *a swarm of bees.* Fŏrāmen, *a hole.* Germen, *a sprout.* Grāmen, *grass.* Lĕgūmen, *all kinds of pulse.* Lūmen, *light.* Nōmen, *a name.* Nūmen, *the Deity.* Omen, *a presage.* Pūtāmen, *a nut-shell.* Sagmen, *vervain, an herb.* Sēmen, *a seed.* Spĕcīmen, *a proof.* Stāmen, *the warp.* Subtēmen, *the woof.* Tegmen, *a covering* Vīmen, *a twig.* Vŏlūmen, *a folding*

The following nouns are likewise neuter;

Glūten, -ĭnis, *glue*. Inguen, -ĭnis, *the groin*.
Unguen, -ĭnis, *ointment*. Pollen, -ĭnis, *fine flour*.

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *ĭnis; pecten*, a comb; *tubĭcen*, a trumpeter; *tibĭcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, or *oscĭnis*, sc. *ăvis*, f. a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine; *Sindon*, *-ŏnis*, fine linen; *aēdon*, *-ŏnis*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, *-ŏnis*, a bird called the king's fisher; *īcon*, *-ŏnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laŏmĕdon*, *-ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achĕron*, *chamæleon*, *Phaĕthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

Calcar, *a spur*, neut.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	calcar,	*Nom.*	calcāria,
Gen.	calcāris,	*Gen.*	calcārium,
Dat.	calcāri,	*Dat.*	calcarĭbus,
Acc.	calcar,	*Acc.*	calcāria,
Voc.	calcar,	*Voc.*	calcāria,
Abl.	calcāri.*	*Abl.*	calcarĭbus.

So,

Guttur, -ŭris, *the throat*.
Jūbar, -ăris, *a sun-beam*.
Lăcūnar, -āris, *a ceiling*.
Murmur, -ŭris, *a noise*.
Nectar, -ăris, *drink of the gods*.
Pulvīnar, -āris, *a pillow*.
Sulphur, -ŭris, *sulphur*.

Except, Ebur, -ŏris, n. *ivory*.
Far, fărris, n. *corn*.
Fĕmur, -ŏris, n. *the thigh*.
Furfur, -ŭris, m. *bran*.
Fur, fūris, m. *a thief*.
Hēpar, -ătis, *or* -ătos, n. *the liver*.
Jĕcur, -ŏris, *or* jecĭnŏris, n. *the liver*.
Rōbur, -ŏris, n. *strength*.
Sălar, -ăris, m. *a trout*.
Turtur, -ŭris, m. *a turtle-dove*.
Vultur, -ŭris, m. *a vulture*.

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Anser, *ansĕris*, a goose or gander; *agger*, *-ĕris*, a rampart; *āer*, *-ĕris*, the air; *carcer*, *-ĕris*, a prison; *asser*, *-ĕris*, and *assis*, *-is*, a plank; *dolor*, *-ōris*, pain; *color*, *-ōris*, a colour. So,

Actor, *a doer, a pleader.*
Crēdĭtor, *he that trusts or lends.*
Cruor, *gore.*
Dēbĭtor, *a debtor.*
Fœtor, *an ill smell.*
Hŏnor, *honour.*
Lector, *a reader.*
Lictor, *an officer among the Romans, who attended the magistrates.*
Līvor, *paleness, malice.*
Nīdor, *a strong smell.*
Odor, *and* -os, *a smell.*
Olor, *a swan.*
Pædor, *filth.*
Pastor, *a shepherd.*
Prætor, *a commander.*
Pŭdor, *shame.*
Rŭbor, *blushing.*
Rūmor, *a report.*
Săpor, *a taste.*
Sartor, *a cobbler* or *tailor.*
Sător, *a sower, a father.*
Sŏpor, *sleep.*
Splendor, *brightness.*
Sponsor, *a surety.*
Squālor, *filthiness.*
Stŭpor, *dulness.*
Sūtor, *a sewer.*

* See Exc. in Abl. Sing. page 51. Neuter nouns in *ur* have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, and the Nom. Plur. in *a*.

Tĕpor, *warmth*. Terror, *dread*. Tĭmor, *fear*. Tonsor, *a barber*. Tūtor, *a guardian*. Văpor, *a vapour*. Vēnātor, *a hunter*.

Rhĕtor, a rhetorician, has *rhetŏris*; *castor*, a beaver, *-ŏris*.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Acer, -ĕris, *a maple tree*.
Ador, -ŏris, *fine wheat*.
Æquor, -ŏris, *a plain, the sea*.
Cădāver, -ĕris, *a dead carcass*.
Cĭcer, -ĕris, *vetches*.
Cor, cordis, *the heart*.
Iter, itinĕris, *a journey*.
Marmor, -ŏris, *marble*.
Păpāver, -ĕris, *poppy*.
Pĭper, -ĕris, *pepper*.
Spinther, -ĕris, *a clasp*.
Tūber, -ĕris, *a swelling*.
Uber, -ĕris, *a pap*, or *fatness*.
Ver, vēris, *the spring*.

Arbor, *-ŏris*, a tree, is fem. *Tuber*, *-ĕris*, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc., but when put for the tree, is fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris*, in the genitive; as, hic *imber*, *imbris*, a shower. So *Insŭber*, *Octŏber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter*, *ventris*, the belly; *păter*, *patris*, a father; *frăter*, *-tris*, a brother; *accĭpĭter*, *-tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātĕris*; *sōter*, *-ĕris*, a saviour; *lăter*, a tile, *latĕris*; *Jūpĭter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis*; *linter*, *-tris*, a little boat, is masc. or femin.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as,

Ætas, *an age*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	ætas,	*Nom.*	ætātes,
Gen.	ætātis,	*Gen.*	ætātŭm,*
Dat.	ætāti,	*Dat.*	ætatĭbus,
Acc.	ætātem,	*Acc.*	ætātes,
Voc.	ætas,	*Voc.*	ætātes,
Abl.	ætāte.	*Abl.*	ætatĭbus.

So,

Æstas, *the summer*.
Piĕtas, *piety*.
Pŏtestas, *power*.
Prŏbĭtas, *probity*.
Sătiĕtas, *a glut* or *disgust*.
Sĭmultas, *a feud, a grudge*.
Tempestas, *a time, a tempest*.
Ubertas, *fertility*.
Vērĭtas, *truth*.
Voluntas, *will*.
Vŏluptas, *pleasure*.
Anas, *a duck*, *has* ănătis.

Exc. 1. As, assis, m. *a piece of money*, or *any thing which may be divided into twelve parts*.
Mas, măris, m. *a male*.
Vas, vădis, m. *a surety*.
Vas, văsis, n. *a vessel*.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; as, *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dĕcunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as,

---

* See note, page 37.

gigas, gigantis, a giant; *adămas, -antis*, an adamant; *elĕphas, -antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ădis*, or *ădos;* as, *lampas, lampădis*, or *lampădos*, a lamp; *drŏmas, -ădis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcădis*, or *-ădos*. Those that are neuter have *ătis;* as, *bucĕras, -ătis*, an herb; *artocreas, -ătis*, a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is;* as,

rūpes, rupis, a rock; *nūbes, nubis*, a cloud. So,

Ædes, *or* -is, *a temple; plur. a house.*
Cautes, *a rugged rock.*
Clādes, *an overthrow, destruction.*
Crātes, *a hurdle.*
Fămes, *hunger.*
Fĭdes, *a fiddle.*
Lues, *a plague.*
Mōles, *a heap.*
Nătes, *the buttock.*
Pălumbes, m. *or* f. *a pigeon.*
Prōles, *an offspring.*
Pūbes, *youth.*
Sēpes, *a hedge.*
Sŏbŏles, *an offspring.*
Strāges, *a slaughter.*
Strues, *a heap.*
Sūdes, *a stake.*
Tābes, *a consumption.*
Vulpes, *a fox.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Ales, -ĭtis, *a bird.*
Ames, -ĭtis, *a fowler's staff.*
Aries, -ĕtis, *a ram.*
Bes, bessis, *two thirds of a pound.*
Cespes, -ĭtis, *a turf.*
Eques, -ĭtis, *a horseman.*
Fŏmes, -ĭtis, *fuel.*
Gurges, -ĭtis, *a whirlpool.*
Hæres, -ēdis, *an heir.*
Indĭges, -ĕtis, *a man deified.*
Interpres, -ĕtis, *an interpreter.*
Lĭmes, -ĭtis, *a limit* or *bound.*
Mīles, -ĭtis, *a soldier.*
Obses, -ĭdis, *a hostage.*
Palmes, -ĭtis, *a vine-branch.*
Păries, ĕtis, *a wall.*
Pes, pĕdis, *the foot.*
Pĕdes, -ĭtis, *a footman.*
Poples, -ĭtis, *the ham of the leg.*
Præses, -ĭdis, *a president.*
Sătelles, -ĭtis, *a life-guard.*
Stīpes, -ĭtis, *the stock of a tree.*
Termes, -ĭtis, *an olive-bough.*
Trāmes, -ĭtis, *a path.*
Vēles, -ĭtis, *a light-armed soldier.*
Vātes, vatis, *a prophet.*
Verres, verris, *a boar-pig.*

But *ales, miles, hæres, interpres, obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Abies, -ĕtis, *a fir-tree.*
Cĕres, -ĕris, *the goddess of corn.*
Merces, -ēdis, *a reward, hire.*
Merges, -ĭtis, *a handful of corn.*
Quies, -ētis, *rest.*
Rĕquies, -ētis; *or* requiēi, (*of the fifth declension*) *rest.*
Sĕges, -ĕtis, *growing corn.*
Tĕges, -ĕtis, *a mat* or *coverlet.*
Tŭdes, -is, *or* -ĭtis, *a hammer.*

To these add the following adjectives:

Ales, -ĭtis, *swift.*	Præpes, -ĕtis, *swift-winged.*
Bĭpes, -ĕdis, *two-footed.*	Rĕses, -ĭdis, *idle.*
Quadrŭpes, -ĕdis, *four-footed.*	Sospes, -ĭtis, *safe.*
Dĕses, -ĭdis, *slothful.*	Sŭperstes, -ĭtis, *surviving.*
Dīves, -ĭtis, *rich.*	Tĕres, -ĕtis, *round and long, smooth.*
Hĕbes, -ĕtis, *dull.*	Lŏcuples, -ētis, *rich.*
Perpes, -ĕtis, *perpetual.*	Mansues, -ētis, *gentle.*

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as hic *ăcīnăces*, *-is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar: but some are neuter; as, hoc *căcŏethes*, an evil custom; *hippŏmănes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pănăces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *-ētis* in the genitive; as, hic *magnes*, *magnētis*, a load-stone; *tăpes*, *-ētis*, tapestry; *lĕbes*, *-ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *-ētis*, or *is*; as, *Dăres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension. *Achilles* has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillĕi*, or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillĕus*. So *Ulysses*, *Pĕricles*, *Verres*, *Aristŏtĕles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear; *ăvis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

Apis, *a bee.*	Messis, *a harvest or crop.*	Pestis, *a plague.*
Bilis, *the gall, anger.*	Nāris, *the nostril.*	Rătis, *a raft.*
Classis, *a fleet.*	Neptis, *a niece.*	Rŭdis, *a rod.*
Fēlis, *a cat.*	Ovis, *a sheep.*	Vallis, *a valley.*
Fŏris, *a door; oftener* plur. fores, *-ium.*	Pellis, *a skin.*	Vestis, *a garment.*
		Vītis, *a vine.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, axis, *an axle-tree.*	Ensis, *a sword.*	Patruēlis, *a cousin-german.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot, an ewer.*	Fascis, *a bundle.*	Piscis, *a fish.*
Callis, *a beaten road.*	Fēciālis, *a herald.*	Postis, *a post.*
Caulis, *the stalk of an herb.*	Follis, *a pair of bellows.*	Sŏdālis, *a companion.*
Collis, *a hill.*	Fustis, *a staff.*	Torris, *a fire-brand.*
Cenchris, *a kind of serpent.*	Mensis, *a month.*	Unguis, *the nail.*
	Mūgīlis, *or* -il, *a mullet-fish.*	Vectis, *a lever.*
	Orbis, *a circle, the world.*	Vermis, *a worm.*

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭdis*; as, *tўrannis*, *tўrannĭdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cĭnis, -ĕris, *ashes.*
Cŭcŭmis, -is, *or* -ĕris, *a cucumber.*
Dis, dītis, *the god of riches;* or *rich,* an adj.
Glis, glīris, *a dormouse, a rat.*
Impūbis, *or* impūbes, -is, *or* -ĕris, *not marriageable.*
Lăpis, -ĭdis, *a stone.*
Pūbis, *or* pūbes, -is, *or oftener,* -ĕris, *marriageable.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sēmis, -issis, *the half of any thing.*
Vōmis, *or* -er, -ĕris, *a ploughshare.*

Pulvis, and *cinis,* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberĭbuscaulem foliis,* a stalk with downy leaves. *Virg. Æn.* xii. 413. *Impūbe corpus,* the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes, -is,* f.) of youth. *Horat. Epod.* 5. 13. *Exsanguis,* bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Amnis, *a river.*
Anguis, *a snake.*
Cănālis, *a conduit-pipe.*
Clūnis, *the buttock.*
Corbis, *a basket.*
Fīnis, *the end;* fines, *the boundaries of a field or territories, is always masc.*
Scrŏbis, *or* scrobs, *a ditch.*
Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *ĭdis: Cassis, -ĭdis,* a helmet; *cuspis, -ĭdis,* the point of a spear; *capis, -ĭdis,* a kind of cup; *prōmulsis, -ĭdis,* a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis,* strife, f. has *lītis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: some have *eos* or *ios;* as, *hærĕsis, -eos,* or *-ios,* or *-is,* a heresy; so, *băsis,* f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis,* a phrase; *phthisis,* a consumption; *poēsis,* poetry; *metrŏpŏlis,* a chief city, &c. Some have *ĭdis,* or *ĭdos;* as, *Păris, -ĭdis,* or *-ĭdos,* the name of a man; *aspis, -ĭdis,* f. an asp; *ĕphēmĕris, -ĭdis,* f. a day-book; *īris, -ĭdis,* f. the rainbow; *pyxis, ĭdis,* f. a box. So *Ægis,* the shield of Pallas; *canthăris,* a sort of fly; *pĕriscĕlis,* a garter; *proboscis,* an elephant's trunk; *pȳrămis,* a pyramid; and *tigris,* a tiger, *-ĭdis,* seldom *tigris:* all fem. Part have *ĭdis,* as, *Psophis, -ĭdis,* the name of a city: others have *ĭnis;* as, *Eleusis, ĭnis,* the name of a city; and some have *entis;* as, *Sĭmois, Simoĕntis,* the name of a river. *Chăris,* one of the Graces, has *Charĭtis.*

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis;* as,

nĕpos, -ōtis, a grandchild; *săcerdos, -ōtis,* a priest; also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, *or* -or, -ŏris, *a tree.*
Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*
Eos, eōis, *the morning.*
Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister,* or *brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*
Hŏnos, *or* -or, -ōris, *honour.*
Lăbos, *or* -or, -ōris, *labour.*
Lĕpos, *or* -or, ōris, *wit.*
Mos, mōris, *a custom.*
Ros, rōris, *dew.*
Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper;* also fem.
Hēros, herōis, *a hero.*
Mīnos, -ōis, *a king of Crete.*
Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*
Bos, bŏvis, m. or f. *an ox* or *cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os, ossis,* a bone; and *ōs, ōris,* the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis,* as *heros, -ōis,* a hero, or great man: So *Mīnos,* a king of Crete; *Tros,* a Trojan; *thos,* a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ŏris;* as,

pectus, pectŏris, the breast; *tempus, tempŏris,* time. So,

Corpus, *a body.*
Dĕcus, *honour.*
Dēdĕcus, *disgrace.*
Făcĭnus, *a great action.*
Fœnus, *usury.*
Frīgus, *cold.*
Littus, *a shore.*
Nĕmus, *a grove.*
Pĕcus, *cattle.*
Pĕnus, *provisions.*
Pignus, *a pledge.*
Stercus, *dung.*
Tergus, *a hide.*

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris:*

Acus, *chaff.*
Fūnus, *a funeral.*
Fœdus, *a covenant.*
Gĕnus, *a kind,* or *kindred.*
Glŏmus, *a clew.*
Lătus, *the side.*
Mūnus, *a gift,* or *office.*
Olus, *pot-herbs.*
Onus, *a burden.*
Opus, *a work.*
Pondus, *a weight.*
Rūdus, *rubbish.*
Scĕlus, *a crime.*
Sīdus, *a star.*
Vellus, *a fleece of wool*
Viscus, *an entrail.*
Ulcus, *a bile.*
Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus *acĕris, funĕris,* &c. *Glŏmus,* a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi,* of the second declension. *Vĕnus,* the goddess of love, and *vĕtus,* old, an adjective, likewise have *ĕris.*

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously:

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.*
Pălus, -ūdis, *a pool* or *morass.*
Pĕcus, -ŭdis, *a sheep.*
Subscus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth,* or *goddess of the earth.*
Jŭventus, -ūtis, *youth.*
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety.*
Sĕnectus, -ūtis, *old age.*
Servĭtus, -ūtis, *slavery.*
Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*
Intercus, -ŭtis, *an hydropsy.*

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.*
Jus, jūris, *law* or *right;* also *broth.*
Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any sore.*
Rus, rūris, *the country.*
Thus, thūris, *frankincense.*
So Mus, mūris, masc. *a mouse.*

Ligus, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligŭris; lĕpus*, masc. a hare, *lepŏris; sus* masc. or fem. a swine, *suis; grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*.

Œdĭpus, the name of a man, has *Œdipŏdis;* sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdĭpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ŏdis;* as, *tripus*, masc. a tripod, *tripŏdis;* but *lăgōpus, -ōdis*, a kind of bird, or, the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis;* as, *Trapĕzus, Trapezuntis; Opus, Opuntis;* Hierĭchus, -untis, *Jericho*.

YS.

12. **Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *yis*, or *yos;* as,**

Hæc *chĕlys, chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Căpys, Capyis*, or *-yos*, the name of a man; sometimes they have *ȳdis*, or *ȳdos;* as, hæc *chlămys, chlamȳdis*, or *chlamȳdos*, a soldier's cloak; and sometimes *ȳnis* or *ȳnos;* as, *Trăchys, Trachȳnis*, or *Trachȳnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. **The nouns ending in *æs*, and *aus*, are,**

Æs, æris, n. *brass*, or *money*.	Laus, laudis, f. *praise*.
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud*.	Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a surety*.

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos;* as, *Orpheus, Orpheos; Tereus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphĕus*, genit. *Orphĕi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphî*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. **Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis;* as,**

Trabs, trăbis, a beam; *scobs, scŏbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiĕmis*, winter *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stĭpis*, alms; *pars, pártis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chălybs, -ȳbis, *steel*.	Mĕrops, -ŏpis, *a woodpecker*.
Dens, -tis, *a tooth*.	Mons, -tis, *a mountain*.
Fons, -tis, *a well*.	Pons, -tis, *a bridge*.
Gryps, grȳphis, *a griffin*.	Seps, sĕpis, *a kind of serpent;* but
Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropsy*.	Seps, sēpis, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine:

Adeps, adĭpis, *fatness*.	Serpens, -tis, *a serpent*.
Rŭdens, -tis, *a cable*.	Stirps, stirpis, *the root of a tree*.
Scrobs, scrŏbis, *a ditch*.	Stirps, *an offspring*, always fem.

Anĭmans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3 Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i;* as, hæc *forceps, forcĭpis*,

a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ĭpis*, a prince or princess; *partĭceps, -cĭpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælĭbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *căput* have *cĭpĭtis;* as, *præceps, præcipĭtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancĭpĭtis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cĭpĭtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucŭpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis:*

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.*	Juglans, -dis, *a walnut.*
Glans, glandis, *an acorn.*	Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So *librĭpens, libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor;* as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vecors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis:* thus, *iens, euntis; quiens, queuntis; rĕdiens, redeuntis; nequiens, nequeuntis:* but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tĭryns*, a city in Greece, the birthplace of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *căput, capĭtis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sincĭput, sincĭpĭtis*, the forehead; and *occĭput, -ĭtis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis;* as, *lux, lūcis*, light.

Vox *the voice*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	vox,	*Nom.*	vōces,
Gen.	vōcis,	*Gen.*	vōcum,
Dat.	vōci,	*Dat.*	vōcĭbus,
Acc.	vōcem,	*Acc.*	vōces,
Voc.	vox,	*Voc.*	voces,
Abl.	vōce.	*Abl.*	vōcĭbus.

So,

Appendix, -ĭcis, *an addition;* dim. -icŭla.	Crux, crŭcis, *a cross.*	Merx, -cis, *merchandise.*
Cĕlox, -ōcis, *a pinnace.*	Fæx, -cis, *dregs.*	Nutrix, -īcis, *a nurse.*
Cervix, -īcis, *the neck.*	Falx, -cis, *a scythe.*	Nux, nŭcis, *a nut.*
Cĭcātrix, -īcis, *a scar.*	Fax, -ăcis, *a torch.*	Pax, -ācis, *peace.*
Cornix, -īcis, *a crow.*	Filix, -ĭcis, *a fern.*	Pix, pĭcis, *pitch.*
Cŏturnix, -īcis, *a quail.*	Lanx, -cis, *a plate.*	Rādix, -īcis, *a root.*
Coxendix, -ĭcis, *the hip.*	Lōdix, -īcis, *a sheet.*	Sălix, -ĭcis, *a willow.*
	Mĕretrix, -īcis, *a courtezan.*	Vībix, *or* -ex, īcis, *the mark of a wound.*

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax, -ācis*, a breast-plate; *Cŏrax, -ăcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *ĭcis;* as, *pollex, -ĭcis*, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine:

Apex, *the tuft* or *tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself*, or *the top of any thing.*
Artĭfex, *an artist.*
Carnĭfex, *an executioner.*
Caudex, *the trunk of a tree.*
Cīmex, *a bug.*
Cōdex, *a book.*
Cŭlex, *a gnat, a midge.*
Frŭtex, *a shrub.*
Index, *an informer.*
Lătex, *any liquor.*
Mūrex, *a shell-fish, purple.*
Pōdex, *the breech.*
Pontĭfex, *a chief priest.*
Pūlex, *a flea.*
Ramex, *a rupture.*
Sōrex, *a rat.*
Vertex, *the crown of the head.*
Vortex, *a whirlpool.*

Vervex, a wether sheep, has *vervēcis; fænĭsex*, a mower of hay, *fænisĕcis; rĕsex*, m. *-ĕcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Călix, -ĭcis, *a cup.*
Călyx, -ўcis, *the bud of a flower.*
Coccyx, -ўgis, *or* ўcis, *a cuckoo.*
Fornix, -ĭcis, *a vault.*
Oryx, -ўgis, *a wild goat.*
Phœnix, -īcis, *a bird so called.*
Trādux, -ŭcis, *a graff* or *offset of a vine;* also fem.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine:

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace.*
Pănax, -ăcis, *the herb all-heal.*
Clīmax, -ăcis, *a ladder.*
Forfex, -ĭcis, *a pair of scissors.*
Hālex, -ēcis, *a herring.*
Smīlax, -ăcis, *the herb rope-weed.*
Carex, -īcis, *a sedge.*
Sŭpellex, supellectĭlis, *household furniture.*

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, *the heel*, or *the end of any thing, the goal;* but calx, *lime*, is always fem.
Cortex, -ĭcis, *the bark of a tree.*
Hystrix, -ĭcis, *a porcupine.*
Imbrex, -ĭcis, *a gutter* or *roof tile.*
Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beast of very quick sight.*
Līmax, -ăcis, *a snail.*
Obex, -ĭcis, *a bolt* or *bar.*
Perdix, īcis, *a partridge.*
Pūmex, -icis, *a pumice stone.*
Rŭmex, -ĭcis, *sorrel, an herb.*
Sandix, -īcis, *a purple colour.*
Sĭlex, -ĭcis, *a flint.*
Vārix, -ĭcis, *a swollen vein.*

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquĭlex, -ĕgis, *a well-maker.*
Conjunx, *or* -ux, -ŭgis, *a husband* or *wife.*
Frux (*not used*), frūgis, f. *corn.*
Grex, grĕgis, m. or f. *a flock.*
Lex, lēgis, f. *a law.*
Phălanx, -angis, f. *a phalanx.*
Rēmex, -ĭgis, *a rower.*
Rex, rēgis, *a king.*
Nix, nĭvis, f. *snow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *night.*
Sĕnex, sĕnis, & -ĭcis, (an adj.) *old.*

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and manner of declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx, bombўcis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ŏnyx*, masc. or fem. *onўchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardŏnyx; lărynx, laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx, Phrўgis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx, -ngis*, a fabulous hag; *strix, -īgis*, f. a screech-owl; *Styx, -ўgis*, f. a river in hell; *Hўlax, -ctis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax, Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e;* as, *Esuriente lcōni ex ore exculpĕre prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion. Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. Virg. *Æn.* x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR

Exc. 1 The following nouns have the accusative in *im:*

Amussis, f. *a mason's rule.*	Răvis, f. *hoarseness.*
Būris, f. *the beam of a plough.*	Sĭnāpis, f. *mustard.*
Cannăbis, f. *hemp.*	Sĭtis, f. *thirst.*
Cŭcŭmis, m. *a cucumber.*	Tussis, f. *a cough*
Gummis, f. *gum.*	Vis, f. *strength.*
Mĕphītis, f. *a damp* or *strong smell.*	

To these add proper names, 1. of cities and other places; as, *Hispălis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Lybia;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibĕris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquiver, in Spain; so, *Albis, Arăris, Athĕsis, Liris, &c.*—3. of gods; as, *Anūbis, Apis, Osīris, Serăpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin, Tibĕrim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im;* as,

Aquālis, m. *a waterpot.*	Pelvis, f. *a basin.*	Sĕcūris, f. *an axe.*
Clāvis, f. *a key.*	Puppis, f. *the stern of a ship.*	Sēmentis, f. *a sowing.*
Cūtis, f. *the skin.*		Strĭgīlis, f. *a horse-comb.*
Febris, f. *a fever.*	Restis, f. *a rope.*	Turris, f. *a tower.*
Nāvis, f. *a ship.*		

Thus *navem* or *navim; puppem* or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim, aurim, ovim, pestim, vallim, vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a;* as, *lampas, lampădis* or *lampădos, lampădem* or *lampăda.* In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros, Trois, Troem* or *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a; Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pana, æthĕra, delphīna.*

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in;* sometimes in *ĭdem*, never *ĭda;* as, *Păris, Parĭdis* or *Parĭdos, Parim* or *Parin*, sometimes *Părĭdem*, never *Parĭda.*—So, *Daphnis.*

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *ĭdem* or *ĭda*, but rarely *im* or *in;* as, *Elis, Elĭdis* or *Elĭdos, Elĭdem* or *Elĭda;* seldom *Elim* or *Elin;* a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys, ўdos*, have *ўdem* or *ўda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlămys, -ўdem* or *ўda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n;* as, *metamorphōsis, -eos*, or *-ios, metamorphōsim* or *-in*, a change. *Tēthys, -yos* or *-yis, Tethym* or *-yn;* the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea;* as, *Thēseus, Thesea; Tydeus, Tydea.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sĕdīle, sedīli; anĭmal, animāli; calcar, calcāri.* Except proper names; as, *Prœneste*, abl. *Prœneste*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar:*

Far, farre, *corn*	Nectar, -ăre, *drink of the gods.*
Hĕpar, -ăte, *the liver.*	Par, păre, *a match, a pair.*
Jŭbar, -ăre, *a sun beam.*	Sal, săle, *or* -i, m. *or* n. *salt.*

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi;* but *cannăbis, Bœtis*, and *Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i;* as, *turris, turre*, or *turri;* but *restis*, a rope, and *cŭtis*, the skin, have *e* only.*

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bĭpennis, -i*, a halbert; *mŏlāris, -i*, a millstone; *quadrĭrēmis, -i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis, -i; Dĕcember, -bri*, &c. But *rŭdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jŭvĕnis*, a young man, have *e* only; and likewise nouns ending in *il, x, ceps*, or *ns;* as,

Adŏlescens, *a young man.*	Princeps, *a prince.*	Torrens, *a brook.*
Infans, *an infant.*	Sĕnex, *an old man.*	Vĭgil, *a watchman.*

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y;* as, *Atys, Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermōnes, rupes.*

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is;* as, *puppes, puppeis*, or *puppis.*

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capĭta, itinĕra:* but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia;* as, *sedīlia, calcāria.*

---

* Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fīnis, supellex, vectis, pŭgil*, a champion; *mŭgil* or *mugīlis;* so *rus, occĭput:* Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi;* as, *habĭtat Carthagĭne* or *Carthagĭni*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis, classis, sors, imber, anguis, avis, postis, fustis, amnis*, and *ignis;* but these have oftener *e*. *Canālis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i;* as, *æstāti, cani, lapĭdi, ovi;* &c.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or either *e* or *i*, make the genitive plural in *ium;* but if the ablative be in *e* only, the genitive plural has *um;* as, *sedīle, sedīli, sedilium; turris, turre* or *turri, turrium; caput, capĭte, capĭtum.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e;* as, *mas*, a male, *măre, marium; vas*, a surety, *vădium:* but polysyllables have rather *um;* as, *cīvĭtas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium;* as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium.* So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium; urbs*, a city, *urbium.*

But the following have *um; parens, vātes, pānis, jŭvĕnis,* and *cănis.* Horace, however, has *parentium.* Od. iii. 4, 23.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Arx, arcis, f. *a castle.*	Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat.*
Caro, carnis, f. *flesh.*	Lis, lītis, f. *strife.*
Cohors, -tis, f. *a company.*	Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse.*
Cor, cordis, n. *the heart.*	Nix, nīvis, f. *snow.*
Cos, cōtis, f. *a hone* or *whetstone.*	Nox, noctis, f. *the night.*
Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry.*	Os, ossis, n. *a bone.*
Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws.*	Quĭris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Glis, glīris, m. *a rat.*	Samnis, -ītis, m. or f. *a Samnite.*
Lar, lăris, m. *a household god.*	Uter, utris, m. *a bottle.*

Thus *Samnitium, lintrium, litium,* &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as:* as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium; bes*, eight ounces, *bessium.*

Bos, an ox or cow, has *boum;* and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus.*

Greek nouns have generally *um;* as, *Măcĕdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *monocĕros*, an unicorn; *lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian; *Macedŏnum, Arăbum, Æthiŏpum, monocerōtum, lyncum, Thrăcum.* But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ôn;* as, *Epigramma, epigrammătum*, or *epigrammătôn*, an epigram; *metamorphōsis, -ium*, or *-eôn.*

Obs. 1. Nouns, which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes*, m. souls departed, *manium; cælĭtes*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cælĭtum;* because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cœles.* But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliōrum.* So, *Bacchanalia, Compitalia, Terminalia,* &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *ûm;* as, *nocentûm* for *nocentium:* and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cælituum*, for *cælĭtum.* The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncŏpe*, and the latter by *Epenthĕsis.*

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *-tis* instead of *ĭbus;* as, *poēma*, a poem, *poemătis*, rather than *poematĭbus*, from the old nominative *poemătum*, of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or, when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin;* as, *Troăsi* or *Troăsin*, for *Troădĭbus*, from *Troas*, *Troădis* or *Troădos*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is;* as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as;* as, *lampas*, *lampădem* or *lampăda; lampădes* or *lampădas*. So *Tros*, *Troas; heros*, *herōas; Æthiops*, *Æthiŏpas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampădis* or *-ădos*, *-ădi*, *-ădem* or *-ăda*, *-as*, *-ăde*. Plur. *-ădes*, *-ădum*, *-adĭbus*, *-ădes* or *-ădas*, *-ădes*, *-adĭbus*.

Troas, f. *Troădis* or *dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-as*, *-de*. Plur. *Troădes*, *dum*, *-dĭbus* or *-si* or *-sin*, *-des* or *-das*, *-des*, *-dĭbus*

Tros, m. *Trois*, *Troi*, *Troem* or *-a*, *Tros*, *Troe*, &c.

Phillĭs, f. *Phillĭdis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *-dem* or *-da*, *-i* or *-is*, *-de.*

Păris, m. *Părĭdis* or *-dos*, *-di*, *dem* or *Parim* or *-in*, *-i*, *-de*.

Chlămys, f. *chlamȳdis* or *-ȳdos*, *-ȳdi*, *-ȳdem* or *ȳda*, *-ys*, *-ȳde*, &c.

Căpys, m. *Capȳis* or *-ȳos*, *-yi*, *-ym* or *-yn*, *-y*, *-ye* or *-y*.

Mĕtămorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-ios*, or *-eos*, *-i*, *-im* or *-in*, *-i*, *-i*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Voc.	us, *or* u,	Nom. Acc. Voc.	us, *or* ua,
Gen.	ûs,	Gen.	uum,
Dat.	*ui*,	Dat. Abl.	ĭbus.
Acc.	um,		
Abl.	u		

5*

Fructus, *fruit*, masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. fructus,	*fruit,*	N. fructus,	*fruits,*
G. fructûs,	*of fruit,*	G. fructuum,	*of fruits,*
D. fructui,	*to fruit,*	D. fructĭbus,	*to fruits,*
A. fructum,	*fruit,*	A. fructus,	*fruits,*
V. fructus,	*O fruit,*	V. fructus,	*O fruits,*
A. fructu,	*with fruit.*	A. fructĭbus,	*with fruits.*

Cornu, *a horn*, neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. cornu,	*a horn,*	N. cornua,	*horns,*
G. cornu,	*of a horn,*	G. cornuum,	*of horns,*
D. cornu,	*to a horn,*	D. cornĭbus,	*to horns,*
A. cornu,	*a horn,*	A. cornua,	*horns,*
V. cornu,	*O horn,*	V. cornua,	*O horns,*
A. cornu,	*with a horn.*	A. cornĭbus,	*with horns.*

In like manner decline,

Adĭtus, *an access.*
Anfractus, *a winding.*
Audĭtus, *the sense of hearing.*
Cantus, *a singing*, or *song.*
Căsus, *a fall, an accident*, or *chance.*
Cæstus, *a gauntlet.*
Cestus, *a marriage-girdle.*
Cœtus, *an assembly.*
Cultus, *worship, dress.*
Currus, *a chariot.*
Cursus, *a race.*
Dĕcessus, *a departure.*
Eventus, *an event.*
Exĕrcĭtus, *an army.*
Exĭtus, *an issue.*
Fastus, *pride.*
Flătus, *a blast.*
Flētus, *weeping.*
Fluctus, *a wave.*
Fœtus, *an offspring.*
Gĕlu, *ice.*
Gĕmĭtus, *a groan.*
Grădus, *a step, a degree.*
Gustus, *the taste.*
Hăbĭtus, *a habit, the state of mind or body.*
Hălĭtus, *breath.*
Haustus, *a draught.*
Ictus, *a stroke.*
Impĕtus, *an attack.*
Incessus, *a stately gait.*
Luctus, *grief.*
Luxus, *luxury, riot.*
Mĕtus, *fear.*
Missus, *a throw; a turn* or *heat in races.*
Mōtus, *a motion.*
Nexus, *servitude for debt.*
Nŭrus, f. *a daughter-in-law.*
Nūtus, *a nod.*
Obtūtus, *a look.*
Odōrătus, *the sense of smelling.*
Passus, *a pace.*
Princĭpātus, *pre-eminence.*
Prōcessus, *a progress.*
Progressus, *an advancement.*
Prospectus, *a view.*
Prŏventus, *an increase, revenue.*
Quæs'us, *gain.*
Questus, *a complaint.*
Rĕdĭtus, *a return, an income*
Rictus, *a grinning.*
Rīsus, *laughter.*
Rītus, *a rite, a ceremony.*
Ructus, *a belching.*
Saltus, *a leap, a forest.*
Sĕnātus, *the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.*
Sensus, *a sense, feeling, meaning.*
Sexus, *a sex.*
Sĭnus, *a bosom.*
Singultus, *a sob, the hickup.*
Sĭtus, *a situation.*
Stătus, *a posture.*
Socrus, f. *a mother-in-law.*
Spīrĭtus, *a breathing, spirit.*
Successus, *success.*
Sumptus, *expense.*
Tactus, *the touch.*
Tŏnitru, *thunder.*
Transĭtus, *a passage.*
Tumultus, *an uproar.*
Venātus, *hunting.*
Vīsus, *the sight.*
Victus, *food.*
Vultus, *the countenance.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, *a needle.*	Fĭcus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus, *a gallery.*
Anus, *an old woman.*	Mănus, *the hand.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Dŏmus, *a house.*	Pĕnus, *a store house.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masculine. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimănus*, having one hand; *centimănus*, &c. adj. *Quercus*, an oak, has *quercōrum*, and *-uum*, in the gen. pl. *Versus* has *versi*, *versōrum*, *versis*, as well as its regular cases. *Senātus* has also *-āti*, in the gen.

Domus is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dŏmus, *a house*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. domus,	*a house,*	N. domus,	*houses,*
G. domûs, *or* -mi,	*of a house,*	G. domōrum, *or*-uum,	*of houses,*
D. domui, *or* -mô,	*to a house,*	D. domĭbus,	*to houses,*
A. domum,	*a house,*	A. domos, *or* -us,	*houses,*
V. domus,	*O house,*	V. domus,	*O houses,*
A. domo,	*with a house.*	A. domĭbus,	*with houses.*

Note. *Domûs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, *or* of home; as *meminĕris domi*. Terent. Eun. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ŭbus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, *a needle.*	Lăcus, *a lake.*	Spĕcus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Trĭbus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Portus, *a harbour.*	Vĕru, *a spit.*
Genu, *the knee.*		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru* have likewise *ĭbus*; as, *portĭbus* or *portŭbus*.

Exc. 3. Jesus, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.*

---

*Nouns of the fourth declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructus*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuĭbus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuĭbus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causâ*, for *anûs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistĕre impĕtû*, for *impetui*. Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usû sibi*, for *usui*. Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm*, for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender.

TERMINATIONS.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Voc.	es,	Nom. Acc. Voc.	es,
Gen. Dat.	ĕi,	Gen.	ērum,
Acc.	em,	Dat. Abl.	ēbus.
Abl.	e.		

Res, *a thing*, fem.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. res,	*a thing,*	N. res,	*things,*
G. rĕi,	*of a thing,*	G. rērum,	*of things,*
D. rĕi,	*to a thing,*	D. rēbus,	*to things,*
A. rem,	*a thing,*	A. res,	*things,*
V. res,	*O thing,*	V. res,	*O things,*
A. re,	*with a thing.*	A. rēbus,	*with things*

In like manner decline,

Acies, *the edge of a thing*, or *an army in order of battle.*
Cărie*s*, *rottenness.*
Cæsăries, *the hair.*
Făcies, *the face.*
Glăcies, *ice.*
Inglŭvies, *gluttony.*
Măcies, *leanness.*
Mātĕries, *matter.*
Pernĭcies, *destruction.*
Prōlŭvies, *a looseness.*
Răbies, *madness.*
Sănies, *gore.*
Scăbies, *the scab*, or *itch.*
Sĕries, *an order*, or *row.*
Spĕcies, *an appearance.*
Sŭperfĭcies, *the surface.*
Tempĕries, *temperateness.*

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e;* as, *fide*, for *fidĕi.* Ov. M. 3. 341.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four; *ăbies*, a fir tree; *ăries*, a ram; *păries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension. *Requies* is of the third and fifth declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable, Defective,* and *Redundant.*

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes.

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, *a lake in Campania, hell.*
Dindymus, *a hill in Phrygia.*
Ismărus, *a hill in Thrace.*
Massĭcus, *a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*
Mænălus, *a hill in Arcadia.*
Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace.*
Tænărus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Tartărus, *hell.*
Taygĕtus, *a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna, Avernōrum; Dindyma, -ōrum,* &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga*, or *cacumĭna*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Jŏcus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca; lŏcus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in a discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Carbăsus, a sail, pl. *carbăsa; Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergăma*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

Cœlum, pl. *cœli*, heaven; *Elysium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter.*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra; frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular and feminine in the plural.*

Dēlĭcium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ; ĕpŭlum*, a banquet, *pl. ĕpŭlæ; balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

Heteroclites.

Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites;* as, *vas, vāsis*, a vessel, pl. *vāsa, vasōrum; jūgĕrum, jugĕri*, an acre, pl. *jūgĕra, jugĕrum, jugerĭbus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugĕris, and jugĕre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

In double nouns, both nouns are declined when combined in the nominative case; as,

Respublica, *a commonwealth*, fem.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. respublĭca,	N. respublĭcæ,
G. reipublĭcæ,	G. rerumpublicārum,
D. reipublĭcæ,	D. rebuspublĭcis,
A. rempublĭcam,	A. respublĭcas,
V. respublĭca,	V. respublĭcæ,
A. republĭcâ.	A. rebuspublĭcis.

Jusjurandum, *an oath*, neut.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. jusjurandum,	N. jurajuranda,
G. jurisjurandi,	G. *jurumjurandōrum*,*
D. jurijurando,	D. *juribusjurandis*,
A. jusjurandum,	A. jurajuranda,
V. jusjurandum,	V. jurajuranda,
A. jurejurando.	A. *juribusjurandis*.

If a nominative is combined with some other case, then the nominative only is declined; as,

Paterfamilias, *a master of a family*, masc.

N. paterfamilias,
G. patrisfamilias,
D. patrifamilias,
A. patremfamilias,
V. paterfamilias,
A. patrefamilias.

Some nouns are both of the second and third declension; as,

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Orpheus,	ei,	eo,	eum, or eon,	——	eo; 2d Declen.
	eos,	ei,	ea,	eu,	—; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Œdĭpus,	i,	o,	um,	—	o; 2d Declen.
	ŏdis,	ŏdi,	ŏdem,	u,	ŏde; 3d Declen.

N.	G.	D.	A.	V.	Ab.
Achilleus,	ei,	eo,	———	eu,	eo; 2d Declen.
Achilles,	lis, or lĕos,	li,	lem, or len,	les, or le,	le; 3d Declen.

* The Gen. Dat. and Abl. plural are not used.

Some nouns are of peculiar declension.

Singular.	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Jupĭter,	N. vis,	N. vires,
G. Jovis,	G. vis,	G. virium,
D. Jovi,	D. —	D. virĭbus,
A. Jovem,	A. vim,	A. vires,
V. Jupĭter,	V. vis,	V. vires,
A. Jove.	A. vi.	A. virĭbus.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. bos,	N. boves,
G. bovis,	G. boum,
D. bovi,	D. bobus, *or* bubus,
A. bovem,	A. boves,
V. bos,	V. boves,
A. bove.	A. bobus, *or* bubus.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable, and therefore called *aptōta;** as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nĕfas*, wrong; *sĭnāpi*, mustard;

māne, the morning; as, *clarum mane*. Pers. *A mane ad vespĕram*. Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cepe*, an onion; *gausăpe*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination. *Pers.* *Istud cras*, for *iste crastĭnus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart.* *O magnum Græcōrum*, the *Omĕga*, or the large O of the Greeks. Infīdus *est compositum ex* in *et* fīdus; *infīdus* is compounded of *in* and *fīdus*.

To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mŏnoptōta;* as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative sing.;

dĭcis, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dicis gratiâ*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *infĭcias*, and *incĭta*, or *incĭtas*, in the acc. plural; thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incĭtas redactus*, reduced to a strait or nonplus; *ingrātiis*, in the ablative plural, in spite of one: and these ablatives singular; *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergó*, for the sake; as, *ergó illius*. Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compĕde*, f. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; Plur. *ambāges*, *-ĭbus*; *compĕdes*, *-ium*, *-ĭbus*; *casses*, *-ium*.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called

* From πτ σις, a case, and α privative; gen. aptotōrum.

diptōta; as, *nĕcesse*, or *-um*, necessity; *vŏlŭpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town;

hir the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular: *vesper*, m. *vespĕre*, or *-ĕri*, the evening; *siremps*, *sirempse*, the same, all alike; in the nom. and abl. sing.: *spontis*, f. *sponte*, of its own accord; *impĕtis*, m. *impĕte*, force; *verbĕris*, n. *verbĕre*, a stripe; in the gen. and abl. sing.: *veprem*, m. *vepre*, a briar; in the acc. and abl. sing.: the last two entire in the plur.; *vepres*, *-um*, or *-ium*, &c.; *verbĕra*, *verbĕrum*, *verberĭbus*, &c.; *repetundārum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppĕtiæ*, nom. plur. *suppĕtias*, in the acc. help; *infĕriæ*, *infĕrias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta;* as, *prĕci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire; *preces*, *precum*, *precĭbus*, *&c.*

Fĕmĭnis, genit. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing. *femĭni*, and *-e;* in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femĭna*. *Dĭca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas; tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantĭdem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mĕtus*, *mel*, *far*, and nouns of the fifth declension; except *res*, *dies*, and perhaps *species*, entire.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters; *mĕlos*, a song; *mĕle*, songs; *ĕpos*, a heroic poem; *căcoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks; which wants the singular.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative; and therefore are called *tetraptōta:*

Vĭcis, f. of the place or stead of another; *pĕcŭdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *dĭtiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ŏpis*, of help. Of these *pĕcŭdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *dĭtiōnis* wants it altogether; *vĭcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ŏpis*, in the plural, generally signifies wealth or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta;*

Thus, *fax*, *fæx*, *fel*, *glos*, *labes*, *lux*, *os*, (the mouth;) *pax*, *pix*, *proles*, *pus*, *ros*, *sobŏles*, and *sol*, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sătias*, i. e. *satiĕtas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Sĭtus*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the genit. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in *Number* there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justĭtia*, justice; *ambĭtus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsĭca*, music; *ăpium*, parsley;

argentum, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trĭtĭcum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *ăvēna*, oats; *jŭventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural:

Aēr, aĕris, *the air*.
Æther, -ĕris, *the sky*.
Fĭmus, -i, *dung*.
Hespĕrus, -i, *the evening-star*.
Līmus, -i, *slime*.
Mĕridies, -iēi, *mid-day*.
Mundus, -i, *a woman's ornaments*.
Muscus, -i, *moss*.
Nēmo, -ĭnis, c. g. *no body*.
Pĕnus, -i, *or* -ûs, d. g. *all manner of provisions*.
Pontus, -i, *the sea*.
Pulvis, -ĕris, *dust*.
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood*.
Sŏpor, -ōris, *sleep*.
Viscus, -i, *bird-lime*.

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth*.
Fāma, -æ, *fame*.
Hŭmus, -i, *the ground*.
Lues, -is, *a plague*.
Plebs, plēbis, *the common people*.
Pūbes, -is, *the youth*.
Quies, -ētis, *rest*.
Sălus, -ūtis, *safety*.
Sĭtis, -is, *thirst*.
Sŭpellex, -ctĭlis, *household furniture*.
Tābes, -is, *a consumption*.
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth*.
Vespĕra, -æ, *the evening*.

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural:

Album, -i, *a list of names*.
Dīlŭcŭlum, -i, *the dawning of day*.
Ebur, -ŏris, *ivory*.
Gĕlu, *indecl. frost*.
Hīlum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle*.
Justĭtium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit*.
Lēthum, -i, *death*.
Lŭtum, -i, *clay*.
Nihil, nihĭlum, *or* nil, *nothing*.
Pĕlăgus, -i, *the sea*.
Pēnum, -i, *and* penus, -ŏris, *all kinds of provisions*.
Sal, sălis, *salt*.
Sĕnium, -i, *old age*.
Ver, vēris, *the spring*.
Vīrus, -i, *poison*.

5. Many nouns want the singular; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

Apollĭnāres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo*.
Bacchānālia, -ium, *and* -iōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus*.
Būcŏlĭca, -ōrum, *a book of pastorals*.
Olympia, -ōrum, *the Olympic games*.
Syracūsæ, -ārum, *Syracuse*.
Hierosolўma, -ōrum, *Jerusalem; or* Hierosolўma, -æ, *of the first declension*.

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular:

Cancelli, *lattices* or *windows, made with cross-bars like a net; a rail* or *balustrade round any place; bounds* or *limits*.
Cāni, *grey hairs*.
Casses, -ium, *a hunter's net*.
Cĕlĕres, -um, *the light-horse*
Cŏdĭcilli, *writings*.
Druĭdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls*.
Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome*.
Fasti, -ōrum *or* fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*
Fīnes, -ium, *the borders of a county*, or *a country*.
Fŏri, *the gangways of a ship; seats in the circus;* or *the cells of a bee-hive*.

Furfŭres, -um, *scales in the head.*
Infĕri, *the gods below.*
Lĕmŭres, -um, *hobgoblins,* or *spirits in the dark.*
Lībĕri, *children.*
Majōres, -um, *ancestors.*
Mānes, -ium, *spirits of the dead.*
Mĭnōres, -um, *successors.*
Nātāles, -ium, *parentage.*
Postĕri, *posterity.*
Prŏcĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pŭgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*
Sŭpĕri, -ûm, & -ōrum, *the gods above*

7. The following feminines want the singular number:

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*
Angustiæ, *difficulties.*
Apīnæ, *gewgaws.*
Argūtiæ, *quirks, witticisms.*
Bīgæ, *a chariot drawn by two horses.*
Trīgæ, *—by three.*
Quadrīgæ, *—by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Charĭtes, -um, *the three graces.*
Cūnæ, *a cradle.*
Dĕcĭmæ, *tithes.*
Dīræ, *imprecations, the furies.*
Dīvĭtiæ, *riches.*
Dryădes,-um, *the nymphs of the woods.*
Excŭbiæ, *watches.*
Exsĕquiæ, *funerals.*
Exŭviæ, *spoils.*
Făcētiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Făcultātes, -um, & -ium, *one's goods & chattels.*
Fēriæ, *holidays.*
Gādes, -ium, *Cadiz.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Hyădes, -um, *the seven stars.*
Indūciæ, *a truce.*
Indŭviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Ineptiæ, *silly stories.*
Insĭdiæ, *snares.*
Kălendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lăpĭcīdīnæ, *stone quarries.*
Lītĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lactes, -ium, *the small guts.*
Mănŭbiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Mĭnæ, *threats.*
Mĭnūtiæ, *little niceties.*
Nūgæ, *trifles.*
Nundĭnæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Offūciæ, *cheats.*
Opĕræ, *workmen.*
Părĭĕtīnæ, *ruinous walls.*
Partes, -ium, *a party.*
Phălĕræ, *trappings.*
Plăgæ, *nets.*
Pleiădes, -um, *the seven stars.*
Præstīgiæ, *enchantments*
Prīmĭtiæ, *first fruits.*
Quisquĭliæ, *sweepings.*
Rĕlĭquiæ, *a remainder.*
Sălebræ, *rugged places.*
Sălīnæ, *salt-pits.*
Scālæ, *a ladder.*
Scătebræ, *a spring.*
Scōpæ, *a besom, a broom.*
Tĕnebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Thermŏpўlæ, *straits of mount Œta.*
Trīcæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vergĭliæ, *the seven stars.*
Vindĭciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts,* or *records.*
Æstīva, sc. castra, *summer quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellăria, -ōrum, *sweetmeats.*
Bona, *goods.*
Brĕvia, -ium, *shelves.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Chăristia, -ōrum, *a peace-feast.*
Cĭbāria, *victuals.*
Cŏmĭtia, *an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.*
Crĕpundia, *children's baubles.*
Cūnābŭla, *a cradle, an origin.*
Dictēria, *scoffs, witticisms.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, -ōrum, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Frāga, *strawberries.*
Hўberna, sc. castra, *winter quarters.*
Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*
Incūnābŭla, *a cradle*
Insecta, *insects.*
Justa, *funeral rites.*
Lāmenta, *lamentations.*
Lautia, *provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.*

Lustra, *dens of wild beasts.*
Măgălia, -ium, *cottages.*
Mœnia, -ium, & -iōrum, *the walls of a city.*
Mūnia, -iōrum, *offices.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Ovīlia, -ium, *an enclosure where the people went to give their votes.*
Păleāria, -ium, *the dew-lap of a beast.*
Părăpherna, *all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.*
Părentālia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Præcordia, *the bowels.*
Princĭpia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Pȳthia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.*
Scrūta, *old clothes.*
Sponsālia, -ium, *espousals.*
Stătīva, *sc.* castra, *a standing camp.*
Suŏvĕtaurīlia, -ium, *a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.*
Tālāria, -ium, *winged shoes.*
Tesqua, *rough places.*
Transtra, *the seats where the rowers sit in ships.*
Utensĭlia, -ium, *utensils.*

☞ Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *lĭtĕra*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurûs*, a laurel tree; *sĕquester*, *-tri*, or *-tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, hic or hoc *vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātĕria*, *-æ*, or *materies*, *-iēi*, matter; *plebs*, *-is*, the common people, or *plebes*, *-is*, *-ĕi*, or contracted, *plebî*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tŏnitrus*, *-ûs*, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pĕnus*, *-i*, and *-ûs*, m. or f. or *penus*, *-ŏris*, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther*, *-ĕris*, masc. and *æthra*, *-æ*, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, *-is* or *-ĭdis*, a tiger; to which may be added nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, *-æ;* or *Fidēnæ*, *-ārum*, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, *-æ;* and *mendum*, *-i*, a fault; *cassis*, *-ĭdis;* and *cassĭda*, *-dæ*, a helmet. So,

Acĭnus, & -um, *a grape-stone.*
Alvear, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive.*
Amărăcus, & -um, *sweet marjoram.*
Ancīle, & -ium, *an oval shield.*
Angĭportus, -ûs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane.*
Aphractus, & -um, *an open ship.*
Aplustre, & -um, *the flag, colours*
Băcŭlus, & -um, *a staff.*
Balteus, & -um, *a belt.*
Bătillus, & -um, *a fire-shovel.*
Căpŭlus, & -um, *a hilt.*

Capus, & -o, *a capon*
Cēpa, & -e, *indecl. an onion.*
Clypeus, & -um, *a shield.*
Collŭvies, & -io, *filth, dirt.*
Compāges, & -go, *a joining.*
Conger, & -grus, *a large eel*
Crŏcus, & -um, *saffron.*
Cŭbĭtus, & -um, *a cubit.*
Dīlŭvium, & -es, *a deluge.*
Elĕphantus, & Elĕphas, -antis, *an elephant.*
Elĕgus, & -ĕia, *an elegy.*
Essĕda, & -um, *a chariot.*
Eventus, & -um, *an event.*
Fulgetra, & -um, *lightning.*
Gălērus, & -um, *a hat.*
Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ĕris *or* -ĕri, *a bunch, a swelling.*
Glūtĭnum, & -en, *glue.*
Hebdŏmas, & -ăda, *a week.*
Intrīta, & -um, *fine mortar, minced meat.*
Librārium, & -a, *a book-case.*
Măcĕria, & -es, iĕi, *a wall.*
Milliāre, & -ium, *a mile.*
Mŏnĭtum, & -us, -ûs, *an admonition.*
Muria, & -es, -iĕi, *brine* or *pickle.*
Nāsus, & -um, *the nose.*
Obsĭdio, & -um, *a siege.*
Œstrus, & -um, *a gad-bee.*
Ostrea, & -um, *an oyster.*
Peplus, & -um, *a veil, a robe.*
Pistrīna, & -um, *a bake-house.*
Prætextus, -ûs, & -um, *a pretext.*
Răpa, & -um, *a turnip.*
Rūma, & -men, *the cud.*
Ruscus; & -um, *a brush.*
Seps, & sēpes, f. *a hedge.*
Segmen, & -mentum, *a piece* or *paring.*
Sībĭlus, & -um, *a hissing.*
Sīnus, & -um, *a milk-pail.*
Spurcĭtia, & -es, *nastiness.*
Strāmen, & -tum, *straw.*
Suffīmen, & -tum, *a perfume.*
Tignus, & -um, *a plank.*
Tŏral, & -āle, *a bed-covering.*
Torcŭlar, & -āre, *a wine press*
Viscus, & -um, *bird-lime.*
Vĕternus, & -um, *a lethargy.*

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; thus, *văsa, -ōrum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas;* but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

DIVISION OF NOUNS ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION AND DERIVATION.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *collective* noun; as, *pŏpŭlus*, a people; *exercĭtus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *patronymic* noun; as,

Priămĭdes, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter of Æētes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æăcĭdes*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æăcus; *Rōmŭlĭdæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des;* of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamĭdes*, *-dæ*, &c.; pl. *-dæ*, *dārum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndăris*, *-ĭdis* or *-ĭdos; Æē-tias*, *-ădis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *patrial* or *gentile* noun; as,

Tros, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ădis*, a woman born at Troy. *Sicŭlus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicĕlis*, *-ĭdis*, a Sicilian woman; so, *Măcĕdo*, *-ŏnis*, *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, at Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpīnum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Rōmānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *abstract;* as,

justĭtia, justice; *bŏnĭtas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness; from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come are called CONCRETES; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *diminutive;* as,

lĭbellus, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *ŏpuscŭlum*, a little work; *corcŭlum*, a little heart; *rĕtĭcŭlum*, a small net; *scăbellum*, a small form; *lăpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little page: from *lĭber*, *charta*, *ŏpus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lăpis*, *culter*, *pāgĭna*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerŭlus*, *puellus*, *puellŭlus;* from *cista*, *cistŭla*, *cistella*, *cistellŭla;* from *hŏmo*, *hŏmuncio*, *hŏmuncŭlus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an AMPLIFICATIVE, and ends in *o;* as, *căpĭto*, *-ōnis*, having a large head: so, *nāso*, *lăbeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *verbal* noun; as,

ămor, love; *doctrīna*, learning; from *ămo*, and *dŏceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura;* as, *lectio*, a lesson; *ămātor*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creātūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An Adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, durus, *hard;* mollis, *soft.**

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.†

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension:

Acer, *sharp.*	Cĕlĕber, *famous.*	Pédester, *on foot.*
Alăcer, *cheerful.*	Cĕler, *swift.*	Sălūber, *wholesome*
Campester, *belonging to a plain.*	Equester, *belonging to a horse.*	Sylvester, *woody.*
	Păluster, *marshy.*	Vŏlŭcer, *swift.*

Rule for the Gender of Adjectives.

In adjectives of three terminations, the first is masc., the second fem., and the third neut. In those of two terminations, the first is masc. and fem., and the second neut. Adjectives of one termination are of all genders.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Bŏnus, masc. bona, fem. bonum, neut. *good.*

Singular.				*Plural.*		
N. bŏn-us,	-a,	-um,	N. bŏn-i,	-æ,	-a,
G. bŏn-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. bŏn-o,	-æ,	-o,	D.	bon-is,	
A. bŏn-um,	-am,	-um,	A. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V. bŏn-e,	-a,	-um,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A. bŏn-o,	-â,	-o.	A.	bon-is.	

In like manner decline,

Acerbus, *unripe, bitter.*	Ægrōtus, *sick.*	Albus, *white.*
Acĭdus, *sour, tart.*	Æmŭlus, *vying with.*	Altus, *high.*
Acūtus, *sharp.*	Æquus, *equal, just.*	Amārus, *bitter.*
Adultĕrīnus, *counterfeit.*	Ahēnus, *of brass.*	Amœnus, *pleasant.*

* We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

† An adjective properly has neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Ambĭguus, *doubtful.*
Amīcus, *friendly.*
Amplus, *large.*
Annuus, *yearly.*
Angustus, *narrow.*
Antīquus, *ancient.*
Aprīcus, *sunny.*
Aptus, *fit.*
Arcānus, *secret.*
Arctus, *straight.*
Arduus, *lofty.*
Argūtus, *quick, shrill.*
Assus, *roasted, hot, pure.*
Astūtus, *cunning.*
Avārus, *covetous.*
Avĭdus, *greedy.*
Augustus, *venerable.*
Austērus, *harsh, rough.*
Balbus, *stammering.*
Barbărus, *savage.*
Bardus, *dull, slow*
Beātus, *blessed.*
Bellus, *pretty.*
Bĕnignus, *kind.*
Bīmus, *two years old.*
Blæsus, *lisping.*
Blandus, *flattering.*
Brūtus, *brutish, senseless.*
Cădūcus, *fading.*
Cæcus, *blind.*
Callĭdus, *cunning.*
Calvus, *bald.*
Cămūrus, *crooked.*
Candĭdus, *fair, sincere.*
Cānus, *hoary.*
Cārus, *dear.*
Cassus, *void.*
Castus, *chaste.*
Cautus, *wary.*
Căvus, *hollow.*
Celsus, *high, lofty.*
Cernuus, *stooping.*
Certus, *certain, sure.*
Clārus, *famous.*
Claudus, *lame.*
Cœrŭlus, *or* -ĕus, *azure, sky-coloured.*
Commŏdus, *convenient.*
Concinnus, *fine, neat.*
Cōruscus, *glittering.*
Crassus, *thick.*
Crĕpĕrus, *doubtful.*
Crispus, *curled.*
Crūdus, *raw.*

Cunctus, *all.*
Curtus, *short.*
Curvus, *crooked.*
Cȳnĭcus, *churlish.*
Dædălus, (poet.) *curiously made.*
Dĕcōrus, *graceful.*
Densus, *thick.*
Dignus, *worthy.*
Dīrus, *direful.*
Disertus, *eloquent.*
Diūturnus, *lasting.*
Doctus, *learned.*
Dŭbius, *doubtful.*
Dūrus, *hard.*
Ebrius, *drunk.*
Effœtus, *past having young.*
Egĕnus, *poor.*
Egrĕgius, *remarkable.*
Elixus, *boiled.*
Exĭguus, *small.*
Exĭmius, *excellent.*
Exōtĭcus, *from a foreign country.*
Externus, *outward.*
Făcētus, *witty.*
Facundus, *eloquent.*
Falsus, *false, lying.*
Fămēlĭcus, *famished.*
Fatuus, *foolish.*
Faustus, *lucky.*
Fĕrus, *wild, savage.*
Fessus, *weary.*
Festīnus, *hastening.*
Festus, *festival.*
Fīdus, *faithful.*
Fīnĭtĭmus, *neighbouring.*
Firmus, *firm, steady.*
Flaccus, *flap-eared.*
Flāvus, *yellow.*
Fœdus, *ugly.*
Fœtus, *big with young.*
Formōsus, *fair.*
Frētus, *trusting.*
Frīvŏlus, *trifling.*
Fulvus, *yellow.*
Furvus, *swarthy.*
Fuscus, *brown.*
Garrŭlus, *prattling.*
Gĕlĭdus, *cold as ice.*
Gĕmĭnus, *double.*
Germānus, *of the same stock, real.*

Gibbus, *convex.*
Gilvus, *flesh-coloured.*
Glaucus, *gray.*
Gnārus, *skilful.*
Gnāvus, *active.*
Grātus, *thankful.*
Hirsūtus, hirtus, *rough.*
Hispĭdus, *rugged.*
Honestus, *honourable, honest.*
Hornus, *of this year.*
Hūmānus, *human, belonging to a man, humane, polite.*
Hūmĭdus, *moist.*
Idōneus, *fit.*
Ignārus, *ignorant.*
Ignāvus, *slothful.*
Imprŏbus, *wicked.*
Incestus, *unchaste.*
Inclȳtus, *renowned.*
Indĭgus, *needy.*
Industrius, *diligent.*
Ineptus, *unfit.*
Infīdus, *unfaithful.*
Ingĕnuus, *free-born.*
Inĭmīcus, *unfriendly.*
Inīquus, *uneven, unjust.*
Intentus, *intense, strait.*
Invĭdus, *envious.*
Invītus, *unwilling.*
Irācundus, *passionate.*
Irātus, *angry.*
Irrĭtus, *fruitless, vain.*
Jejūnus, *fasting.*
Jucundus, *pleasant.*
Lætus, *joyful.*
Lævus, *on the left hand.*
Largus, *large.*
Lascīvus, *wanton.*
Lassus, *weary.*
Lātus, *broad.*
Laxus, *loose, slack.*
Lentus, *slow, pliant.*
Lĕpĭdus, *pretty, witty.*
Limpĭdus, *clear, pure.*
Līmus, *squinting.*
Lippus, *blear-eyed.*
Longinquus, *far off.*
Longus, *long.*
Lubrĭcus, *slippery.*
Lūcĭdus, *bright.*
Lūrĭdus, *pale, ghastly.*
Luscus, *blind of one eye.*

Măcĭlentus, *lean.*
Mălignus, *spiteful.*
Mancus, *maimed, lame.*
Mănĭfestus, *evident.*
Marcĭdus, *rotten.*
Mĕdius, *mid* or *middle.*
Mendĭcus, *beggar-like.*
Menstruus, *monthly.*
Mĕrăcus, *without mixture.*
Mĕrus, *pure.*
Mīrus, *wonderful.*
Mŏdestus, *modest.*
Mœstus, *sad.*
Mŏlestus, *troublesome.*
Mōrōsus, *surly.*
Mōrus, *foolish.*
Mūcĭdus, *musty.*
Mundus, *neat.*
Mŭtĭlus, *maimed, without horns*
Mūtus, *dumb.*
Mūtuus, *mutual, lent,* or *borrowed.*
Nĭmius, *too much.*
Noxius, *hurtful.*
Nūdus, *naked.*
Nuntius, *bringing news.*
Obēsus, *fat, dull.*
Oblīquus, *crooked.*
Obscœnus, *obscene, ominous.*
Obscūrus, *dark, mean.*
Obsŏlētus, *old, out of use.*
Obstīpus, *stiff, wry.*
Obtūsus, *blunt.*
Odiōsus, *hateful.*
Opăcus, *dark, shady.*
Opīmus, *rich, fat.*
Opĭpărus, *costly, dainty.*
Opportūnus, *seasonable.*
Opŭlentus, *or* -ens, *rich.*
Orbus, *destitute.*
Otiōsus, *at leisure.*
Pætus, *pink-eyed.*
Pallĭdus, *pale.*
Parcus, *sparing.*
Patrīmus, **Matrīmus**, } *having father and mother alive.*
Pătŭlus, *wide, spreading.*
Paulus, *little.*
Pauci, -cæ, -ca, *few.*
Pĕrītus, *skilful.*
Perfĭdus, *treacherous.*
Perpĕtuus, *continual.*
Perspĭcuus, *evident.*
Pius, *pious.*
Plānus, *plain.*
Plēnus, *full.*
Plērīque, -æque, -ăque, *the most part;* sing. fem. pleraque.
Postĭcus, *on the back part of a house.*
Prædĭtus, *endued with.*
Prāvus, *wicked.*
Prĕcărius, *at another's pleasure.*
Priscus, *old, out of use.*
Pristĭnus, *ancient.*
Prīvātus, *private, retired.*
Prīvus, *single, peculiar.*
Prŏbus, *good, honest.*
Prōcērus, *high, tall.*
Prŏfānus, *profane, unholy.*
Prŏfundus, *deep.*
Prōmiscuus, *confused.*
Promptus, *ready.*
Prōnus, *with the face downward.*
Prŏpĕrus, *hasty.*
Prŏpinquus, *near.*
Proprius, *proper.*
Prŏtervus, *saucy.*
Publĭcus, *public.*
Pudĭcus, *chaste.*
Pullus, *blackish.*
Pūrus, *pure, clean.*
Pūtus, *without mixture.*
Quantus, *how great.*
Quadrīmus, *four years old.*
Quotĭdiānus, *daily.*
Răbĭdus, *mad.*
Rancĭdus, *rank, stale.*
Rārus, *rare, thin.*
Raucus, *hoarse.*
Rectus, *right, straight.*
Reus, *impeached.*
Rĭgĭdus, *cold, stiff, severe.*
Rĭguus, *moist, well watered.*
Rōbustus, *strong.*
Roscĭdus, *dewy.*
Rŏtundus, *round.*
Rŭbĭcundus, *blushing.*
Rūfus, *reddish.*
Russus, *of a carnation colour.*
Rŭtĭlus, *fiery, red.*
Sævus, *cruel.*
Săgus, *knowing.*
Salsus, *salted, smart.*
Salvus, *safe.*
Sanctus, *holy.*
Sānus, *sound.*
Saucius, *wounded.*
Scævus, *left.*
Scambus, *bow-legged.*
Scaurus, *club-footed.*
Sēcūrus, *secure, out of danger.*
Sēdŭlus, *careful.*
Sentus, *rough.*
Sērēnus, *clear.*
Sērius, *earnest.*
Sērus, *late.*
Sevērus, *severe, harsh*
Siccus, *dry.*
Sīmus, *flat-nosed.*
Sincērus, *sincere, pure.*
Sĭtus, *situate, placed.*
Sobrius, *sober, temperate.*
Sŏcius, *in alliance, a companion.*
Sŏlĭdus, *solid.*
Sordĭdus, *dirty.*
Spīnōsus, *prickly.*
Spissus, *thick.*
Splendĭdus, *bright.*
Spŭrius, *base-born, not genuine.*
Squālĭdus, *nasty*
Stŏlĭdus, *foolish.*
Strēnuus, *active, stout.*
Strigōsus, *lean, lank.*
Stultus, *foolish.*
Stŭpĭdus, *stupid, dull.*
Sŭbĭtus, *sudden.*
Subsĕcīvus, *cut off,* or *taken from other business.*
Sūdus, *fair, without clouds.*
Sŭperbus, *proud*

Sŭpīnus, *lying on the back.*
Surdus, *deaf.*
Tăcĭtus, *silent.*
Tantus, *so great.*
Tardus, *slow.*
Tĕmĕrārius, *rash.*
Tempestīvus, *seasonable.*
Tĕmŭlentus, *drunken.*
Tĕpĭdus, *lukewarm.*
Tĭmĭdus, *fearful.*
Torvus, *stern.*
Tranquillus, *calm.*
Trĕpĭdus, *trembling for fear.*
Trŭcŭlentus, *cruel.*
Truncus, *maimed, wanting.*
Tŭmĭdus, *swollen.*
Turbĭdus, *muddy.*
Tūtus, *safe.*
Udus, *wet.*
Uncus, *crooked.*
Unĭcus, *only.*
Urbānus, *courteous.*
Văcīvus, *at leisure.*
Văcuus, *empty, void.*
Văgus, *wandering.*
Valgus, *bow-legged.*
Vălĭdus, *strong.*
Vānus, *vain, empty.*
Vărius, *various, different.*
Vārus, *bandy-legged.*
Vastus, *huge.*
Vĕgĕtus, *vigorous.*
Vĕnustus, *comely.*
Verbōsus, *talkative.*
Vĕrēcundus, *bashful.*
Vernācŭlus, *born in one's house.*
Vērus, *true.*
Vescus, *fit for eating.*
Vīcīnus, *neighbouring.*
Vĭduus, *deprived.*
Viĕtus, *withered.*
Vīvĭdus, *lively.*
Vīvus, *alive.*

Tĕner, tenĕra, tenĕrum, *tender.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	tĕn-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	N. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕra,
G.	ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕri,	G. ten-erōrum,	-erārum,	-erōrum,
D.	ten-ĕro,	-ĕræ,	-ĕro,	D.	-ten-ĕris,	
A.	ten-ĕrum,	-ĕram,	-ĕrum,	A. ten-ĕros,	-ĕras,	-ĕra,
V.	ten-er,	-ĕra,	-ĕrum,	V. ten-ĕri,	-ĕræ,	-ĕra,
A.	ten-ĕro,	-ĕrâ,	-ĕro.	A.	-ten-ĕris.	

In like manner decline,

Asper, *rough.*
Cæter, *(hardly used) the rest.*
Gibber, *crook-backed.*
Lăcer, *torn.*
Līber, *free.*
Mĭser, *wretched.*
Prosper, *prosperous.*

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero;* as, *lānĭger*, bearing wool; *ŏpĭfer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sătur, satŭra, satŭrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e;* as, *āter, atra, atrum*, black; gen. *atri, atræ, atri*, dat. *atro, atræ, atro*, &c. So,

Æger, *sick.*
Crēber, *frequent.*
Glăber, *smooth.*
Intĕger, *entire.*
Lūdĭcer, *ludicrous.*
Măcer, *lean.*
Nĭger, *black.*
Pĭger, *slow.*
Pulcher, *fair.*
Rŭber, *red.*
Săcer, *sacred.*
Scăber, *rough.*
Tēter, *ugly.*
Văfer, *crafty.*

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, *or* -tĕra, -tĕrum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders; in the other cases, like *bonus* and *tener.*

Unus, -a, -um; *gen.* unius, *dat.* uni, *one.*
Alius, -īus, *one of many, another.*
Nullus, nullius, *none.*
Sōlus, -ius, *alone.*
Tōtus, -ius, *whole.**

* Tŏtus, *so great*, is regularly declined.

Ullus, ius, *any.*	Uterque, utriusque, *both.*
Alter, altĕrīus, *one of two, the other.*	Uterlĭbet, utriuslĭbet, } *which of the two you please.*
Uter, utrius, *either, whether of the two.*	Utervis, -triusvis,
Neuter, -trius, *neither.*	

Alterŭter, *the one or the other,* alterutrius, alterutri, *and sometimes* alterius utrius, altĕri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *tōtus,* are called *partitives;* and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus.*

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber,* a good book; *bona penna,* a good pen; *bonum sedīle,* a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus,* for instance, commonly say *bonus,* a good man, understanding *vir,* or *homo; bona,* a good woman, understanding *fœmĭna;* and *bonum,* a good thing, understanding *negotium.*

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Fēlix, masc. fem. and neut.; *happy.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	fēlix,		N.	felīces,	felicia,
G.	felīcis,		G.	felicium,	
D.	felīci,		D.	felicĭbus,	
A.	felīcem,	fēlix,	A.	felīces,	felicia,
V.	fēlix,		V.	felīces,	felicia,
A.	felīce, *or* -ci.		A.	felicĭbus.	

Prūdens, m. f. and n. *prudent.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
N.	prūdens,		N.	prūdentes,	prūdentia,
G.	prudentis,		G.	prudentium,	
D.	prudenti,		D.	prudentĭbus,	
A.	prudentem,	prudens,	A.	prudentes,	prudentia,
V.	prudens,		V.	prudentes,	prudentia.
A.	prudente, *or* -ti.		A.	prudentĭbus.	

In like manner decline,

Amens, -tis, *mad.*	Dēmens, *mad.*	Insons, *guiltless.*
Atrox, -ōcis, *cruel.*	Edax, *gluttonous.*	Mendax, *lying.*
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, *bold.*	Effĭcax, *effectual.*	Mordax, *biting, satirical.*
Bĭlix, -īcis, *woven with a double thread.*	Elĕgans, *handsome.*	Pernix, -īcis, *swift.*
Căpax, *capacious.*	Fallax, *deceitful.*	Pervĭcax, *wilful.*
Cīcur, -ŭris, *tame.*	Fĕrax, *fertile.*	Pĕtŭlans, *froward, saucy.*
Clēmens, -tis, *merciful.*	Fĕrox, *fierce.*	Prægnans, *with child.*
Contŭmax, *stubborn.*	Frĕquens, *frequent.*	Rĕcens, *fresh.*
	Ingens, *huge.*	Rĕpens, *sudden.*
	Iners, -tis, *sluggish.*	Săgax, -ācis, *sagacious*

Sălax, -ācis, *lustful.*
Săpiens, *wise.*
Sōlers, *shrewd.*
Sons, *guilty.*
Tĕnax, *tenacious.*
Trux, -ŭcis, *cruel.*
Uber, -ĕris, *fertile.*
Vehĕmens, *vehement.*
Vēlox, -ōcis, *swift.*
Vŏrax, *devouring.*

Mītis, masc. and fem.; mīte, neut.; *meek.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*	
N.	mītis,		mīte,	N.	mītes,		mītia,
G.		mitis,		G.		mitium,	
D.		miti,		D.		mitĭbus,	
A.	mitem,		mite,	A.	mites,		mitia,
V.	mitis,		mite,	V.	mites,		mitia,
A.		miti.		A.		mitĭbus	

In like manner decline,

Agĭlis, *active.*
Amābĭlis, *lovely.*
Biennis, *of two years.*
Brĕvis, *short.*
Cīvīlis, *courteous.*
Cœlestis *heavenly.*
Cōmis, *mild, affable.*
Crūdēlis, *cruel.*
Debĭlis, *weak.*
Dēformis, *ugly.*
Dŏcĭlis, *teachable.*
Dulcis, *sweet in taste.*
Exīlis, *slender.*
Exsanguis, *bloodless.*
Fortis, *brave.*
Frăgilis, *brittle.*
Grandis, *great.*
Grăvis, *heavy.*
Hĭlăris, *cheerful.*
Ignōbĭlis, *of mean parentage.*
Immānis, *huge, cruel.*
Inānis, *empty.*
Incŏlŭmis, *safe.*
Infāmis, *infamous.*
Insignis, *remarkable.*
Jūgis, *perpetual.*
Lœvis, *smooth.*
Lēnis, *gentle.*
Lĕvis, *light.*
Mĕdiocris, *middling.*
Mīrābĭlis, *wonderful.*
Mollis, *soft.*
Omnis, *all.*
Pinguis, *fat.*
Putris, *rotten.*
Quālis, *of what kind.*
Rŭdis, *raw.*
Segnis, *slow.*
Sōlennis, *annual, solemn.*
Stĕrilis, *barren.*
Suāvis, *sweet.*
Sublīmis, *lofty.*
Subtīlis, *subtile, fine.*
Tālis, *such.*
Tĕnuis, *small.*
Terrestris, *earthly.*
Terrĭbĭlis, *dreadful.*
Tristis, *sad.*
Turpis, *base.*
Utĭlis, *useful.*
Vīlis, *worthless.*
Vĭrĭdis, *green.*
Vitĭlis, *pliant.*

Mitior, masc. and fem.; mitius, neut.; compar. *meeker.*

	Singular.				*Plural.*		
N.	mitior,		mitius,	N.	mitiōres,		mitiōra,
G.		mitiōris,		G.		mitiōrum,	
D.		mitiōri,		D.		mitiorĭbus,	
A.	mitiōrem,		mitius,	A.	mitiōres,		mitiōra,
V.	mitior,		mitius,	V.	mitiōres,		mitiōra,
A.		mitiōre, *or* -ri.		A.		mitiorĭbus.	

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

Acer *or* acris, masc. acris, fem. acre, neut. *sharp.*

Singular.			*Plural.*		
N. ā-cer *or* acris,	acris,	acre,	N. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
G.	a-cris,		G.	a-crium,	
D.	a-cri,		D.	a-crĭbus,	
A. a-crem,	a-crem,	a-cre,	A. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
V. a-cer *or* acris,	a-cris,	a-cre,	V. a-cres,	a-cres,	a-cria,
A.	a-cri.		A.	a-crĭbus.	

In like manner *ălăcer* or *alacris*, *cĕler* or *celĕris*, and the other adjectives included in the exception on page 66; which form exceptions also to the rule for the gender of adjectives on that page, having in the nom. and voc. sing. two terminations for the masculine.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has i only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia:* except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dīves, hospes, sospes, sŭperstes, jŭvĕnis, sĕnex,* and *pauper,* have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. singular, and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plural. *Compos, -ŏtis,* master of, that has obtained his desire; *impos, -ŏtis,* unable; *inops, -ŏpis,* poor; *supplex, -ĭcis,* suppliant, humble; *uber, -ĕris,* fertile; *consors, -tis,* sharing, a partner; *dĕgĕner, -ĕris,* degenerate *or* degenerating; *vĭgil,* watchful; *pūber, -ĕris,* of age, marriageable; and *cĕler.* Also compounds in *ceps, fex, pes,* and *corpor;* as, *partĭceps,* partaking of; *artĭfex, -ĭcis,* cunning, an artist; *bĭpes, -pĕdis,* two-footed; *bĭcorpor, -ŏris,* two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plural in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mĕmor,* mindful, which has *memŏri* and *memŏrum:* also, *dĕses, rĕses, hĕbes, perpes, præpes, tĕres, concŏlor, versĭcŏlor,* which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par,* equal, has only *pări:* but its compounds have either *e* or *i;* as *compăre* or *-ri.* *Vetus,* old, has *vetĕra* and *vetĕrum.*

Plus, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. plus,	N. plūres, plūra & plūria,
G. pluris,	G. plūrium,
D. ——	D. plūrĭbus,
A. plus,	A. plūres, plūra & plūria,
V. ——	V. ——
A. plūre, *or* -i.	A. plūrĭbus.

Its compound, complūres, has no singular.

Exc. 4. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, *-e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrīci ferro*, not *victrīce*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plural, has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *victrīces*, *victricia*: so, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frænum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jŭgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *anĭmus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declīvis*, *-e*, and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanĭmis*, and *exanĭmus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnănĭmus*, *flexanĭmus*, *effrænus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanĭmis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanĭmis*, *injŭgis*, *illīmis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanĭmus*, &c. So, *semianĭmis*, *inermis*, *sublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*; rarely *semianĭmus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *denominatives*; as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *cœlestis*, *ădămantĭnus*, *corpŏrĕus*, *agrestis*, *æstīvus*, &c.; from *cor*, *mos*, *cœlum*, *adămas*, &c.

Those which diminish the signification of their primitives, are called DIMINUTIVES; as, *mĭsellus*, *parvŭlus*, *dūriuscŭlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing, are called AMPLIFICATIVES, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnŏlentus*, much given to wine; *ŏpĕrōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpŭlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *literātus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive, or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *possessive adjective*; as,

Scotĭcus, *pāternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another; from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbals*; as,

amibīlis, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docīlis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acūtus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent.

Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *anĭmans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocātus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legātus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corōna*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debĭtum*, *decrētum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *adverbials*

as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastĭnus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, ‹
There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, fr
contra; *antĭcus*, from *ante*; *postĭcus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into fc
classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*

1. The Cardinal or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus,	*one.*	1.	I.
Duo,	*two.*	2.	II.
Tres,	*three.*	3.	III
Quatuor,	*four.*	4.	IV
Quinque,	*five.*	5.	V.
Sex,	*six.*	6.	VI.
Septem,	*seven.*	7.	VII.
Octo,	*eight.*	8.	VIII.
Nŏvem,	*nine.*	9.	IX
Dĕcem,	*ten.*	10.	X.
Undĕcim,	*eleven.*	11.	XI
Duodĕcim,	*twelve.*	12.	XII
Tredĕcim,	*thirteen.*	13.	XIII.
Quatuordĕcim,	*fourteen.*	14.	XIV.
Quindĕcim,	*fifteen.*	15.	XV
Sexdĕcim,	*sixteen.*	16.	XVI.
Septendĕcim.	*seventeen.*	17.	XVII.
Octodĕcim,	*eighteen.*	18.	XVIII.
Novemdĕcim,	*nineteen.*	19.	XIX.
Viginti,	*twenty.*	20.	XX.
Viginti unus, *or* **Unus et viginti,**	*twenty-one.*	21.	XXI.
Viginti duo, *or* **Duo et viginti,**	*twenty-two.*	22.	XXII.
Triginta,	*thirty.*	30.	XXX.
Quadrāginta,	*forty.*	40.	XL.
Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*	50.	L.
Sexaginta,	*sixty.*	60.	LX.
Septuaginta,	*seventy.*	70.	LXX.
Octoginta,	*eighty.*	80.	LXXX.
Nonaginta,	*ninety.*	90.	XC.
Centum.	*a hundred.*	100.	C.
Ducenti, -æ, -a,	*two hundred.*	200.	CC.

Trecenti, -æ, -a,	*three hundred.*	300.	CCC.
Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*	400.	CCCC.
Quingenti,	*five hundred.*	500.	D.
Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*	600.	DC.
Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*	700.	DCC.
Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*	800.	DCCC.
Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*	900.	DCCCC.
Mille,	*a thousand.*	1,000.	M.
Duo millia, *or* Bis mille,	*two thousand.*	2,000.	MM.
Decem millia, *or* Decies mille,	*ten thousand.*	10,000.	XM.
Viginti milia, *or* Vicies mille,	*twenty thousand.*	20,000.	XXM.

A thousand was originally marked thus, CIↃ. which in latter times was contracted into M. Five hundred was marked thus, IↃ. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of Ↄ. to IↃ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, IↃↃ. marks five thousand; and IↃↃↃ. fifty thousand.

The prefixing of C. together with the annexing of Ↄ. to the number CIↃ. makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIↃↃ. denotes ten thousand; and CCCIↃↃↃ. a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIↃↃↃ. CCCIↃↃↃ. signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters; thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$. denotes three thousand; $\overline{\text{X}}$. ten thousand.

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille,* want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis ædibus,* in one house. Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. *Unæ nuptiæ.* Id. Andr. iv. 1. 51. *In una mœnia convenêre.* Sallust. Cat. 6. or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta,* one suit of clothes. Cic. Flacc. 29.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined:

Plural.			Plural.		
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	N. tres,		tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	G.	trium,	
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	D.	tribus,	
A. duos *or* duo,	duas,	duo,	A. tres,		tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	V. tres,		tria,
A. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	A.	tribus.	

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus;* thus, *ducenti, -tæ, -ta*; *ducentōrum, -tārum, -tōrum,* &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number, and in the plural has *millia, millium, millĭbus,* &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and, to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homĭnes*, a thousand men; *mille homĭnum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homĭnes*, two thousand men; *ter mille homĭnes*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille homĭnum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum, tria millia, quatuor millia, centum* or *centēna millia hominum; decies centēna millia*, a million; *vicies centēna millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *sĕcundus*, second, &c.; declined like *bonus*.

3. The Distributive are, *singŭli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, or by twos, &c.; declined like the plural of *bonus*.

4. The Multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, *or* two-fold; *triplex*, triple, *or* three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix;* thus, *simplex, -ĭcis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which these numerals answer, are *quot, quŏtus, quŏtēni, quŏties*, and *quŏtuplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tŏtĭdem*, just so many; *quotquot, quotcunque*, how many soever; *alĭquot*, some.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	*Distributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
Prīmus, -a, -um.	Singŭli, -æ, -a.	Semel, *once.*
Sĕcundus.	Bīni.	Bis, *twice.*
Tertius.	Terni.	Ter, *thrice.*
Quartus.	Quaterni.	Quăter, *four times.*
Quintus.	Quīni.	Quinquies, &c.
Sextus.	Sēni.	Sexies.
Septĭmus.	Septēni.	Septies.
Octāvus.	Octōni.	Octies.
Nōnus.	Nŏvēni.	Nŏvies.
Dĕcĭmus.	Dēni.	Dĕcies.
Undĕcĭmus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
Duodecĭmus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
Decĭmus tertius.	Trĕdēni, terni deni.	Tredecies.
Decĭmus quartus.	Quaterni deni.	Quatuordecies.
Decĭmus quintus.	Quindēni.	Quindecies.
Decĭmus sextus.	Seni deni.	Sexdecies.
Decĭmus septĭmus.	Septēni deni.	Decies ac septies
Decĭmus octāvus.	Octōni deni.	Decies ac octies.
Decĭmus nonus.	Novēni deni.	Decies et novies.
Vīgesĭmus, vīcesĭmus.	Vīcēni.	Vīcies.
Vīgesĭmus prīmus.	Vīcēni singŭli.	Vicies semel.
Trigesĭmus, tricesĭmus.	Tricēni.	Trīcies.
Quadragesĭmus.	Quadrāgēni.	Quadrāgies.
Quinquagesĭmus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquagies.
Sexagesĭmus.	Sexāgēni.	Sexagies.
Septuagesĭmus.	Septuāgēni.	Septuagies.
Octogesĭmus.	Octogēni.	Octōgies.
Nonagesĭmus.	Nonagēni.	Nonagies.
Centesĭmus.	Centēni.	Centies.
Dŭcentesĭmus.	Dŭcēni.	Dŭcenties.
Trĕcentesĭmus.	Trĕcentēni.	Trĕcenties.
Quadringentesĭmus.	Quăter centēni.	Quadringenties.
Quingentesĭmus.	Quinquies centēni.	Quingenties.
Sexcentesĭmus.	Sexies centēni.	Sexcenties.
Septingentesĭmus.	Septies centēni.	Septingenties.
Octingentesĭmus.	Octies centēni.	Octingenties.
Nongentesĭmus.	Novies centēni.	Nŏningenties.
Millesĭmus.	Millēni.	Millies.
Bis millesĭmus.	Bis millēni.	Bis millies

To the numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c.; as, *bĭpartītus*, *tripartītus*, &c.; *duplus*, *triplus*, &c.; *bīmus*, *trīmus*, &c.; *biennis*, *triennis*, &c.; *bĭmestris*, *trimestris*, &c.; *bilībris*, *trilībris*, &c.; *bīnārius*, *ternarius*, &c.; which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenārius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenārius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *durus*, hard; *durior*, harder; *durissĭmus*, hardest.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as, *he is as* tall *as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *durior*, harder; *sapientior*, wiser.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *durissĭmus*, hardest; *sapientissĭmus*, wisest.

FORMATION OF THE DEGREES.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive ending in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us*, for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssĭmus;* thus, *altus*, high; gen. *alti*, by adding *or*, we have the comparative *altior*, for the masc. and fem.; and by adding *us*, *altius*, for the neut., higher: so, by adding *ssĭmus*, to the gen. *alti*, we have the superlative *altissĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*. So, *mĭtis*, meek, gen. *mitis*, dative *miti; mitior*, *-us*, meeker; *mitissĭmus*, *-a*, *-um*, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed from the nominative by adding *rĭmus;* as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrĭmus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension; the superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissĭmus ; alta*, *altior*, *altissĭma ; altum*, *altius*, *altissĭmum ;* gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissĭmi*, &c.

IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

1. Bŏnus,	mĕlior,	optĭmus,	*good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Mălus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	*bad,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	*great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmus,	*small,*	*less,*	*least.*
Multus,	——	plūrĭmus,	*much,*	*more,*	*most*

Fem. Multa, plurĭma; *neut.* multum, plus, plurĭmum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurĭmi; multæ, plures, plurĭmæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maxĭmus*, for *magnissĭmus*: *worst* for *worsest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *lĭmus:*

Făcĭlis, facilior, facillĭmus, *easy.*
Grăcĭlis, gracilior, gracillĭmus, *lean.*
Hŭmĭlis, humilior, humillĭmus, *low.*
Imbĕcillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, *weak.*
Sĭmĭlis, similior, simillĭmus, *like.*

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cĭter, citerior, citĭmus, *near,* &c.
Dexter, dexterior, dextĭmus, *right.*
Sĭnister, sinisterior, sinistĭmus, *left.*
Exter, -erior, extĭmus *or* extrēmus, *outward.*
Infĕrus, -ior, infĭmus *or* ĭmus, *below.*
Intĕrus, intĕrior, intĭmus, *inward.*
Mātūrus, -ior, maturrĭmus *or* maturissĭmus, *ripe.*
Postĕrus, posterior, postrēmus, *behind.*
Sŭpĕrus, -rior, suprēmus *or* summus, *high.*
Vĕtus, vĕtĕrior, vĕterrĭmus, *old.*

4. Compounds in *dĭcus, lŏquus, fĭcus,* and *vŏlus*, have *entior,* and *entissĭmus;* as, *mălĕdĭcus,* railing; *mălĕdicentior, maledicentissĭmus:* So, *magnĭlŏquus,* one that boasteth; *bĕnĕfĭcus,* beneficent; *mălĕvŏlus,* malevolent; *mīrĭfĭcus,* wonderful; *-entior, -entissĭmus* or *mirĭficissĭmus. Nēquam,* indeclinable, worthless, vicious, has *nēquior, nequissĭmus.*

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased, yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dētĕrior, *worse,* deterrĭmus.
Ocior, *swifter,* ocissĭmus
Prior, *former,* prĭmus.
Prŏpior, *nearer,* proxĭmus, *nearest* or *next.*
Ultĕrior, *farther,* ultĭmus.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclўtus, inclytissĭmus, *renowned.*
Mĕrĭtus, meritissĭmus, *deserving.*
Nŏvus, novissĭmus, *new.*
Nūpĕrus, nuperrĭmus, *late.*
Par, părissĭmus, *equal.*
Săcer, sacerrĭmus, *sacred.*

3. The following want the superlative:

Adŏlescens, adolescentior, *young.*
Diŭturnus, diuturnior, *lasting.*
Ingens, ingentior, *huge.*
Jŭvĕnis, junior, *young.*
Opīmus, opimior, *rich.*
Prōnus, pronior, *inclined downwards.*
Sătur, satŭrior, *full.*
Sĕnex, senior, *old.*

To supply the superlative of *jŭvĕnis*, or *ădŏlescens*, we say *minĭmus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maxĭmus natu*, the oldest.

Most adjectives in *ĭlis*, *ālis*, and *bĭlis*, also want the superlative; as, *cīvīlis, civilior*, civil; *rēgālis, regalior*, regal; *flēbĭlis, -ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenīlis*, youthful; *exīlis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations. Thus, *arcānus, -ior*, secret; *declīvis, -ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus, -ior*, far off; *prŏpinquus, -ior*, near.

Antĕrior, former; *sĕquior*, worse; *sătior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versĭcŏlor*, of divers colours; *pestĭfer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ĭvus, ĭnus, orus*, or *ĭmus*, and diminutives; as, *dŭbius*, doubtful; *văcuus*, empty; *fŭgĭtīvus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cănōrus*, shrill; *lēgĭtĭmus*, lawful; *tĕnellus*, somewhat tender; *majuscŭlus*, &c.; together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox, -ŏcis*, soon or early ripe; *mīrus, ĕgēnus, lăcer, mĕmor, sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde*, or *maxĭme* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy, *magis egēnus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxĭme egēnus*, very, or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun.**
The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ĕgo, tu, sui;*

---

* Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.

ille, ĭpse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ĕgo, tu, sui;* the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, *I*.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
N. ego,	*I,*	N. nos,	*we,*
G. mei,	*of me,*	G. nostrûm, *or* nostri,	*of us,*
D. mihi,	*to me,*	D. nōbis,	*to us,*
A. me,	*me,*	A. nos,	*us,*
V. ———		V. ———	
A. me,	*with me.*	A. nobis,	*with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

Singular.			*Plural.*	
N. tu,	*thou,*	or *you.*	N. vos,	*ye* or *you,*
G. tui,	*of thee,*		G. vestrûm, *or* vestri,	*of you,*
D. tĭbi,	*to thee,*		D. vōbis,	*to you,*
A. te,	*thee,*		A. vos,	*you,*
V. tu,	*O thou,*		V. vos,	*O ye* or *you,*
A. te,	*with thee,*		A. vobis,	*with you.*

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. ———	N. ———
G. sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself,*	G. sui, *of themselves,*
D. sĭbi, *to himself, to herself,* &c.	D. sibi, *to themselves,*
A. se, *himself,* &c.	A. se, *themselves,*
V. ———	V. ———
A. se, *with himself,* &c.	A. se, *with themselves.*

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, O I; *O nos*, O we.

Obs 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī.*

Obs 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrōrum* and *nostrārum;* of *tu, vestrōrum* and *vestrārum,* which were afterwards contracted into *nostrûm* and *vestrûm.*

We commonly use *nostrûm* and *vestrûm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he, she, it,* are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille, iste, hic,* or *is;* as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa,* for the fem. *illud,* for the neuter, that: or *ille,* he; *illa,* she; *illud,* it or that: thus,

Singular.			Plural		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G.	illius,*		G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D.	illi,		D.	illis,	
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illâ,	illo.	A.	illis.	

Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste, ista, istud*, are declined like *ille;* only *ipse*, has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse is often joined to *ego, tu, sui;* and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	hujus,		G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D.	huic,		D.	his,	
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc.	A.	his.	

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it;* or *that*.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G.	ejus,		G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D.	ei,		D.	iis, *or* eis,	
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. ————			V. ————		
A. eo,	eâ,	eo.	A.	iis, *or* eis.	

Quis, quæ, quod or *quid?* which, what? Or *quis?* who? *or* what man? *quæ?* who? *or* what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? which thing? *or* what thing? thus,

Singular.			Plural.		
N. quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,		G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,		D.	queis, *or* quibus,	
A. quem,	quam,	quod *or* quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ————			V. ————		
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.	queis, *or* quibus,	

* In those cases where the word is not repeated, it is *the same in all genders,* both in the pronouns and adjectives.

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or vir *qui*, the man *who* or *that*; fœmina *quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; negotium *quod*, the thing *which* or *that:* genit. vir *cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; mulier *cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; negotium *cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

Singular.			*Plural.*		
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,		G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,		D.	queis, *or* quibus,	
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A. quo,	quâ,	quo.	A.	queis, *or* quibus.	

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own; are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your; like *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the first and second declension; *noster*, *-tra*, *-trum*.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what *or* which country; are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus has *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc

The relative *qui* has frequently *quî* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis:* and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their significations, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.
2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis? cujas?* When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *Isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmŏdi*, *cujusmŏdi*, &c. *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum*, or *quīcum*, and *quibuscum*: *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca* in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egŏmet*, *tūtĕmet*, *suīmet*, through all the cases, thus, *meīmet*, *tuīmet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutĕmet*: *Hiccine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meâpte*, *tuâpte*, *suâpte*, *nostrâpte*, *vestrâpte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meopte*, *tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce*; *hujusce*, *hisce*, *hosce*; of *hic* and *ce*: whence *hujuscĕmŏdi*, *ejuscemŏdi*, *cujuscemŏdi*. So, *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Singular.

N.	īdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,
G.		ejusdem,	
D.		eīdem,	
A.	eundem,	eandem,	ĭdem,
V.	īdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,
A.	eōdem,	eâdem,	eōdem.

Plural.

N.	iīdem,	eædem,	eădem,
G.	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.		eïsdem, *or* iisdem,	
A.	eosdem,	easdem,	eădem,
V.	iīdem,	eædem,	eădem,
A.		eïsdem, *or* iisdem.	

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one; *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whosoever; which are thus declined:

Nom.				*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam *or* quidnam;		cujusnam;	cuinam;
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam *or* quidpiam;		cujuspiam;	cuipiam;
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam *or* quidquam;		cujusquam;	cuiquam;
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque *or* quidque;		cujusque;	cuique;
Quisquis,	———	quidquid *or* quicquid;		cujuscujus;	cuicui.

And so in the other cases according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*; accusative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem.; and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *alĭquis*, some; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*,

which for the most part are read separately; thus, *ne quis, si quas, num quis*. They are thus declined:

Nom.				*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Alĭquis,	alĭqua,	alĭquod	*or* alĭquid;	alicujus;	alĭcui;
Ecquis, ecqua *or* ecquæ,		ecquod	*or* ecquid;	eccujus;	eccui;
Si quis,	si qua,	si quod	*or* si quid;	si cujus;	si cui;
Ne quis,	ne qua,	ne quod	*or* ne quid;	ne cujus;	ne cui;
Num quis,	num qua,	num quod	*or* num quid;	num cujus;	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quĭdam*, some; *quilĭbet, quĭvis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quĭcunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque;	cujuscunque;	cuicunque;
Quĭdam,	quædam,	quoddam *or* quiddam;	cujusdam;	cuidam;
Quilĭbet,	quælĭbet,	quodlĭbet *or* quidlĭbet;	cujuslĭbet;	cuilĭbet;
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis *or* quidvis;	cujusvis;	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds, in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam, quandam, quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam, quarundam, quorundam*, in the genitive plural, *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *alĭquod, quodvis, quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *alĭquid, quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

Obs. 5. *Alĭquis* and *Quidam* may be thus distinguished; the former denotes a person or thing *indeterminately;* the latter, *determinately*.

Obs. 6. *Uter* refers to two, and is therefore joined to comparatives.

Obs. 7. *Quis* may refer to many, and is therefore joined with superlatives.

Obs. 8. *Hic* and *Ille* are often found to refer to two words going before them. *Hic* usually to the latter; *Ille* to the former.

Obs. 9. As demonstratives, *Hic* refers to the person nearest to me; *Iste* to the person nearest to you; *Ille* to any intermediate person.

Obs. 10. *Ille* denotes honour; *Iste*, contempt; as, *ille vir; iste homo.*

Obs. 11. *Tuus* is used when we speak to one; as, *Sumne, Coriolāne, in tuis castris captĭva an mater?* *Vester*, when we speak to more than one; as, *Cives, miseremĭni cœli vestri.*

Obs. 12. *Alter* is in general applied to one of two; *Alius* to one of many.

VERB.*

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter;* because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition, as in a state of motion or rest; &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passes over* to the object, or has an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litĕras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passes not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive;* as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run; which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistĕre*, to stop; *incipĕre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c

---

* It is called a *Verb* or *Word* by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care.*

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou.* Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation: but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs which simply signify *being* are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse*, or *existĕre*, to be, or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle;* as, *amans*, loving; *amātus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine;* as, *amandum*, loving; *amātum*, to love; *amātu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-Imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object; whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice*, signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall or will love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me* obsecret, *redībo*, if *he entreat* me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into *three parts*, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsĕram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [*then*] be writing; *scripsĕro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, *yoked together*, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

THE DIFFERENT CONJUGATIONS.

Conjugation is the regular distribution of the various parts of verbs, according to the different voices, modes, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin; distinguished by the vowel preceding *re* of the infinitive mode.

The first conjugation makes *āre* long; as, *Amāre*.

The second conjugation makes *ēre* long; as, *Docēre*.

The third conjugation makes *ĕre* short; as, *Legĕre*.

The fourth conjugation makes *īre* long; as, *Audīre*.

Except *dăre*, to give, which has *ă* short, and also its compounds; thus *Circumdăre*, to surround; *circumdămus*, *-dătis*, *-dăbam*, *-dăbo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Conjugation	Singular. *Persons.* 1.	2.	3.	Plural. *Persons.* 1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕrēmus,	-ĕrētis,	-ĕrent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-a *or* -āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -ĭtōte,	-unto.
4.	-i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-or,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
2.	-eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
3.	-or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
4.	-ior,	-īris *or* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābar,	-ābāris *or* -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmĭni,	-ābantur.
2.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
3.	-ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
4.	-iēbar,	-iēbāris *or* -iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmĭni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1.	-ābor,	-āběris *or* -āběre,	-ābĭtur;	-ābĭmur,	-ābĭmĭni,	-ābuntur.
2.	-ēbor,	-ēběris *or* -ēběre,	-ēbĭtur;	-ēbĭmur,	-ēbĭmĭni,	-ēbuntur.
3.	-ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
4.	-iar,	-iēris *or* -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmĭni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1.	-er,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
2.	-ear,	-eāris *or* -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmĭni,	-eantur
3.	-ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
4.	-iar,	-iāris *or* iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmĭni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārer,	-ārēris *or* -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur,	-ārēmĭni,	-ārentur.
2.	-ērer,	-ērēris *or* -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmĭni,	-ērentur.
3.	-ĕrer,	-ĕrēris *or* -ĕrēre,	-ĕrētur;	-ĕrēmur,	-ĕrēmĭni,	-ĕrentur.
4.	-īrer,	-īrēris *or* -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmini,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	*2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmĭni,	-antor.
2.	-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmĭni,	-entor.
3.	-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-ĭmĭni,	-untor.
4.	-īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Observe. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam; iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt *or* -ēre.
Plu.	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-ĕrāmus,	-ĕrātis,	-ĕrant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated:

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	
Sum,	esse,	fui.	*To be.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Person.	*Singular.*		*Plural.*	
1.	Sum,	*I am,*	Sŭmus,	*We are,*
2.	Es,	*Thou art,* or *you are,*	Estis,	*Ye* or *you are,*
3.	Est,	*He is;*	Sunt,	*They are.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

1.	Eram,	*I was,*	Erāmus,	*We were,*
2.	Eras,	*Thou wast,* or *you were,*	Erātis,	*Ye* or *you were,*
3.	Erat,	*He was;*	Erant,	*They were.*

PERFECT. *have been* or *was.*

1.	Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuĭmus,	*We have been,*
2.	Fuisti,	*Thou hast been,*	Fuistis,	*Ye have been,*
3.	Fuit,	*He has been;*	Fuērunt, *or* -ēre,	*They have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

1.	Fuĕram,	*I had been,*	Fuerāmus,	*We had been,*
2.	Fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been,*	Fuerātis,	*Ye had been,*
3	Fuĕrat,	*He had been;*	Fuĕrant,	*They had been.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.**

1.	Ero,	*I shall be,*	Erĭmus,	*We shall be,*
2.	Eris,	*Thou wilt be,*	Erĭtis,	*Ye will be,*
3.	Erit,	*He will be;*	Erunt,	*They will be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

1.	Sim,	*I may be,*	Sīmus,	*We may be,*
2.	Sis,	*Thou mayest be,*	Sītis,	*Ye may be,*
3.	Sit,	*He may be;*	Sint,	*They may be.*

---

* *Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time.

Will, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretells: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "I *shall* go," "you *will* go;" express event only; but "*will* you go?" imports intention; and "*shall* I go?" refers to the will of another.

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

1. Essem, *I might be,* Essēmus, *We might be,*
2. Esses, *Thou mightest be,* Essētis, *Ye might be,*
3. Esset, *He might be;* Essent, *They might be*

PERFECT. *may have.*

1. Fuĕrim, *I may have been,* Fuerĭmus, *We may have been,*
2. Fuĕris, *Thou mayest have been,* Fuerĭtis, *Ye may have been,*
3. Fuĕrit, *He may have been;* Fuĕrint, *They may have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have;* or *had.*

1. Fuissem, *I might have been,* Fuissēmus, *We might have been,*
2. Fuisses, *Thou mightest have been,* Fuissētis, *Ye might have been,*
3. Fuisset, *He might have been;* Fuissent, *They might have been.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

1. Fuĕro, *I shall have been,* Fuerĭmus, *We shall have been,*
2. Fuĕris, *Thou wilt have been,* Fuerĭtis, *Ye will have been,*
3. Fuĕrit, *He will have been;* Fuĕrint, *They will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Es *or* esto, *Be thou,* Este *or* Estōte, *Be ye,* or *be you.*
3. Esto, *Let him be;* Sunto, *Let them be.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Esse, *To be,*
PERF. Fuisse, *To have been,*
FUT. Esse futūrus, -a, -um, *To be about to be,*
Fuisse futūrus, -a, um, *To have been about to be,*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. Futūrus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner, however, at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum,* I am; *tu es,* thou art, *or* you are; *ille est,* he is; *nos sumus,* we are; &c. So *ego āmo,* I love; *tu amas,* thou lovest, *or* you love; *ille amat,* he loveth *or* loves; *nos amāmus,* we love; &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es,* thou art, *or much oftener,* you are; *tu eras,* thou wast, *or* you were; *tu sis,* thou mayest be, *or* you may be; &c. So, *tu amas,* thou lovest, *or* you love; *tu amābas,* thou lovedst, *or* you loved; &c.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.	*To love.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Sing.	Am-o,	*I love,*	*Plur.*	Am-āmus,	*We love,*
	Am-as,	*Thou lovest,*		Am-ātis,	*Ye* or *you love,*
	Am-at,	*He loves;*		Am-ant,	*They love.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Am-ābam,	*I was loving,*
	Am-ābas,	*Thou wast loving,*
	Am-ābat,	*He was loving;*
Plur.	Am-abāmus,	*We were loving,*
	Am-abātis,	*Ye* or *you were loving,*
	Am-ābant,	*They were loving.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Sing.	Am-āvi,	*I have loved,*
	Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved,*
	Am-āvit,	*He has loved;*
Plur.	Am-avĭmus,	*We have loved,*
	Am-avistis,	*Ye* or *you have loved,*
	Am-avērunt *or* -avēre,	*They have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Sing.	Am-avĕram,	*I had loved,*
	Am-avĕras,	*Thou hadst loved,*
	Am-avĕrat,	*He had loved;*
Plur.	Am-averāmus,	*We had loved,*
	Am-averātis,	*Ye* or *you had loved,*
	Am-avĕrant,	*They had loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Am-abo,	*I shall love,*
	Am-ābis,	*Thou wilt love,*
	Am-ābit,	*He will love;*
Plur.	Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love,*
	Am-abĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will love,*
	Am-ābunt,	*They will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Sing.	Am-em,	*I may love,*
	Am-es,	*Thou mayest love,*
	Am-et,	*He may love;*
Plur.	Am-ēmus,	*We may love,*
	Am-ētis,	*Ye* or *you may love,*
	Am-ent,	*They may love.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing.	Am-ārem,	*I might love,*
	Am-āres,	*Thou mightest love,*
	Am-āret,	*He might love;*
Plur.	Am-arēmus,	*We might love,*
	Am-arētis,	*Ye* or *you might love,*
	Am-ārent,	*They might love.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing.	Am-avěrim,	*I may have loved,*
	Am-avěris,	*Thou mayest have loved,*
	Am-avěrit,	*He may have loved;*
Plur.	Am-averĭmus,	*We may have loved,*
	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have loved,*
	Am-avěrint,	*They may have loved*

PLUPERFECT. *might have.*

Sing.	Am-avissem,	*I might have loved,*
	Am-avisses,	*Thou mightest have loved,*
	Am-avisset,	*He might have loved;*
Plur.	Am-avissēmus,	*We might have loved,*
	Am-avissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have loved,*
	Am-avissent,	*They might have loved.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing.	Am-avěro,	*I shall have loved,*
	Am-avěris,	*Thou wilt have loved,*
	Am-avěrit,	*He will have loved;*
Plur.	Am-averĭmus,	*We shall have loved,*
	Am-averĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have loved,*
	Am-avěrint,	*They will have loved*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2.	Am-a *or* am-āto,	*Love thou*, or *do thou love*,
3.	Am-āto,	*Let him love;*
Plur. 2.	Am-āte *or* am-atōte,	*Love ye*, or *do ye love*,
3.	Am-anto,*	*Let them love.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Am-āre,	*To love.*
PERF.	Am-avisse,	*To have loved.*
FUT.	Esse amatūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to love.*
	Fuisse amatūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to love.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
FUT.	Am-atūrus, -a, -um,	*About to love.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Am-andum,	*Loving.*
Gen.	Am-andi,	*Of loving.*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving.*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Am-ātum,	*To love.*
Latter.	Am-ātu,	*To love*, or *to be loved*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
Pres.	amo	amem	ama	amāre	amans
Imperf.	amābam	amārem			
Perf.	amāvi	amavĕrim		amavisse	
Pluperf.	amavĕram	amavissem			
Fut.	amābo	amavĕro		esse *or* fuisse amatūrus	amatūrus

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Amor,	amāri,	amātus.	*To be loved.*

* The form of the present subjunctive is often used for the imperative in the first and third person; as, *amēmus*, let us love: *ament*, let them love.

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Sing.	Am-or,	*I am loved,*
	Am-āris *or* -āre,	*Thou art loved,*
	Am-ātur,	*He is loved;*
Plur.	Am-āmur,	*We are loved,*
	Am-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you are loved,*
	Am-antur,	*They are loved*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
	Am-abāris *or* -abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
	Am-abātur,	*He was loved;*
Plur.	Am-abāmur,	*We were loved,*
	Am-abamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were loved,*
	Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Sing.	Amātus sum *or* fui,	*I have been loved,*
	Amātus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
	Amātus est *or* fuit,	*He has been loved;*
Plur.	Amāti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been loved,*
	Amāti, estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been loved,*
	Amāti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Amātus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been loved,*
	Amātus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
	Amātus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been loved;*
Plur.	Amāti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been loved,*
	Amāti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been loved,*
	Amāti erant *or* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will be.*

Sing.	Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved,*
	Am-abĕris *or* -abĕre,	*Thou wilt be loved,*
	Am-abĭtur,	*He will be loved;*
Plur.	Am-abĭmur,	*We shall be loved,*
	Am-abimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be loved,*
	Am-abuntur,	*They will be loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may*, or *can be*.

Sing. Am-er,	*I may be loved,*
Am-ēris *or* -ēre,	*Thou mayest be loved,*
Am-ētur,	*He may be loved;*
Plur. Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved,*
Am-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be loved,*
Am-entur,	*They may be loved.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be.*

Sing. Am-ārer,	*I might be loved,*
Am-arēris *or* -arēre,	*Thou mightest be loved,*
Am-arētur,	*He might be loved;*
Plur. Am-arēmur,	*We might be loved,*
Am-aremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be loved,*
Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing. Amātus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been loved,*
Amātus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been loved,*
Amātus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been loved;*
Plur. Amāti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been loved,*
Amāti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been loved,*
Amāti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

S. Amātus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been loved,*
Amātus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been loved,*
Amātus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been loved;*
P. Amāti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been loved,*
Amāti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been loved*
Amāti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been lovea.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing. Amātus fuĕro,	*I shall have been loved,*
Amātus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been loved,*
Amātus fuĕrit,	*He will have been loved;*
Plur. Amāti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been loved,*
Amāti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been loved,*
Amāti fuĕrint,	*They will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Am-āre, *or* am-ātor,	*Be thou loved,*
3. Am-ātor,	*Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2. Am-amĭni,	*Be ye loved,*
3. Am-antor,	*Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Am-āri, *To be loved,*
PERF. Esse *or* fuisse amātus, -a, -um, *To have been loved.*
FUT. Amātum iri, *To be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Am-ātus, -a, -um, *Loved.*
FUT. Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
Pres.	amor	amer	amāre	amāri	
Imperf.	amābar	amārer			
Perf.	amātus sum *or* fui	amātus sim *or* fuĕrim		esse *or* fuisse amātus	amātus
Pluperf.	amātus eram *or* fuĕram	amātus essem *or* fuissem			
Fut.	amābor	amātus fuĕro		amātum iri	amandus

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Dŏcĕo,	dŏcēre,	dŏcui,	doctum.	*To teach.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *teach, do teach,* or *am teaching.*

Sing. Doc-ĕo, *I teach,*
Doc-es, *Thou teachest,* or *you teach,*
Doc-et, *He teaches;*
Plur. Doc-ēmus, *We teach,*
Doc-ētis, *Ye* or *you teach,*
Doc-ent, *They teach.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing. Doc-ēbam, *I was teaching,*
Doc-ēbas, *Thou wast teaching,*
Doc-ēbat, *He was teaching;*
Plur. Doc-ebāmus, *We were teaching,*
Doc-ebatis, *Ye* or *you were teaching,*
Doc-ēbant, *They were teaching.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Sing. Doc-ui,	*I have taught,*
Doc-uisti,	*Thou hast taught,*
Doc-uit,	*He has taught;*
Plur. Doc-uĭmus,	*We have taught,*
Doc-uistis,	*Ye* or *you have taught,*
Doc-uērunt *or* -uēre,	*They have taught*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Sing. Doc-uĕram,	*I had taught,*
Doc-uĕras,	*Thou hadst taught,*
Doc-uĕrat,	*He had taught;*
Plur. Doc-uerāmus,	*We had taught,*
Doc-uerātis,	*Ye* or *you had taught,*
Doc-uĕrant,	*They had taught*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Sing. Doc-ēbo,	*I shall teach,*
Doc-ēbis,	*Thou will teach,*
Doc-ēbit,	*He will teach;*
Plur. Doc-ebĭmus,	*We shall teach,*
Doc-ebĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will teach,*
Doc-ēbunt,	*They will teach*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Sing. Doc-eam,	*I may teach,*
Doc-eas,	*Thou mayest teach,*
Doc-eat,	*He may teach;*
Plur. Doc-eāmus,	*We may teach,*
Doc-eātis,	*Ye* or *you may teach,*
Doc-eant,	*They may teach.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing. Doc-ērem,	*I might teach,*
Doc-ēres,	*Thou mightest teach,*
Doc-ēret,	*He might teach;*
Plur. Doc-erēmus,	*We might teach,*
Doc-erētis,	*Ye* or *you might teach,*
Doc-ērent,	*They might teach.*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing. Doc-uĕrim,	*I may have taught,*
Doc-uĕris,	*Thou mayest have taught,*
Doc-uĕrit,	*He may have taught;*
Plur. Doc-uerĭmus,	*We may have taught,*
Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have taught*
Doc-uĕrint,	*They may have taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing. Doc-uissem,	*I might have taught,*
Doc-uisses,	*Thou mightest have taught,*
Doc-uisset,	*He might have taught;*
Plur. Doc-uissēmus,	*We might have taught,*
Doc-uissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have taught*
Doc-uissent,	*They might have taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing. Doc-uĕro,	*I shall have taught,*
Doc-uĕris,	*Thou wilt have taught,*
Doc-uĕrit,	*He will have taught;*
Plur. Doc-uerĭmus,	*We shall have taught,*
Doc-uerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have taught,*
Doc-uĕrint,	*They will have taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Doc-e *or* doc-ēto,	*Teach thou,*
3. Doc-ēto,	*Let him teach;*
Plur. 2. Doc-ēte *or* doc-etōte,	*Teach ye* or *you,*
3. Doc-ento,	*Let them teach*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Doc-ēre,	*To teach.*
PERF. Doc-uisse,	*To have taught.*
FUT. Esse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to teach*
Fuisse doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to teach.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Doc-ens,	*Teaching.*
FUT. Doc-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to teach.*

GERUNDS.

Nom. Doc-endum,	*Teaching,*
Gen. Doc-endi,	*Of teaching,*
Dat. Doc-endo,	*To teaching,*
Acc. Doc-endum,	*Teaching,*
Abl. Doc-endo,	*With teaching.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Doc-tum,	*To teach.*
Latter.	Doc-tu,	*To teach,* or *to be taught.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
Pres.	doceo	doceam	doce	docēre	docens
Imperf.	docēbam	docērem			
Perf.	docui	docuĕrim		docuisse	
Pluperf.	docuĕram	docuissem			
Fut.	docēbo	docuĕro		esse *or* fuisse doctūrus	doctūrus

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Dŏcēor,	dŏcēri,	doctus.	*To be taught.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Sing.	Doc-ĕor,	*I am taught,*
	Doc-ēris *or* doc-ēre,	*Thou art taught,*
	Doc-ētur,	*He is taught;*
Plu	Doc-ēmur,	*We are taught,*
	Doc-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you are taught,*
	Doc-entur,	*They are taught.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Doc-ēbar,	*I was taught,*
	Doc-ebāris *or* doc-ebāre,	*Thou wast taught,*
	Doc-ebātur,	*He was taught;*
Plur.	Doc-ebāmur,	*We were taught,*
	Doc-ebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were taught,*
	Doc-ebantur,	*They were taught.*

PERFECT. *have been, was,* or *am.*

Sing.	Doctus sum *or* fui,	*I have been taught,*
	Doctus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been taught,*
	Doctus est *or* fuit,	*He has been taught;*
Plur.	Docti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been taught,*
	Docti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been taught,*
	Docti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been taught*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Doctus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been taught,*
	Doctus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been taught,*
	Doctus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been taught;*
Plur.	Docti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been taught,*
	Docti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been taught,*
	Docti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall,* or *will be.*

Sing.	Doc-ēbor,	*I shall be taught,*
	Doc-ebĕris *or* -ebĕre,	*Thou wilt be taught,*
	Doc-ebĭtur,	*He will be taught;*
Plur.	Doc-ebĭmur,	*We shall be taught,*
	Doc-ebimĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be taught,*
	Doc-ebuntur,	*They will be taught*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may,* or *can be.*

Sing.	Doc-ear,	*I may be taught,*
	Doc-eāris *or* -eāre,	*Thou mayest be taught,*
	Doc-eātur,	*He may be taught;*
Plur.	Doc-eāmur,	*We may be taught,*
	Doc-eamĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be taught,*
	Doc-eantur,	*They may be taught.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should be*

Sing.	Doc-ērer,	*I might be taught,*
	Doc-erēris *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightest be taught,*
	Doc-erētur,	*He might be taught;*
Plur.	Doc-erēmur,	*We might be taught,*
	Doc-eremĭni	*Ye* or *you might be taught*
	Doc-erentur,	*They might be taught.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Doctus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been taught,*
	Doctus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been taught,*
	Doctus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been taught;*
Plur.	Docti simus *or* fuerĭmus	*We may have been taught,*
	Docti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been taught,*
	Docti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been taught.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have been.*

S.	Doctus essem *or* fuissem	*I might have been taught,*
	Doctus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been taught,*
	Doctus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been taught;*
P.	Docti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been taught,*
	Docti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been taught,*
	Docti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been taught.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Doctus fuĕro,	*I shall have been taught,*
	Doctus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been taught,*
	Doctus fuĕrit,	*He will have been taught;*
Plur.	Docti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been taught,*
	Docti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been taught,*
	Docti fuĕrint,	*They will have been taught.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Doc-ēre *or* doc-ētor,	*Be thou taught,*
	3. Doc-ētor,	*Let him be taught;*
Plur.	2. Doc-emĭni,	*Be ye taught,*
	3. Doc-entor,	*Let them be taught.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Doc-ēri,	*To be taught.*
PERF.	Esse *or* fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	*To have been taught.*
FUT.	Doctum iri,	*To be about to be taught.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Doc-tus, -a, -um,	*Taught.*
FUT.	Doc-endus, -a, -um,	*To be taught.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
Pres.	doceor	docear	docēre	docēri	
Imperf.	docēbar	docērer			
Perf.	doctus sum *or* fui	doctus sim *or* fuĕrim		esse *or* fuisse doctus	doctus
Pluperf.	doctus eram *or* fuĕram	doctus essem *or* fuissem			
Fut.	docēbor	doctus fuĕro		doctum iri	docendus

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Lĕgo,	lĕgĕre,	lēgi,	lectum.	*To read.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *read, do read,* or *am reading.*

Sing.	Leg-o,	*I read,*
	Leg-is,	*Thou readest,*
	Leg-it,	*He reads;*
Plur.	Leg-ĭmus,	*We read,*
	Leg-ĭtis,	*Ye* or *you read,*
	Leg-unt,	*They read.*

	IMPERFECT.	*was.*
Sing.	Leg-ēbam,	*I was reading,*
	Leg-ēbas,	*Thou wast reading,*
	Leg-ēbat,	*He was reading;*
Plur.	Leg-ebāmus,	*We were reading,*
	Leg-ebātis,	*Ye* or *you were reading,*
	Leg-ēbant,	*They were reading.*
	PERFECT.	*have.*
Sing.	Lēg-i,	*I have read,*
	Leg-isti,	*Thou hast read,*
	Lēg-it,	*He has read;*
Plur.	Leg-ĭmus,	*We have read,*
	Leg-istis,	*Ye* or *you have read,*
	Leg-ērunt *or* -ēre,	*They have read.*
	PLUPERFECT.	*had.*
Sing.	Leg-ĕram,	*I had read,*
	Leg-ĕras,	*Thou hadst read,*
	Leg-ĕrat,	*He had read;*
Plur.	Leg-erāmus,	*We had read,*
	Leg-erātis,	*Ye* or *you had read,*
	Leg-ĕrant,	*They had read*
	FUTURE.	*shall,* or *will.*
Sing.	Leg-am,	*I shall read,*
	Leg-es,	*Thou wilt read,*
	Leg-et,	*He will read;*
Plur.	Leg-ēmus,	*We shall read,*
	Leg-ētis,	*Ye* or *you will read,*
	Leg-ent,	*They will read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

	PRESENT TENSE.	*may,* or *can.*
Sing.	Leg-am,	*I may read,*
	Leg-as,	*Thou mayest read,*
	Leg-at,	*He may read;*
Plur.	Leg-āmus,	*We may read,*
	Leg-ātis,	*Ye* or *you may read,*
	Leg-ant,	*They may read.*
	IMPERFECT.	*might, could, would,* or *should.*
Sing.	Leg-ĕrem,	*I might read,*
	Leg-ĕres,	*Thou mightest read,*
	Leg-ĕret,	*He might read;*
Plur.	Leg-erēmus,	*We might read,*
	Leg-erētis,	*Ye* or *you might read,*
	Leg-ĕrent,	*They might read*

PERFECT. *may have.*

Sing. Leg-ĕrim,	*I may have read,*
Leg-ĕris,	*Thou mayest have read,*
Leg-ĕrit,	*He may have read;*
Plur. Leg-erĭmus,	*We may have read,*
Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have read,*
Leg-ĕrint,	*They may have read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Sing. Leg-issem,	*I might have read,*
Leg-isses,	*Thou mightest have read,*
Leg-isset,	*He might have read;*
Plur. Leg-issēmus,	*We might have read,*
Leg-issētis,	*Ye* or *you might have read,*
Leg-issent,	*They might have read*

FUTURE. *shall have.*

Sing. Leg-ĕro,	*I shall have read,*
Leg-ĕris,	*Thou wilt have read,*
Leg-ĕrit,	*He will have read;*
Plur. Leg-erĭmus,	*We shall have read,*
Leg-erĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have read,*
Leg-ĕrint,	*They will have read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. 2. Lĕg-e *or* leg-ĭto,	*Read thou,*
3. Leg-ĭto,	*Let him read;*
Plur. 2. Leg-ĭte *or* leg-itōte,	*Read ye* or *you,*
3. Leg-unto,	*Let them read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Leg-ĕre,	*To read.*
PERF. Lēg-isse,	*To have read.*
FUT. Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to read.*
Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to read.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. Leg-ens,	*Reading.*
FUT. Lec-tūrus, -a, -um,	*About to read.*

GERUNDS.

Nom. Leg-endum,	*Reading,*
Gen. Leg-endi,	*Of reading,*
Dat. Leg-endo,	*To reading,*
Acc Leg-endum,	*Reading,*
Abl. Leg-endo,	*With reading.*

SUPINES.

Former. Lec-tum,	*To read.*
Latter. Lec-tu,	*To read,* or *to be read.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative	*Subjunctive*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive*	*Participles*
Pres.	lego	legam	lege	legĕre	legens
Imperf.	legēbam	legĕrem			
Perf.	lēgi	legĕrim		legisse	
Pluperf.	legĕram	legissem			
Fut.	legam	legĕro		esse *or* fuisse lectūrus	lectūrus.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Lĕgor,	lĕgi,	lectus.	*To be read.*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Sing.	Leg-or,	*I am read,*
	Leg-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	*Thou art read,*
	Leg-ĭtur,	*He is read;*
Plur.	Leg-ĭmur,	*We are read,*
	Leg-imĭni,	*Ye* or *you are read,*
	Leg-untur,	*They are read.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Leg-ēbar,	*I was read,*
	Leg-ebāris *or* -ebāre,	*Thou wast read,*
	Leg-ebātur,	*He was read;*
Plur.	Leg-ebāmur,	*We were read,*
	Leg-ebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were read,*
	Leg-ebantur,	*They were read.*

PERFECT. *have been, was* or *am.*

Sing.	Lectus sum *or* fui,	*I have been read,*
	Lectus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been read,*
	Lectus est *or* fuit,	*He has been read;*
Plur.	Lecti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been read,*
	Lecti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been read*
	Lecti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing.	Lectus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been read,*
	Lectus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been read,*
	Lectus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been read;*
Plur.	Lecti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been read,*
	Lecti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been read.*
	Lecti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been read.*

FUTURE. *shall*, or *will be.*

Sing.	Leg-ar,	*I shall be read,*
	Leg-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	*Thou wilt be read,*
	Leg-ĕtur,	*He will be read;*
Plur.	Leg-ĕmur,	*We shall be read,*
	Leg-emĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be read,*
	Leg-entur,	*They will be read.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may*, or *can be.*

Sing.	Leg-ar,	*I may be read,*
	Leg-āris, *or* -āre,	*Thou mayest be read,*
	Leg-ātur,	*He may be read;*
Plur.	Leg-āmur,	*We may be read,*
	Leg-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be read,*
	Leg-antur,	*They may be read.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would*, or *should be.*

Sing.	Leg-ĕrer,	*I might be read,*
	Leg-erēris *or* -erēre,	*Thou mightest be read,*
	Leg-erētur,	*He might be read;*
Plur.	Leg-erēmur,	*We might be read,*
	Leg-eremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be read,*
	Leg-erentur,	*They might be read.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Lectus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been read,*
	Lectus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been read,*
	Lectus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been read;*
Plur.	Lecti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been read,*
	Lecti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been read,*
	Lecti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been read.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would*, or *should have been.*

S.	Lectus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been read,*
	Lectus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been read,*
	Lectus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been read;*
P.	Lecti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been read,*
	Lecti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been read,*
	Lecti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been read.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Lectus fuĕro,	*I shall have been read,*
	Lectus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been read,*
	Lectus fuĕrit,	*He will have been read;*
Plur.	Lecti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been read,*
	Lecti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been read,*
	Lecti fuĕrint,	*They will have been read.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Leg-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	*Be thou read,*
	3. Leg-ĭtor,	*Let him be read;*
Plur.	2. Leg-imĭni,	*Be ye read,*
	3. Leg-untor,	*Let them be read.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Leg-i,	*To be read.*
PERF.	Esse *or* fuisse lectus, -a, -um,	*To have been read.*
FUT.	Lectum iri,	*To be about to be read.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Lec-tus, -a, -um,	*Read.*
FUT.	Leg-endus, -a, -um,	*To be read.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative	*Subjunctive*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive*	*Participles*
Pres.	legor	legar	legĕre	legi	
Imperf.	legēbar	legĕrer			
Perf.	lectus sum *or* fui	lectus sim *or* fuĕrim		esse *or* fuisse lectus	lectus
Pluperf.	lectus eram *or* fuĕram	lectus essem *or* fuissem			
Fut.	legar	lectus fuĕro		lectum iri	legendus.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine.*	
Capĭo,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum.	*To take*

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Capio,	Capĭmus,
Capis,	Capĭtis,
Capit;	Capiunt.

IMPERFECT.

Capiēbam,	Capiebāmus,
Capiēbas,	Capiebātis,
Capiēbat;	Capiēbant.

PERFECT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Cepi,	Cepĭmus,
Cepisti,	Cepistis,
Cepit;	Cepērunt, *or* cepēre.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepĕram,	Ceperāmus,
Cepĕras,	Ceperātis,
Cepĕrat;	Cepĕrant.

FUTURE.

Capiam,	Capiēmus,
Capies,	Capiētis,
Capiet;	Capient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiam,	Capiāmus,
Capias,	Capiātis,
Capiat;	Capiant.

IMPERFECT.

Capĕrem,	Caperēmus
Capĕres,	Caperētis,
Capĕret;	Capĕrent.

PERFECT.

Cepĕrim,	Ceperĭmus,
Cepĕris,	Ceperĭtis,
Cepĕrit;	Cepĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

Cepissem,	Cepissēmus,
Cepisses,	Cepissētis,
Cepisset;	Cepissent.

FUTURE.

Cepĕro,	Ceperĭmus,
Cepĕris,	Ceperĭtis,
Cepĕrit;	Cepĕrint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2. Cape *or* capĭto,	2. Capĭte *or* capitōte,
3. Capĭto;	3. Capiunto.

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres. Capĕre,	Fut. Esse captūrus, -a, -um.
Perf. Cepisse.	Fuisse captūrus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Capiens. **Future.** Captūrus.

GERUNDS.

Nom. Capiendum,	*Acc.* Capiendum,
Gen. Capiendi,	*Abl.* Capiendo.
Dat. Capiendo,	

SUPINES.

Former. Captum. *Latter.* Captu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Capior,	Capi,	Captus.	***To be taken.***

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Capior,	Capĭmur,
Capĕris *or* capĕre,	Capimĭni,
Capĭtur;	Capiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

Capiēbar,	Capiebāmur,
Capiebāris *or* -bāre,	Capiebamĭni,
Capiebātur;	Capiebantur.

PERFECT.

Captus sum *or* fui,	Capti sumus *or* fuĭmus,
Captus es *or* fuisti,	Capti estis *or* fuistis,
Captus est *or* fuit;	Capti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre

PLUPERFECT.

Captus eram *or* fuĕram,	Capti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,
Captus eras *or* fuĕras,	Capti erātis *or* fuerātis,
Captus erat *or* fuĕrat;	Capti erant *or* fuĕrant.

FUTURE.

Capiar,	Capiēmur,
Capiēris *or* capiēre,	Capiemĭni,
Capiētur;	Capientur.

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE.

Capiar,	Capiāmur,
Capiāris *or* capiāre,	Capiamĭni,
Capiātur;	Capiantur.

IMPERFECT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Capĕrer,	Caperēmur,
Caperēris *or* -erēre,	Caperemĭni,
Caperētur;	Caperentur.

PERFECT.

Captus sim *or* fuĕrim,	Capti simus *or* fuerĭmus,
Captus sis *or* fuĕris,	Capti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,
Captus sit *or* fuĕrit;	Capti sint *or* fuĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

Captus essem *or* fuissem,	Capti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,
Captus esses *or* fuisses,	Capti essētis *or* fuissētis,
Captus esset *or* fuisset;	Capti essent *or* fuissent

FUTURE.

Captus fuĕro,	Capti fuerĭmus,
Captus fuĕris,	Capti fuerĭtis,
Captus fuĕrit;	Capti fuĕrint.

IMPERATIVE MODE.

2 Capĕre *or* capĭtor,	2. Capimĭni,
3. Capĭtor;	3. Capiuntor.

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES. Capi. FUT. Captum iri.
PERF. Esse *or* fuisse captus, -a, -um.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. Captus, -a, -um. FUT. Capiendus, -a, -um.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Indic.*	*Supine.*	
Audĭo,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum.	***To hear.***

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *hear, do hear,* or *am hearing.*

Sing. Aud-io,	*I hear,*
Aud-is,	*Thou hearest,*
Aud-it,	*He hears;*
Plur. Aud-īmus,	*We hear,*
Aud-ītis,	*Ye* or *you hear,*
Aud-iunt,	*They hear.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Aud-iēbam,	*I was hearing,*
	Aud-iēbas,	*Thou wast hearing,*
	Aud-iēbat,	*He was hearing;*
Plur.	Aud-iebāmus,	*We were hearing,*
	Aud-iebātis,	*Ye* or *you were hearing,*
	Aud-iēbant,	*They were hearing.*

PERFECT. *have.*

Sing.	Aud-īvi,	*I have heard,*
	Aud-īvisti,	*Thou hast heard,*
	Aud-īvit,	*He has heard;*
Plur.	Aud-īvĭmus,	*We have heard,*
	Aud-ivistis,	*Ye* or *you have heard,*
	Aud-ivērunt *or* -ivēre,	*They have heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had.*

Sing.	Aud-ivĕram,	*I had heard,*
	Aud-ivĕras,	*Thou hadst heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrat,	*He had heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iverāmus,	*We had heard,*
	Aud-iverātis,	*Ye* or *you had heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrant,	*They had heard.*

FUTURE. *shall* or *will.*

Sing.	Aud-iam,	*I shall hear,*
	Aud-ies,	*Thou wilt hear,*
	Aud-iet,	*He will hear;*
Plur.	Aud-iēmus,	*We shall hear,*
	Aud-iētis,	*Ye* or *you will hear,*
	Aud-ient,	*They will hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may* or *can.*

Sing.	Aud-iam,	*I may hear,*
	Aud-ias,	*Thou mayest hear,*
	Aud-iat,	*He may hear;*
Plur.	Aud-iāmus,	*We may hear,*
	Aud-iātis,	*Ye* or *you may hear,*
	Aud-iant,	*They may hear.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing.	Aud-īrem,	*I might hear,*
	Aud-īres,	*Thou mightest hear,*
	Aud-īret,	*He might hear;*
Plur.	Aud-irēmus,	*We might hear,*
	Aud-irētis,	*Ye* or *you might hear,*
	Aud-īrent,	*They might hear*

	PERFECT.	*may have.*
Sing.	Aud-ivĕrim,	*I may have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou mayest have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He may have heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We may have heard,*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They may have heard.*
	PLUPERFECT.	*might, could, would,* or *should have.*
Sing.	Aud-ivissem,	*I might have heard,*
	Aud-ivisses,	*Thou mightest have heard,*
	Aud-ivisset,	*He might have heard;*
Plur.	Aud-ivissēmus,	*We might have heard,*
	Aud-ivissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have heard,*
	Aud-ivissent,	*They might have heard.*
	FUTURE.	*shall have.*
Sing.	Aud-ivĕro,	*I shall have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕris,	*Thou wilt have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrit,	*He will have heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iverĭmus,	*We shall have heard,*
	Aud-iverĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have heard,*
	Aud-ivĕrint,	*They will have heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Aud-i *or* -īto,	*Hear thou,*
	3. Aud-īto,	*Let him hear;*
Plur.	2. Aud-īte *or* -itōte,	*Hear ye* or *you,*
	3. Aud-iunto,	*Let them hear.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Aud-īre,	*To hear.*
PERF.	Aud-ivisse,	*To have heard.*
FUT.	Esse auditūrus, -a, -um,	*To be about to hear.*
	Fuisse auditūrus,-a,-um,	*To have been about to hear*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Aud-iens,	*Hearing.*
FUT.	Aud-itūrus, -a, -um,	*About to hear.*

GERUNDS.

Nom.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing,*
Gen.	Aud-iendi,	*Of hearing,*
Dat.	Aud-iendo,	*To hearing,*
Acc.	Aud-iendum,	*Hearing,*
Abl.	Aud-iendo,	*With hearing.*

SUPINES.

Former.	Aud-ītum,	*To hear.*
Latter.	Aud-ītu,	*To hear,* or *to be heard.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
Pres.	audio	audiam	audi	audīre	audiens
Imperf.	audiēbam	audīrem			
Perf.	audīvi	audivĕrim		audivisse	
Pluperf.	audivĕram	audivissem			
Fut.	audiam	audivĕro		esse *or* fuisse auditūrus	auditūrus

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perf. Part.*	
Audior,	audīri,	audītus.	***To be heard.***

INDICATIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *am.*

Sing.	Aud-ior,	*I am heard,*
	Aud-īris *or* -īre,	*Thou art heard,*
	Aud-ītur,	*He is heard;*
Plur.	Aud-īmur,	*We are heard,*
	Aud-imĭni,	*Ye* or *you are heard,*
	Aud-iuntur,	*They are heard.*

IMPERFECT. *was.*

Sing.	Aud-iēbar,	*I was heard,*
	Aud-iebāris *or* -iebāre,	*Thou wast heard,*
	Aud-iebātur,	*He was heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iebāmur,	*We were heard,*
	Aud-iebamĭni,	*Ye* or *you were heard,*
	Aud-iebantur,	*They were heard.*

PERFECT. *have been.*

Sing.	Audītus sum *or* fui,	*I have been heard,*
	Audītus es *or* fuisti,	*Thou hast been heard,*
	Audītus est *or* fuit,	*He has been heard;*
Plur.	Audīti sumus *or* fuĭmus,	*We have been heard,*
	Audīti estis *or* fuistis,	*Ye* or *you have been heard,*
	Audīti sunt *or* fuērunt *or* fuēre,	*They have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *had been.*

Sing	Audītus eram *or* fuĕram,	*I had been heard,*
	Audītus eras *or* fuĕras,	*Thou hadst been heard,*
	Audītus erat *or* fuĕrat,	*He had been heard;*
Plur.	Audīti erāmus *or* fuerāmus,	*We had been heard,*
	Audīti erātis *or* fuerātis,	*Ye* or *you had been heard,*
	Audīti erant *or* fuĕrant,	*They had been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall*, or *will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	*I shall be heard,*
	Aud-iēris *or* -iēre,	*Thou wilt be heard,*
	Aud-iētur,	*He will be heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iēmur,	*We shall be heard,*
	Aud-iemĭni,	*Ye* or *you will be heard,*
	Aud-ientur,	*They will be heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT TENSE. *may*, or *can be.*

Sing	Aud-iar,	*I may be heard,*
	Aud-iāris, *or* -iāre,	*Thou mayest be heard,*
	Aud-iātur,	*He may be heard;*
Plur.	Aud-iāmur,	*We may be heard,*
	Aud-iamĭni,	*Ye* or *you may be heard,*
	Aud-iantur,	*They may be heard.*

IMPERFECT. *might, could, would*, or *should be.*

Sing	Aud-īrer,	*I might be heard,*
	Aud-irēris *or* -irēre,	*Thou mightest be heard,*
	Aud-irētur,	*He might be heard;*
Plur	Aud-irēmur,	*We might be heard,*
	Aud-iremĭni,	*Ye* or *you might be heard,*
	Aud-irentur,	*They might be heard.*

PERFECT. *may have been.*

Sing.	Audĭtus sim *or* fuĕrim,	*I may have been heard,*
	Audĭtus sis *or* fuĕris,	*Thou mayest have been heard,*
	Audĭtus sit *or* fuĕrit,	*He may have been heard;*
Plur.	Audĭti simus *or* fuerĭmus,	*We may have been heard,*
	Audĭti sitis *or* fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you may have been heard,*
	Audĭti sint *or* fuĕrint,	*They may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT. *might, could, would*, or *should have been.*

S.	Audĭtus essem *or* fuissem,	*I might have been heard,*
	Audĭtus esses *or* fuisses,	*Thou mightest have been heard,*
	Audĭtus esset *or* fuisset,	*He might have been heard;*
P.	Audĭti essēmus *or* fuissēmus,	*We might have been heard,*
	Audĭti essētis *or* fuissētis,	*Ye* or *you might have been heard,*
	Audĭti essent *or* fuissent,	*They might have been heard.*

FUTURE. *shall have been.*

Sing.	Audĭtus fuĕro,	*I shall have been heard,*
	Audĭtus fuĕris,	*Thou wilt have been heard,*
	Audĭtus fuĕrit,	*He will have been heard;*
Plur.	Audĭti fuerĭmus,	*We shall have been heard,*
	Audĭti fuerĭtis,	*Ye* or *you will have been heard,*
	Audĭti fuĕrint,	*They will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	2. Aud-īre *or* -ītor,	*Be thou heard,*
	3. Aud-ītor,	*Let him be heard;*
Plur	2. Aud-imīni,	*Be ye heard,*
	3. Aud-iuntor,	*Let them be heard.*

INFINITIVE MODE.

PRES.	Aud-īri	*To be heard.*
PERF.	Esse *or* fuisse audītus, -a, -um,	*To have been heard.*
FUT.	Audītum iri,	*To be about to be heard*

PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Aud-ītus,	*Heard.*
FUT.	Aud-iendus,	*To be heard.*

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Imper.*	*Infinitive.*	*Participles*
Pres.	audior	audiar	audīre	audīri	
Imperf.	audiēbar	audīrer			
Perf.	audītus sum *or* fui	audītus sim *or* fuĕrim		esse *or* fuisse audītus	audītus
Pluperf.	audītus eram *or* fuĕram	audītus essem *or* fuissem			
Fut.	audiar	audītus fuĕro		audītum iri	audiendus

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *O* of the present, *I* of the perfect indicative, *RE* of the infinitive, and *UM* of the supine.* A verb is commonly said to be conjugated when only these parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present indicative is called the *Theme*, or the *Root* of the verb; because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are called *radical* letters, because they always remain the same. By putting these before the *terminations*, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

---

* 1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i; ram, rim ro, sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U, us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

The *Imperfect* is formed from the present by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābam;* as, *am-o*, *-ābam;* in the second, into *bam;* as, *doc-eo*, *-ēbam;* in the third and fourth, into *ēbam;* as, *leg-o*, *-ēbam; audi-o*, *-ēbam.*

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the perfect by changing *i* into *ĕram;* as, *amāv-i*, *-ĕram; docu-i*, *-ĕram.*

The *Future* is formed from the present by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *ābo;* as, *am-o*, *-ābo;* in the second, into *bo;* as, *doc-eo*, *-ēbo;* in the third and fourth into *am;* as, *leg-o*, *-am; audi-o*, *-am.*

Subjunctive Mode.

The *Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *em;* as, *am-o*, *-em;* in the second, third, and fourth, into *am;* as, *doce-o*, *-am; leg-o*, *-am; audi-o*, *-am.*

The *Imperfect* is formed from the present infinitive by adding *m;* as, *amāre*, *amārem.*

The *Perfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *ĕrim;* as, *amāv-i*, *-ĕrim.*

The *Pluperfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *issem;* as, *amāv-i*, *-issem.*

The *Future* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *ĕro;* as, *amāv-i*, *-ĕro.*

Imperative Mode.

The *Present* is formed from the present infinitive by taking away *re;* as, *amare*, *ama; docēre*, *doce.*

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o*, in the first conjugation, into *āre;* as, *am-o*, *-āre;* in the second and fourth into *re;* as, *doce-o*, *-re; audi-o*, *-re;* in the third by changing *o* or *io* into *ĕre;* as, *leg-o*, *-ĕre; cap-io*, *-ĕre.*

The *Future* is formed from the supine, by changing *m* into *rus* and adding *esse* or *fuisse;* as, *amatu-m*, *-rus*, *esse* or *fuisse amatūrus.*

The *Perfect* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *isse;* as, *amav-i*, *-isse.*

The *Gerunds* are formed from the participle present by changing *s* into *dum*, *di*, and *do.*

The *Participle Present* is formed from the present indicative by changing *o* in the first conjugation, into *ans;* as, *am-o*,

-ans; in the second, into *ns*; as, *doce-o*, *-ns*; in the third and fourth, into *ens*; as, *lego*, *-ens*; *audi-o*, *-ens*.

The *Participle Future* is formed from the Supine by changing *m* into *rus*; as, *amatu-m*, *-rus*.

FORMATION OF TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

The tenses of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive* modes are formed from those of the active that end in *o*, by adding *r*; or from those that end in *m*, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amo*, *amem*; *amor*, *amer*.

The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Indicative*, and the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Subjunctive*, are composed of the perfect participle declined with the tenses of the verb *sum*.

The *Imperative* is the same as the infinitive active.

The *Infinitive Present* is formed from the active by changing *e* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *i*; as, *amār-e*, *amār-i*; *docēr-e*, *docēri*; *audīr-e*, *audīri*; and in the third, *ĕre*, into *i*; as, *leg-ĕre*, *legi*.

The *Infinitive Future* is composed of the former supine and *iri*; * as, *amātum iri*.

The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amātum*, *amātus*.

The *Future Participle* is formed from the present active by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *amans*, *amandus*.

SIGNIFICATION OF THE TENSES IN THE VARIOUS MODES.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive, signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, *or* am loving; *amābam*, I loved, did love, *or* was loving, &c.

Amāvi, I loved, did love, *or* have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, *or* in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus:

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sum*, I am, *or* have been loved, *or oftener*, I was loved.
Amātus fui, I have been loved, *or* I was loved.

Pluperfect. *Amātus eram*, I was, *or* had been loved.
Amātus fuĕram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amātus sim*, I may be, *or* may have been loved.
Amātus fuĕrim, I may have been loved.

---

* *Iri* is the infinitive passive of *eo*.

Pluperfect. *Amātus essem*, I might, could, would, *or* should be, *or* have been loved.

Amātus fuissem, I might, could, would, *or* should have been loved; *or* I had been loved.

Future. *Amātus fuĕro*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus:

Amatūrus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, *or* I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amātus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amātus* and *amatūrus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amātus est*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amāta est*, she was loved. when applied to a woman; *amātum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amāti sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amābam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amāvi;* so *amor*, and *amātus sum*, I am loved; *amābar* and *amātus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amātus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense is apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intellĭgant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is. Cic. *In facĭnus jurâsse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Elŏquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguĕrim, Teucri*, for *arguam*. Virg. *Si quid te fugĕrit, ego perièrim*, for *perībo*. Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperāre dolōrem; Et perferre, soror, potĕro:* for *potuissem* and *possem*. Virg. *Singŭla quid refĕram?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædicĕres mihi*, You should have told me before hand. Ter. *At tu dictis, Albāne, manēres*, Ought to have stood to your word. Virg. *Citius, credidĕrim*, I should sooner believe. Juv. *Hausĕrit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed. Virg. *Fuĕrint irāti*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that. Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Anĭmus meminisse horret, luctūque refūgit*, for *refūgit*. Virg. *Fuĕrat melius*, for *fuisset*. Id. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*. Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*. Plaut. *Quam mox navĭgo Ephĕsum*, for *navigābo*. Id. *Tu si hic sis, alĭter sentias*. Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. *Cato affirmat, se vivo, illum non triumphāre*, for *triumphatūrum esse*. Cic. *Persuādet Castĭco, ut occupāret*, for *occūpet*. Cæs.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecĕrit*, unless he do this. *Ter.*

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occīdes*, do not kill; *ne fecĕris*, do not do; *valēbis meque amābis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb before each of them; thus:

Dicit me scribĕre; he says *that* I write, do write, *or* am writing.
Dixit me scribĕre; he said *that* I wrote, did write, *or* was writing.
Dicit me scripsisse; he says *that* I wrote, did write, *or* have written.
Dixit me scripsisse; he said *that* I had written.
Dicit me scriptūrum esse; he says *that* I will write.
Dixit nos scriptūros esse; he said *that* we would write.
Dicit nos scriptūros fuisse; he says *that* we would have written.
Dicit litĕras scribi; he says *that* letters are written, writing, *or* in writing.
Dixit litĕras scribi; he said *that* letters were writing, *or* written.
Dicit litĕras scriptas esse; he says *that* letters are, *or* were written.
Dicit litĕras scriptas fuisse; he says *that* letters have been written.
Dixit litĕras scriptas fuisse; he said *that* letters had been written.
Dicit litĕras scriptum iri; he says *that* letters will be written.
Dixit litĕras scriptum iri; he said *that* letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinite passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrăsis*, or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore* or *futūrum esse ut scribant,—ut litĕræ scribantur;* I know that they will write,—that letters will be written *Scivi fore* or *futūrum esse ut scribĕrent,—ut litĕræ scriberentur;* I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futūrum fuisse ut litĕræ scriberentur;* I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mihi, puĕro, nobis, &c. *litĕras;* I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.
Scribendum fuit mihi, puĕro, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.
Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.
Scio scribendum esse mihi litĕras; I know that I must write letters.
——*scribendum fuisse mihi;*——that I must have written.
Dixit scribendum fore mihi; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus:*

Litĕræ sunt scribendæ mihi, puĕro, homin̆ibus, &c. or, *a me, puĕro,* &c. letters are to be, *or* must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So, *litĕræ scribendæ erant, fuĕrunt, erunt,* &c. *Si litĕræ scribendæ sint, essent, forent,* &c. *Scio litĕras scribendas esse;* I know *that* letters are to be, *or* must be written. *Scivi litĕras scribendas fuisse;* I knew *that* letters ought to have been *or* must have been written.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Vŏco, vŏcāvi, vŏcātum, to call; so, *rĕvŏco, revŏcāvi, revŏcātum,* to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pĕpŭli,* to beat; *rĕpello, rĕpŭli,* never *repĕpŭli,* to beat back. But the compounds of *do, sto, disco,* and *posco,* follow the general rule; thus *ēdisco, ēdĭdĭci,* to get by heart; *dēposco, dēpŏposci,* to demand: so, *præcurro, præcŭcurri; rĕpungo, rĕpŭpŭgi.*

Exc 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine: as, *facio, fēci, factum,* to make; *perfĭcio, perfēci, perfectum,* to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go;* also the compounds of *hăbeo, plăceo, săpio, sălio,* and *stătuo,* observe the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

Creo, creāvi, creātum, to create; *păro, părāvi, părātum,* to prepare.—So,

Abundo, *to abound.*
Accūso, *to charge with a crime.*
Adumbro, *to shade, to delineate.*
Ædĭfĭco, *to build.*
Æstĭmo, *to value.*
Ambŭlo, *to walk.*
Amplio, *to enlarge, to put off a cause.*
Anĭmo, *to encourage.*
Antĭcĭpo, *to anticipate.*
Antīquo, i. e. antīqua probo, *to reject a law.*
Appello, *to call.*
Apprŏpinquo, *to approach.*
Ariēto, *to push like a ram.*
Apto, *to fit.*
Aro, *to plough.*
Ascio, *to cut,* or *hew.*
Assĕvēro, *to affirm.*
Ausculto, *to listen.*
Auctōro, *to engage for service.*
Autūmo, *to suppose.*
Averrunco, *to avert.*
Bajŭlo, *to carry.*
Bālo, *to bleat.*
Basio, *to kiss.*
Bello, *to war.*
Beo, *to bless.*
Blătĕro, *to babble.*
Boo, *to bellow.*
Bŭlŭlo, *to hoot like an owl.*
Căco, *to go to stool.*
Cæco, *to blind,* or *dazzle.*
Cælo, *to carve.*
Calceo, *to put on shoes, to shoe.*
Calcitro, *to kick.*
Calco, *to tread.*
Cālīgo, *to be dark,* or *dim-sighted.*
Carmĭno, *to card wool*
Castīgo, *to chastise.*
Castro, *to cut off.*
Cĕlebro, *to make famous.*
Cēlo, *to conceal.*
Centŭrio, & concentŭrio, *to divide into companies.*
Certo, *to strive, to fight.*
Cesso, *to cease.*
Clāmo, *to cry.*
Claudĭco, *to limp.*
Coāgŭlo, *to curdle.*
Cōgĭto, *to think.*

Collīneo, *to aim at, to hit the mark.*
Cōlo, *to strain.*
Commūnīco, *to impart.*
Compāro, *to compare.*
Compenso, *to make amends.*
Compĕrendīno, *to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.*
Compīlo, *to pile up, to pillage.*
Concīlio, *to gain, to reconcile.*
Concordo, *to agree.*
Confūto, rĕfūto, *to disprove.*
Congĕlo, *to freeze.*
Consīdĕro, *to consider.*
Contāmīno, *to pollute.*
Cōpūlo, *to couple.*
Corrūgo, *to wrinkle.*
Corusco, *to brandish.*
Crĕmo, *to burn.*
Creo, *to create.*
Cribro, *to sift.*
Crispo, *to curl.*
Crūcio, *to torment.*
Cūro, *to care.*
Damno, *to condemn.*
Dĕcīmo, *to take the tenth part,* or *punish every tenth man.*
Declāro, *to declare.*
Dĕcollo, *to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.*
Dĕcōro, *to adorn.*
Dĕcūrio, *to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.*
Dēdīco, *to dedicate.*
Dēlecto, *to delight.*
Dēlībĕro, *to deliberate.*
Dēlīneo, *to trace, to chalk out.*
Dēlīro, *to doat, to rave.*
Dēlumbo, *to weaken.*
Dēsīdĕro, *to desire.*
Dēsōlo, *to lay waste*
Destīno, *to destine.*
Dīco, *to dedicate.*
Discepto, dispūto, *to debate.*
Dissīpo, *to scatter.*
Dŏlo, *to hew,* or *cut.*
Dōno, *to present.*
Duplīco, *to double.*
Edūco, *to bring up.*
Ejūlo, *to wail, to weep.*
Emancīpo, *to free a son from the power of his father.*
Emendo, *to amend.*
Enucleo, *to take out the kernel, to explain.*
Enōdo, *to unknit, to explain.*
Equīto, *to ride.*
Erro, *to wander.*
Examīno, *to examine, to try.*
Exantlo, *to empty, to endure.*
Exăro, *to plough up, to scrawl, to write fast.*
Exentĕro, *to take out the guts.*
Existīmo, *to think.*
Explōro, *to search.*
Extrīco, *to disentangle.*
Fabrīco, *to frame.*
Fascīno, *to bewitch.*
Fātīgo, *to weary.*
Fermento, *to leaven with dough, to ferment.*
Festīno, *to hasten.*
Flāgīto, *to dun.*
Flagro, *to be on fire.*
Flo, *to blow.*
Fŏcillo, rĕfocillo, *to cherish, to warm.*
Fŏdīco, *to pierce,* or *push.*
Fŏro, *to bore.*
Fortūno, *to prosper.*
Fragro, *to smell sweetly.*
Fraudo, *to defraud.*
Frio, *to crumble.*
Frustro, & -or, *to disappoint.*
Fūco, *to colour, to paint.*
Fŭgo, *to put to flight.*
Fundo, *to found.*
Gĕnĕro, *to beget*
Grăvo, *to weigh down.*
Gŭberno, *to govern.*
Gusto, *to taste.*
Hăbīto, *to dwell.*
Hæsīto, *to doubt.*
Hālo, *to breathe.*
Hio, *to gape.*
Hŏnōro, *to honour.*
Jacto, *to boast, to brag.*
Jento, *to breakfast.*
Ignōro, *to be ignorant.*
Immŏlo, *to sacrifice.*
Impĕro, *to command.*
Impetro, *to obtain.*
Inauro, *to gild.*
Inchoo, *to begin.*
Inclīno, *to incline.*
Indāgo, *to trace out.*
Indīco, *to show.*
Inquīno, *to pollute.*
Inspīco, *to sharpen at the end.*
Instauro, *to renew.*
Instīgo, *to push on.*
Intercălo, *to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.*
Intro, *to enter.*
Invīto, *to invite.*
Irrădio, *to shine upon.*
Irrīto, *to provoke.*
Itĕro, *to do again.*
Jūbĭlo, *to shout for joy.*
Jurgo, & -or, *to chide,* or *scold.*
Jūro, *to swear.*
Lăbōro, *to labour.*
Lăcĕro, *to tear.*
Lachrȳmo, & -or, *to weep.*
Lævīgo, *to smooth,* or *polish.*
Lallo, *to sing as a nurse to a child.*
Lănio, *to tear.*
Latro, *to bark.*
Laxo, *to loose.*
Lēgo, *to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.*
Lĕvo, *to lighten.*
Lībo, *to taste.*
Lībĕro, *to free.*
Lĭgo, *to bind.*
Lĭquo, *to melt.*
Lītĭgo, *to quarrel.*

Lĭto, *to appease by sacrifice.*
Lūcubro, *to sit up late to study.*
Lustro, *to survey.*
Luxo, *to put out of joint.*
Macto, *to slay, to sacrifice.*
Mando, *to command, to commit.*
Māno, *to flow.*
Mātūro, *to hasten.*
Mĕdĭco, & -or, *to cure.*
Mĕmŏro, *to tell.*
Meo, *to go*, or *pass.*
Mĕrīdio, & -or, *to sleep at noon.*
Migro, *to remove.*
Mīlĭto, *to be a soldier.*
Mĭnistro, *to serve.*
Mītĭgo, *to pacify.*
Monstro, *to show*, or *tell.*
Mulco, *to beat.*
Multo, & -cto, *to fine.*
Musso, & -ĭto, *to mutter.*
Mŭtĭlo, *to maim.*
Mūto, *to change.*
Narro, *to tell.*
Nauseo, *to be sea-sick.*
Nāvĭgo, *to sail.*
Nāvo, *to act vigorously.*
Nĕgo, *to deny.*
Nicto, *to wink.*
No, *to swim.*
Nŏdo, *to knot;* rarely act.
Nōmĭno, *to name.*
Nŏto, *to mark.*
Nŏvo, *to renew.*
Nūdo, *to make bare.*
Nŭmĕro, *to count.*
Nuncŭpo, *to call.*
Nuntio, *to tell.*
Nūto, *to nod.*
Obsecro, *to beseech.*
Obsĕro, *to lock.*
Obtempĕro, *to obey.*
Obtrunco, *to kill.*
Obtūro, *to stop up.*
Occo, *to harrow.*
Odōro, *to perfume.*
Onĕro, *to load.*
Opto, *to wish.*
Orbo, *to deprive.*
Ordĭno, *to put in order.*
Orno, *to deck, to adorn.*
Oro, *to beg.*
Oscĭto, & -or, *to yawn, to be listless.*
Pāco, *to subdue.*
Palpĭto, *to beat*, or *throb.*
Palpo, *to stroke, to gain by flattery.*
Părento, *to perform funeral rites, to revenge.*
Păro, *to prepare.*
Patro, *to perform.*
Pecco, *to sin.*
Pĕnetro, *to pierce.*
Persĕvēro, *to continue constant.*
Pio, *to expiate.*
Plāco, *to appease.*
Plōro, *to bewail.*
Porto, *to carry.*
Postŭlo, *to demand.*
Prīvo, *to deprive.*
Prŏbo, *to approve.*
Procrastĭno, *to delay.*
Profligo, *to rout.*
Prōmulgo, *to publish.*
Propāgo, *to propagate.*
Prŏpĕro, *to hasten.*
Propīno, *to drink to.*
Prōtēlo, *to chase away.*
Publĭco, *to publish, to confiscate.*
Pugno, *to fight.*
Pullŭlo, *to bud.*
Purgo, *to cleanse.*
Pŭto, *to think.*
Quadro, *to square.*
Rĕcŭpĕro, *to recover.*
Rĕcūso, *to refuse.*
Refrīgĕro, *to cool.*
Rĕgĕlo, *to thaw.*
Rĕpăro, *to repair.*
Rēpræsento, *to resemble, to show; to pay money in advance.*
Rĕsĕro, *to unlock.*
Rĭgo, *to water.*
Rŏgo, *to ask.*
Rŏto, *to wheel about.*
Ructo, & -or, *to belch.*
Rūmĭno, *to chew the cud.*
Runco, *to weed.*
Sacro, *to consecrate.*
Săgīno, *to fatten.*
Sălīvo, *to spit*, or *slaver*
Salto, *to dance.*
Sălūto, *to salute.*
Sāno, *to heal.*
Sătio, *to satisfy.*
Sătŭro, *to fill, to glut.*
Scărifĭco, *to lance*, or *open.*
Screo, *to hawk*, or *retch in spitting.*
Sĕcundo, *to prosper.*
Sēdo, *to allay.*
Sēpăro, *to sever.*
Servo, *to keep.*
Sibīlo, *to hiss.*
Sicco, *to dry.*
Signo, *to mark out.*
Signĭfĭco, *to mean, to give notice.*
Sĭmŭlo, *to pretend.*
Sŏcio, *to match, to join.*
Sōlĭcĭto, *to stir up, to disquiet.*
Somnio, *to dream.*
Specto, *to behold.*
Spēro, *to hope.*
Spīro, *to breathe.*
Spŏlio, *to rob.*
Spūmo, *to foam.*
Stagno, *to stand as water.*
Stillo, *to drop.*
Stimŭlo, *to goad, to vex.*
Stīpo, *to stuff, to guard.*
Strangŭlo, *to stifle.*
Strīgo, *to breathe*, or *rest in work, as oxen or horses do.*
Sūdo, *to sweat.*
Suffōco, *to strangle.*
Suffŏco *to burn incense.*
Sugillo, *to taunt*, or *jeer.*
Sulco, *to furrow.*
Sŭpĕro, *to overcome.*
Suppĕdĭto, *to afford*
Sŭsurro, *to whisper.*
Tardo, *to stop.*
Taxo, *to rate, to reprove.*
Tĕmĕro, *to defile.*
Tempĕro, *to temper.*
Tĕnuo, to make small.

Tĕrebro, *to bore.*
Termĭno, *to bound.*
Tĭtillo, *to tickle.*
Tĭtŭbo, *to stagger.*
Tŏlĕro, *to bear.*
Trāno, *to swim over.*
Trĭpŭdio, *to caper.*
Triumpho, *to triumph.*
Trŭcīdo, *to kill.*
Turbo, *to disturb.*
Ulŭlo, *to howl.*
Umbro, *to shade.*
Văcillo, *to waver.*
Văco, *to want, to be at leisure.*
Vasto, *to lay waste.*
Vellĭco, *to pluck, twitch, or pinch; to taunt, or rail at.*
Vēlo, *to cover.*
Ventĭlo, *to fan.*
Verbĕro, *to whip.*
Vestīgo, *to search for.*
Vibro, *to brandish, to shake.*
Vĭduo, *to deprive.*
Vĭgĭlo, *to watch.*
Vindĭco, *to claim, to revenge.*
Viŏlo, *to violate.*
Vĭtio, *to spoil.*
Vīto, *to shun.*
Vĭtŭpĕro, *to blame.*
Vŏco, *to call.*
Vŏlo, *to fly.*
Vŏro, *to devour.*
Vulgo, *to spread abroad.*
Vulnĕro, *to wound.*

Exc. 1. *Do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre,* to give: so, *venundo,* to sell; *circundo,* to surround; *pessundo,* to overthrow; *satisdo,* to give surety; *venundĕdi, venundătum, venundăre,* &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stĕti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum,* and oftener *stătum;* as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum,* or *præstătum,* to excel, to perform. So, *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lăvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lăvātum,* to wash.

Pōto, pōtāvi, pōtum, or *pōtātum,* to drink.

Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. *juvatūrus.* So, *adjŭvo*

Exc. 3. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum,* to lie down. So, *ac-, ex-, in-, oc-, rĕ-cŭbo.* These and the other compounds insert an *m,* and are of the third conjugation; except *ex-cubo.*

Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum, to subdue. So, *ē-, per-dŏmo.*

Sŏno, sŏnui, sŏnĭtum, to sound. So, *as-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, rĕ-sŏno.*

Tŏno, tŏnui, tŏnĭtum, to thunder. So, *at-, circum-, in-, superin-, rĕ-tŏno.* Horace has *intŏnātus.*

Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum, to forbid.

Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, to make a noise. So, *con-, in-, per-, rĕ-crĕpo: discrĕpo* has rather *discrĕpāvi.*

Exc. 4. *Frĭco, frĭcui, frictum,* to rub. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frĭco.* But some of these have also *ātum.*

Sĕco, sĕcui, sectum, to cut. So, *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, rĕ-, sub-sĕco.*

Nĕco, nĕcui, or *nĕcāvi, nĕcātum,* to kill. So, *inter-, ē-nĕco:* but these have oftener *ectum; enectum, internectum.*

Mĭco, mĭcui, —— to glitter, to shine. So, *inter-, prō-mĭco. Emĭco* has *ēmĭcui, ēmĭcātum: dĭmĭco, dimĭcāvi, dimĭcātum,* rarely *dimĭcui,* to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine; *labo*, to fall, or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plĭco*, to fold.

Plĭco, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re-*, *sub-*, has *āvi*, *ātum*; as, *duplĭco*, *duplĭcāvi*, *duplĭcātum*, to double. So, *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plĭco*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *ĭtum*; as, *applĭco*, *applĭcui*, *applĭcĭtum*, or *-āvi*, *-ātum*, to apply. So, *im-*, *com-plĭco*. *Explĭco*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui*, *explĭcĭtum*; but when it signifies to explain, or interpret, *explĭcāvi*, *explĭcātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *ĭtum*; as, *hăbeo*, *habui*, *habĭtum*, to have. So,

Adhibeo, *to admit, to use.*
Cohibeo, Inhibeo, *to restrain.*
Exhibeo, *to show, to give.*
Pĕrhibeo, *to say, to give out.*
Prohibeo, *to hinder.*
Posthabeo, *to value less.*
Præbeo, *to afford.*
Rĕdhĭbeo, *to return*, or *take back a thing that was sold for some fault.*
Dĕbeo, *to owe.*
Mĕreo, *to deserve:* Com-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mĕreo, *or* mereor.
Mŏneo, *to admonish:* Ad-, com-, præ-mŏneo.
Terreo, *to terrify:* Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo.
Dirĭbeo, *to count over, to distribute.*

Neuter verbs which have *ui*, want the supine; as, *āreo*, *ārui*, to be dry. So,

Aceo, & -esco, *to be sour.*
Albeo, Candeo, *to be white.*
Calleo, *to be hard.*
Cāneo, *to be hoary.*
Clāreo, *to be bright.*
Egeo, indĭgeo, *to want.*
Emĭneo, *to stand above others.*
Flacceo, *to wither.*
Flōreo, *to flourish.*
Fœteo, *to stink.*
Frendeo, *to gnash the teeth.*
Frondeo, *to bear leaves.*
Horreo, *to be rough.*
Hūmeo, *to be wet.*
Immĭneo, *to hang over.*
Langueo, *to languish.*
Lĭqueo, licui, *to melt, to be clear.*
Măceo, *to be lean.*
Mădeo, *to be wet.*
Marceo, *to wither.*
Mūceo, *to be mouldy.*
Nĭteo, *to shine.*
Palleo, *to be pale.*
Păteo, *to be open.*
Pūteo, *to stink.*
Putreo, *to rot.*
Ranceo, *to be mouldy.*
Rĭgeo, *to be stiff.*
Rŭbeo, *to be red.*
Squāleo, *to be foul.*
Sordeo, *to be nasty.*
Stŭdeo, *to favour.*
Stŭpeo, *to be amazed.*
Splendeo, *to shine.*
Tĕpeo, *to be warm.*
Torpeo, *to be benumbed.*
Tŭmeo, *to swell.*
Vĭgeo, *to be strong.*
Vĭreo, *to be green.*

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Văleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-valeo:* *Plăceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-placeo:* *Displĭceo*, to displease: *Căreo*, to want: *Pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-pāreo:* *Jăceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jăceo:* *Caleo*, to be warm: and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-căleo:* Nŏceo, to

hurt: *Dŏleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dŏleo: Coălco*, to grow together: *Lĭceo*, which in the active signifies to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lăteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delĭteo*, *inter-*, *sub-lateo:* as likewise do those of *Tăceo*, *-cui*, *-cĭtum*, to be silent, *con-*, *ob-*, *rĕ-tĭceo.*

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tĭmeo*, *-ui*, to fear: *Sĭleo*, *-ui*, to conceal: *Arceo*, *-cui*, to drive away: but the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui exercĭtum*, to exercise. So, *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO:*

Jŭbeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So, *fidè-jŭbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So, *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-*, *rĕ-sorbeo.* We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi: Exsorptum*, *rĕsorptum*, are not in use.

Dŏceo, *dŏcui*, *doctum*, to teach. So, *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dŏceo.*

Misceo, *miscui*, *mistum* or *mixtum*, to mix. So, *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *rĕ-misceo.*

Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroke, to soothe. So, *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *rĕ-mulceo.*

Lūceo, *luxi*, —— to shine. So, *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *ē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-lūceo.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO:*

Prandeo, *prandi*, *pransum*, to dine.

Vĭdeo, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, to see. So, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rĕ-vĭdeo.*

Sĕdeo, *sēdi*, *sessum*, to sit. So, *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pos-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-sĭdeo: Circumsĭdeo*, or *circumsĕdeo*, *super-sĕdeo.* But *dē-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rĕ-*, *sub-sĭdeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, *strīdi*, —— to make a noise.

Pendeo, *pĕpendi*, *pensum*, to hang. So, *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*, *super-pendeo.*

Mordeo, *mŏmordi*, *morsum*, to bite. So, *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-mordeo.*

Spondeo, *spŏpondi*, *sponsum*, to promise. So, *de-*, *re-spondeo.*

Tondeo, *tŏtondi*, *tonsum*, to clip. So, *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo.*

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi*, *remordi*, *respondi*, *attondi*, &c.

Rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, to laugh. So, *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo.*
Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So, *dis-, per-suādeo.*
Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So, *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo.*

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO:*
Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So, *ad-, ex-augeo.*
Lūgeo, luxi, —— to mourn. So, *e-, pro-, sub-lugeo.*
Frīgeo, frixi, —— to be cold. So, *per-, re-frīgeo.*
Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So, *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo.*
Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum, or *mulctum*, to milk. So, *e-, im-mulgeo.*
Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.
Urgeo, ursi, —— to press. So, *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo.*
Fulgeo, fulsi —— to shine. So, *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo.*
Turgeo, tursi, to swell. *Algeo, alsi*, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO:*
Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.
Cieo, (cīvi) cĭtum, to stir up, to rouse. So, *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cieo. Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.
Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So, *af-, de-fleo.*
Compleo, complēvi, complētum, to fill. So, the other compounds of *pleo; de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo.*
Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.
Oleo, to smell, has *ŏlui, ŏlĭtum*. So, likewise, its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ŏleo.* But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum;* thus, *exŏleo, exŏlēvi, exŏlētum*, to fade. So, *inŏleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-ĭtum*, to grow into use; *obsŏleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abŏleo*, to abolish, has *ăbŏlēvi, ăbŏlĭtum;* and *ădŏleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adŏlēvi, adultum.*

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO.*
Măneo, mansi, mansum, to stay. So, *per-, rĕ-măneo.*
Neo, nēvi, nētum, to spin. So, *per-neo.*
Tĕneo, tĕnui, tentum, to hold. So, *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tĭneo.* But *attĭneo, pertĭneo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstĭneo.*
Torqueo, torsi, tortum, to throw, to twirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.*
Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo.*
Torreo, torrui, tostum, to roast. So, *ex-torreo.*

Censeo, censui, censum, to judge. So, *ac-, per-, re-censeo,* to review; *succenseo,* to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum;* as, *mŏveo, mōvi mōtum,* to move; *Fŏveo, fōvi, fōtum,* to cherish. So, *con-, rĕ-foveo.* So, *vŏveo,* to vow, or wish, and *dēvŏveo.*

Făveo, to favour, has *fāvi, fautum;* and *căveo,* to beware of, *cāvi, cautum.* So, *præ-căveo.*

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *păveo, pāvi,* to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui.* So, *de-, ef-, in-, per-, rĕ-ferveo.*

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi and connixi.*

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo,* to suck milk; *līveo,* to be black and blue; *scăteo,* to abound; *renīdeo,* to shine; *mæreo,* to be sorrowful; *ăveo,* to desire; *polleo,* to be able; *flāveo,* to be yellow; *denseo,* to grow thick; *glabreo,* to be smooth, or bare. To these add *calveo,* to be bald; *cēveo,* to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hĕbeo,* to be dull; *ūveo,* to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

IO.

1. *Făcio, fēci, factum,* to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a: lucri-, magni-, ārĕ-, călĕ-, mădĕ-, tĕpĕ-, bĕnĕ-, mălĕ-, sătis-făcio,* &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum;* as, *afficio, affēci, affectum.* So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, suf-ficio.* *Note:* Facio, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a;* but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i.*

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplĭfĭco, sacrĭfĭco, terrĭfĭco, magnĭfĭco; gratĭfĭcor,* to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdĭfĭcor,* to mock.

Jăcio, jēci, jactum, to throw. So, *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jĭcio;* in the supine *-ectum.*

The compounds of *spĕcio* and *lăcio,* which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum;* as, *aspĭcio, aspexi, aspectum,* to behold. So, *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, prore-, retro-, su-spĭcio.*

Allĭcio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So, *il-, pel-lĭcio;* but *ēlĭcio*, to draw out, has *elĭcui, elĭcĭtum.*

2. *Fŏdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So, *ad-, circum-con-, ef-, in,- inter-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-fŏdio.*

Fŭgio, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, to fly. So, *au-*, (for *ab-*,) *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fŭgio.*

3. *Căpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, sus-cĭpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum;*) and *ante-căpio.*

Răpio, răpui, raptum, to pull, or snatch. So, *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, sur-rĭpio, -rĭpui, -reptum.*

Săpio, săpui, —— to savour, to be wise. So, *consĭpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desĭpio*, to be foolish; *resĭpio*, to come to one's wits.

Cŭpio, cupīvi, cupītum, to desire. So, *con-, dis-, per-cŭpio.*

4. *Părio, pĕpĕri, parĭtum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quătio, quassi, quassum, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum;* as, *concŭtio, concussi, concussum.* So, *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-cŭtio*

UO has *ui, ūtum;* as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to show, to prove or argue, to reprove. So, *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Acuo, Exăcuo, *to sharpen.*
Batuo, *or* battuo, *to beat, to fight, to fence with foils*
Induo, *to put on clothes.*
Exuo, *to put off clothes.*
Imbuo, *to wet* or *imbue, to season* or *instruct.*
Mĭnuo, *to lessen:* Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo.
Spuo, *to spit:* Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo.
Stătuo, *to set* or *place, to ordain* Con-, de-, in-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-stĭtuo.
Sternuo, *to sneeze.*
Suo, *to sew* or *stitch, to tack together:* As-, circum-, con-, dis-, in-, præ-, re-suo.
Trĭbuo, *to give, to divide:* At-, con-, dis-, re-trĭbuo.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo.*

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-struo.*

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luĭtum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum;* as, *abluo, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So, *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo.*

Ruo, rui, ruĭtum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*,

as, *diruo, dirui, dirŭtum*, to overthrow. So, *ē-, ob-, prō-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mĕtuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo; abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod, or beckon with the head; *rĕnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bĭtum;* as,

Bĭbo, bĭbi, bibĭtum, to drink. So, *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bĭbo*.

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So, *ad- circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scrībo.*

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So, *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cŭbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; *accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbĭtum*, to recline at table. So, *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cubui, -cŭbĭtum*

These two verbs want the supine; *scăbo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So, *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo*.

Glūbo, and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. and sup.

CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So, *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. *So, ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-*, or *trans-dūco*.

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome *So, con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco*.

Parco, pĕperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsĭtum*, to spare. So, *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum;* as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part. *noscitūrus*. So,

Dignosco, *to distinguish;* ignosco, *to pardon;* also inter-, per-, prænosco.

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, *to grow:* Con-, de-, ex-, re-, *and without the supine,* ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, *to rest:* Ac-, con-, inter-, rĕ-quiesco.

Scisco, -īvi, -ītum, *to ordain;* ad-, *or* ascisco, *to take, to associate;* concisco, *to vote, to commit;* also, præ-, re-cisco; decisco, *to revolt.*

Suesco, *to be accustomed:* As-, con-de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnĭtum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognĭtum*, to know. So, *rĕcognosco*, to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So, *com-, dē-pasco.*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine:

Disco, dĭdĭci, to learn. So, *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, prædisco, -dĭdĭci.*

Posco, pŏposci, to demand. So, *ap-, dē-, ex-, rĕ-posco.*

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So, *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine; as, *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arsi, arsum*, from *ardeo.*

DO has *di, sum;* as,

Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb; *ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum*, to eat. So,

Ascendo, *to mount.*
Descendo, *to go down:* Con-, e-, ex-, in-, tran-scendo.
Accendo, *to kindle:* In-, suc-cendo.
Cūdo, *to forge, to stamp, or coin:* Ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cūdo.
Defendo, *to defend.*
Offendo, *to strike against, to offend, to find.*
Mando, *to chew:* Præ-, re-mando.
Prehendo, *to take hold of:* Ap-, com-, de-, prehendo.

Exc. 1. *Dīvĭdo, dīvīsi, divīsum*, to divide.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsum, to shave. So, *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo.*

Claudo, clausi, clausum, to close. So, *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo.*

Plaudo, plausi, plausum, to clap the hands for joy. So, *ap-, circum-plaudo:* also, *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo, -plōsi, -plōsum.*

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, to play. So, *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-,lūdo.*

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsum, to thrust. So, *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. So, *al-, col-, e-, il-līdo, -līsi, -līsum.*

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So, *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rōdo.*

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si, sum;* as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, to fall upon. So, *circum-, ē-, super-vādo.*

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So, *abs-, ac-, antĕ-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, rĕ-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo.*

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So, *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, rĕ-pando.*

Cŏmĕdo, comēdi, comēsum, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ĕdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum;* as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ĕdo, -ēdi, -ēsum.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour forth. So, *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, trans-fundo.*

Scindo, scĭdi, scissum, to cut. So, *as-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, tran-scindo.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, to cleave. So, *con-, dif-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tŭdi, tūsum;* as, *contundo, contŭdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So, *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo.*

Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cĭdo, -cĭdi,* ——: except, *incĭdo, incĭdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recĭdo, recĭdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occĭdo, occĭdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cĕcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *ī* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So, *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rĕ-, suc-cīdo.*

Tendo, tĕtendi, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So, *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tendi, -tensum*, or *-tentum.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to show; which has commonly *ostensum.*

Pēdo, pĕpēdi, pedĭtum, to break wind backwards. So, *op-pēdo.*

Pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, to weigh. So, *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, pĕr-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dĭdi*, and *dĭtum;* as, *abdo, abdĭdi, abdĭtum*, to hide. So, *ad-, con-, dē-, di-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, tra-do:* also, *decon-, recon-do:* and *coad-, superad-do;* and *deper-, disper-do.* To these add *crēdo, crēdĭdi, crēdĭtum*, to believe; *vendo, vendĭdi, vendĭtum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondĭtum*, rarely *abscondĭdi, absconsum.*

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo, strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sĕdeo;* as, *consīdo, consēdi, consessum*, to sit down So, *as-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rĕ-, sub-sīdo.*

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects, resemble one another and therefore should be care-

fully distinguished; as, *concĭdo, concēdo, concīdo; consīdo* and *consīdeo; conscindo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi, ctum;* as,

Rĕgo, rexi, rectum, to rule, to govern; *dīrĭgo, -exi, -ectum*, to direct; *arrĭgo*, and *ērĭgo, -exi, -ectum*, to raise up; *corrĭgo*, to correct; *porrĭgo*, to stretch out; *subrĭgo*, to raise up. So,

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird, to surround:* Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-cingo.
Flīgo, *to dash*, or *beat upon:* Af-, con-, in-flīgo; also, proflīgo, *to rout*, of the first conjug.
Jungo, *to join;* ab-jungo, *to separate:* Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo.
Lingo, *to lick:* De-, e-lingo; and pollingo, *to anoint a dead body.*
Mungo, *to wipe or clean the nose.*
Emungo, *to wipe, to cheat.*
Plango, *to beat, to lament.*
Stingo, *or* Stinguo, *to dash out, to extinguish:* Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo.
Tĕgo, *to cover:* Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tĕgo.
Tingo, *or* Tinguo, *to dip*, or *dye:* Con-, in-tingo.
Ungo, *or* Unguo, *to anoint:* Ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexi, surrectum*. So, *as-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, re-surgo.*

Pergo, perrexi, perrectum, to go forward.

Stringo, strinxi, strictum, to bind, to strain, to lop. So, *ad-, con-, de-, dis-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-stringo.*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, to feign. So, *af-, con-, ef-, re-fingo.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, to paint. So, *ap-, de-pingo.*

Exc. 2. *Frango, frēgi, fractum*, to break. So, *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-fringo, -frēgi, -fractum.*

Ago, ēgi, actum, to do, to drive. So, *ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, sub-, trans-, transad-ĭgo*, and *circum-, per-ăgo: cōgo*, for *coăgo, coēgi, coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *ăgo* want the supine: *sătăgo, satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdĭgo, prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo* for *deăgo, dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambĭgo*, to doubt, to dispute, wants the preterite and supine.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, to gather, to read. So, *al-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-lĕgo:* also, *col-, de-, e-, recol-, se-lĭgo*, which change *ĕ* into *ĭ*.

Dīlĭgo, to love, has *dilexi, dilectum*. So, *neglĭgo*, to neglect; and *intellĭgo*, to understand; but *neglĭgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*. Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum*, to touch. So, *at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo;* thus, *attingo, attĭgi, attactum*, &c.

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, to prick, *or* sting. The compounds have *punxi;* as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So, *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo:* but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repŭpŭgi*.

12

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose; or *pĕpĭgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *păgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango* have *pēgi;* as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So, *im-, ob-, sup-pingo.*

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip, or plunge. So, *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo.*

Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe, or clean. So, *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo.*

Fīgo, fixi, fixum, to fix, or fasten. So, *af-, con-, de-, in- of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-fīgo.*

Frīgo, frixi, frixum, or *frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So, *e-, de-, in-vergo.*

HO, JO.

1. *Trăho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So, *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trăho.*

Veho, vexi, vectum, to carry. So, *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vĕho.*

2. *Mejo*, or *mingo, minxi, mictum*, to make water. So, *immejo.*

LO.

1. *Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So, *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cŏlo:* and likewise *occŭlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

Consŭlo, consului, consultum, to advise, or consult.

Alo, ălui, alĭtum, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

Mŏlo, molui, molĭtum, to grind. So, *com-, e-, per-mŏlo.*

The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello,-cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percŭli, perculsum; recello*, to push down, wants both preterite and supine.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, to thrust. So, *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appŭli, appulsum*, &c.

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, to deceive. But *rĕfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli*, or *vulsi, vulsum*, to pull, or pinch. So, *a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello.* But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *velli.*

Sallo, salli, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psalli*, ——, to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustŭli*, and *sublātum*; *extollo, extŭli, elātum;* but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, ĭtum;* as,

Gĕmo, gĕmui, gĕmĭtum, to groan. So, *ad-*, or *ag-, circum-, con-, e-, in- re-gĕmo.*

Frĕmo, fremui, fremĭtum, to rage, or roar, to make a great noise. So, *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frĕmo.*

Vŏmo, ēvŏmo, -ui, -ĭtum, to vomit, to spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So, *de-, ex-prōmo.*

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So, *ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo.*

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p;* as, *demsi, demtum; sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum*, or *emtum*, to buy. So, *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-ĭmo*, and *co-ēmo, -ēmi, -emptum*, or *-emtum.*

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So, *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prĭmo.*

Trĕmo, trĕmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So, *at-, circum-, con-, in-trĕmo.*

NO.

1. *Pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum*, to put or place. So, *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno.*

Gigno, gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, to beget. So, *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno.*

Căno, cĕcĭni, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum;* as, *accĭno, accĭnui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So, *con-, in-, præ-, suc-cĭno; oc-cĭno*, and *oc-căno; recĭno*, and *re-căno;* but *occanui, recanui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum;* or without the *p, contemsi, contemtum.*

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain, or slight. So, *desperno.*

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, to lay flat, to strow. So, *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno.*

Sĭno, sīvi, or *sii, sĭtum,* to permit. So, *desĭno, desīvi,* oftener *desii, desĭtum,* to leave off.

Lĭno, līvi, or *lēvi, lĭtum,* to anoint, to daub. So, *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-lĭno.*

Cerno, crēvi, seldom *crētum,* to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So, *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno.*

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po,* have *psi* and *ptum;* as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum,* to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo, -cerpsi, -cerptum.*

Clĕpo, -psi, -ptum, *to steal.*
Rĕpo, *to creep:* Ad-, *or* ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rĕpo, -psi, -ptum.
Scalpo, *to scratch* or *engrave:* So, circum-, ex-scalpo.
Sculpo, *to grave,* or *carve:* So, ex-, in-sculpo.
Serpo, *to creep as a serpent.*

Exc. 1. *Strĕpo, strĕpui, strĕpĭtum,* to make a noise. So, *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strĕpo.*

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum,* to break. So, *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo.*

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO,* viz.

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cŏquo.*

Linquo, līqui, ——, to leave. The compounds have *lictum;* as, *rĕlinquo, relīqui, relictum,* to forsake. So, *de-,* and *dērĕlinquo.*

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsīvi, quæsītum,* to seek. So, *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quīro, -quisīvi, -quisītum.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So, *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tĕro.*

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, *or* make clean. So, *ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, præ-, re-verro.*

Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So, *ăd-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pĕr-, sub-ūro.*

Gĕro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So, *ag-, con-, dī-, in-, pro-, rĕ-, sug-gĕro.*

2. *Curro, cŭcurri, cursum,* to run. So, *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prō-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not: as, *accurri,* or *accŭcurri,* &c. *Circum-, rĕ-, suc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever double the first syllable.

3. *Sĕro, sēvi, sătum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sĭtum;* as, *consĕro, consēvi, con-sĭtum*, to plant together. So, *as-, circum-, de-, dis-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, tran-sĕro.*

Sĕro, ——, to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assĕro, asserui, assertum*, to claim. So, *con-, circum-, de-, dis-, edis-, ex-, in-, inter-sĕro.*

4. *Fŭro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi, sītum;* as,

Arcesso, arcessīvi, arcessītum, to call, or send for. So, *capesso*, to take; *făcesso*, to do, to go away; *lăcesso*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Vīso, vīsi*, ——, to go to see, to visit. So, *in-, re-vīso. Incesso, incessi*, ——, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso, depsui, depstum*, to knead. So, *con-, per-, depso.*

Pinso, pinsui, or *pinsi, pinsum, pistum*, or *pinsĭtum*, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi, flexum*, to bow. So, *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-flecto.*

Plecto, plexi, and *plexui, plexum*, to plait. So, *implecto.*

Necto, nexi, and *nexui, nexum*, to tie, or knit. So, *ad-*, or *an-, con-, circum-, in-, sub-necto.*

Pecto, pexi, and *pexui, pexum*, to dress, *or* comb. So, *de-, ex-, re-pecto.*

2. *Mĕto, messui, messum*, to reap, mow, *or* cut down. So, *de-, e-, præ-mĕto.*

3. *Pĕto, pĕtīvi, pĕtītum*, to seek, to pursue. So, *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, sup-pĕto.*

Mitto, mīsi, missum, to send. So, *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-, di-, e-, im-, inter-, intro-, o-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.*

Verto, verti, versum, to turn. So, *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-verto.*

Sterto, stertui, ——, to snore. So, *de-sterto.*

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stĭti, stătum:* but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stĕti, stătum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stĭti*, and *stĭtum;* as, *assisto, astĭti, astĭtum*, to stand by. So, *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto.* But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vīvo, vixi, victum*, to live. So, *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-vīvo.*

Solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, to loose. So, *absolvo*, to acquit; *dis-, ex-, per-, re-solvo.*

Volvo, volvi, vŏlūtum, to roll. So, *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-volvo.*

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*) has *texui, textum.* So, *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the supine in *ītum;* as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum, to fortify. So,

Balbūtio, *to stammer, to lisp, to stutter.*
Bullio, *to boil,* or *bubble.*
Condio, *to season.*
Crŏcio, *to croak.*
Custōdio, *to keep.*
Dormio, *to sleep.*
Effūtio, *to babble,* or *blab out.*
Erūdio, *to instruct.*
Expĕdio, *to disentangle, to free.*
Gannio, *to yelp,* or *whine.*
Garrio, *to prate.*
Glūtio, *to swallow.*
Grunnio, *to grunt.*
Hinnio, *to neigh.*
Impĕdio, *to entangle, to hinder.*
Insānio, *to be mad.*
Irrētio, *to ensnare.*
Lascīvio, *to be wanton.*
Lēnio, *to ease,* or *mitigate.*
Ligūrio, *to eat deliciously, to slabber up.*
Lippio, *to be dim-sighted.*
Mollio, *to soften.*
Mūgio, *to bellow.*
Mūtio, *to mutter.*
Nutrio, *to nourish.*
Obēdio, *to obey.*
Păvio, *to beat.*
Pīpio, *to peep like a chicken.*
Polio, *to polish.*
Prūrio, *to itch, to tickle.*
Pūnio, *to punish.*
Rĕdĭmio, *to bind.*
Rūgio, *to roar like a lion.*
Sævio, *to rage.*
Sāgio, præsāgio, *to guess, to foresee.*
Sarrio, *to weed, to rake.*
Scio, *to know.*
Nescio, *not to know.*
Scătūrio, *to gush out.*
Servio, *to serve.*
Sītio, *to thirst.*
Sōpio, *to lull asleep.*
Stăbĭlio, *to establish.*
Sūperbio, *to be proud.*
Suffio, *to perfume.*
Tinnio, *to tinkle.*
Tussio, *to cough.*
Vāgio, *to cry* or *squeal as a child.*
Vestio, *to clothe.*

Exc. 1. *Singultio, singultīvi, singultum*, to sob.

Sĕpĕlio, sepĕlīvi, sepultum, to bury.

Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So, *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, post-, præ-, re-, sub-, super-vĕnio.*

Vēneo, vēnii, ——, to be sold.

Sălio, sălui and *sălii, saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sĭlui*, sometimes *silii*, or *silīvi* and *sultum;* as, *transĭlio, transĭlui, transĭlii*, and *transilīvi, transultum*, to leap over. So, *ab-, as-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, re-, sub-, super-sĭlio.*

Exc. 2. *Amĭcio* has *amĭcui, amictum,* seldom *amixi,* to cover, *or* clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So, *circum-, de-, e-, re-vincio.*

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum, and *sancīvi, sancītum,* to establish, *or* ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum,* to change money.

Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge, *or* inclose. So, *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio.*

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely *hausum,* to draw out, to empty, to drink. So, *de-, ex-haurio.*

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So, *as-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio.*

Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum,* to mend, *or* repair. So, *ex-, re-sarcio.*

Farcio, farsi, fartum, to cram. So, *con-fercio, ef-fercio,* or *ef-farcio; in-fercio,* or *in-farcio; re-fercio.*

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop, *or* uphold. So, *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio.*

Exc. 5. The compounds of *părio* have *pĕrui, pertum;* as, *ăpĕrio, apĕrui, ăpertum,* to open. So, *ŏpĕrio,* to shut, to cover. But *compĕrio* has *compĕri, compertum,* to know a thing for certain. *Rĕpĕrio, repĕri, repertum,* to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcūtio, cæcutīvi,* to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestīvi,* to show one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glŏcio, glŏcīvi,* to cluck, *or* cackle as a hen. *Dementio, dementīvi,* to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptīvi,* to play the fool. *Prōsilio, prosĭlui,* to leap forth. *Fĕrocio, ferŏcīvi,* to be fierce.

Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So, *rĕfĕrio,* to strike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lŏquor,* I speak; *mŏrior,* I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crīmĭnor,* I accuse, *or* I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent,* because they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, Lætor,

lætāri, *lætātus*, to rejoice; *vĕreor*, *vĕrēri*, *verĭtus*, to fear; *fungor*, *fungi*, *functus*, to discharge an office; *pŏtior*, *pŏtīri*, *pŏtītus*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *Lætor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor:*

Indicative Mode.

PRES. *Lætor*, I rejoice; *lætāris* or *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.
IMP. *Lætābar*, I rejoiced, *or* did rejoice; *lætabāris*, &c.
PERF. *Lætātus sum* or *fui*,* I have rejoiced, &c.
PLUPERF. *Lætātus eram* or *fuĕram*, I had rejoiced, &c.
FUT. *Lætābor*, I shall *or* will rejoice; *lætabĕris* or *-abĕre*, &c.
Lætatūrus sum, I am about to rejoice, *or* I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

PRES. *Læter*, I may rejoice; *lætēris* or *-ēre*, &c.
IMP. *Lætārer*, I might rejoice; *lætārēris* or *-rēre*, &c.
PERF. *Lætātus sim* or *fuĕrim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.
PLUPERF. *Lætātus essem* or *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.
FUT. *Lætātus fuĕro*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Imperative Mode.

PRES. *Lætāre* or *-ātor*, rejoice thou; *lætātor*, let him rejoice, &c.

Infinitive Mode.

PRES. *Lætāri*, to rejoice.
PERF. *Lætātus esse* or *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.
FUT. *Lætatūrus esse*, to be about to rejoice.
Lætatūrus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

PRES. *Lætans*, rejoicing.
PERF. *Lætātus*, having rejoiced.
FUT. *Lætatūrus*, about to rejoice.
Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Abŏmĭnor, *to abhor.*
Adūlor, *to flatter.*
Æmŭlor, *to vie with, to envy.*
Altercor, *to dispute, to make a repartee.*
Aprīcor, *to bask in the sun.*
Arbitror, *to think.*
Aspernor, *to despise.*
Aversor, *to dislike.*
Auctiōnor, *to sell by auction.*
Aucŭpor, & -o, *to hunt after.*
Augŭror, & -o, *to forebode*, or *presage by augury.*
Auspĭcor, *to take an omen, to begin.*

* *Fui*, *fuĕram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as, *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Auxilior, *to assist.*
Bacchor, *to rage, to revel, to riot.*
Calumnior, *to accuse falsely.*
Cavillor, *to scoff.*
Caupōnor, *to huckster, to retail.*
Causor, *to plead in excuse, to blame.*
Circŭlor, *to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk.*
Cōmessor, *to revel.*
Cŏmĭtor, *to accompany.*
Commentor, *to meditate on,* or *write what one is to say.*
Conciōnor, *to harangue.*
Conflictor, *to struggle.*
Cōnor, *to endeavour.*
Conspĭcor, *to spy, to see.*
Contemplor, *to view.*
Convīvor, *to feast.*
Cornīcor, *to chatter like a crow.*
Crīmĭnor, *to blame.*
Cunctor, *to delay.*
Dĕtestor, *to abhor.*
Dŏmĭnor, *to rule.*
Epŭlor, *to feast.*
Exsecror, *to curse.*
Fămŭlor, *to serve.*
Fĕrior, *to keep holy-day.*
Frustror, *to disappoint.*
Fūror, *to steal.*
Glōrior, *to boast.*
Grătŭlor, *to rejoice, to wish one joy.*
Grăvor, *to grudge.*
Hărĭŏlor, *to conjecture.*
Helluor, *to guttle,* or *gormandize, to waste.*
Hortor, *to encourage.*
Hallūcĭnor, *to speak at random, to err.*
Imāgĭnor, *to conceive.*
Imĭtor, *to imitate.*
Indignor, *to disdain.*
Infĭcior, *to deny.*
Insector, *to pursue, to inveigh against.*
Insĭdior, *to lie in wait.*
Interprĕtor, *to explain.*
Jăcŭlor, *to dart.*
Jŏcor, *to jest.*
Lāmentor, *to bewail.*
Lucror, *to gain.*
Luctor, *to wrestle.*
Māchĭnor, *to contrive.*
Mĕdĭcor, *to cure.*
Mĕdĭtor, *to muse,* or *ponder.*
Mercor, *to purchase.*
Mĕtor, *to measure.*
Mĭnor, *to threaten.*
Mīror, *to wonder.*
Mĭsĕror, *to pity.*
Mŏdĕror, *to rule.*
Mŏdŭlor, *to play a tune.*
Mōrĭgĕror, *to humour.*
Mŏror, *to delay.*
Mūnĕror, *to present.*
Mūtuor, *to borrow.*
Nūgor, *to trifle.*
Obtestor, *to beseech.*
Odōror, *to smell.*
Opĕror, *to work.*
Opīnor, *to think.*
Opĭtŭlor, *to help.*
Oscŭlor, *to kiss.*
Otior, *to be at leisure.*
Pālor, *to stroll,* or *straggle.*
Palpor, *or* -o, *to stroke,* or *soothe.*
Patrōcĭnor, *to patronize.*
Percontor, *to inquire.*
Pĕregrīnor, *to go abroad.*
Pĕriclĭtor, *to be in danger.*
Pignĕror, *to pledge.*
Piscor, *to fish.*
Pŏpŭlor, & -o, *to lay waste.*
Prædor, *to plunder.*
Prælior, *to fight.*
Præstŏlor, *to wait for.*
Prævārĭcor, *to go crooked, to shuffle,* or *prevaricate.*
Prĕcor, *to pray.*
Deprĕcor, *to entreat, to pray against.*
Prŏcor, *to ask, to woo.*
Rĕcordor, *to remember.*
Refrāgor, *to be against.*
Rīmor, *to search.*
Rixor, *to scold,* or *brawl.*
Rustĭcor, *to dwell in the country.*
Scrūtor, *to search.*
Sōlor, *to comfort.*
Spătior, *to walk abroad.*
Spĕcŭlor, *to view, to spy.*
Stĭpŭlor, *to stipulate,* or *agree.*
Stŏmăchor, *to be angry.*
Suāvior, *to kiss.*
Suffrāgor, *to vote for one, to favour.*
Suspĭcor, *to suspect.*
Tergĭversor, *to boggle, to put off.*
Testor, *to witness.*
Tūtor, *to defend.*
Vădor, *to give bail, to force to give bail.*
Văgor, *to wander.*
Vātĭcĭnor, *to prophesy.*
Vēlĭtor, *to skirmish.*
Vĕnĕror, *to worship.*
Vēnor, *to hunt.*
Versor, *to be employed.*
Vōcifĕror, *to bawl.*

In the Second Conjugation,

Mĕreor, mĕrĭtus, *to deserve.*
Tueor, tuĭtus, *or* tūtus, *to defend.*
Pollĭceor, pollĭcĭtus, *to promise.*
Līceor, lĭcĭtus, *to bid at an auction*

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; *and* complector, complexus, *to embrace.*
Revertor, reversus, *to return.*

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, *to soothe, to flatter.*	Partior, *to divide.*
Mentior, *to lie.*	Sortior, *to draw* or *cast lots.*
Mŏlior, *to attempt something difficult.*	Largior, *to give liberally.*

Part. Perf. *Blandītus, mentītus, molītus, partītus, sortītus, largītus.*

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Second Conjugation.*

Reor rătus, to think.

Misĕreor, misertus, or not contracted, *miserītus*, to pity.

Făteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of *făteor* have *fessus;* as, *prŏfĭteor, professus*, to profess. So, *confĭteor*, to confess, to own *or* acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS *in the Third Conjugation.*

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So, *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.*

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So, *ab-, de-ūtor.*

Lŏquor, lŏquutus, or *locūtus*, to speak. So, *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lŏquor.*

Sĕquor, sĕquutus, or *sĕcūtus*, to follow. So, *as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sĕquor.*

Quĕror, questus, to complain. So, *con-, inter-, præ-quĕror.*

Nītor, nīsus, or *nixus*, to endeavour, to lean upon. So, *ad-*, or *an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nītor:* but the compounds have oftener *nixus.*

Păciscor, pactus, to bargain. So, *de-paciscor.*

Grădior, gressus, to go. So, *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grĕdior.*

Prŏfĭciscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Patior, passus, to suffer. So, *per-pĕtior.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So, *adĭpiscor, adeptus;* and *indĭpiscor, indeptus.*

Commĭniscor, commentus, to devise, *or* invent.

Fruor, fruĭtus, or *fructus*, to enjoy. So, *per-fruor.*

Oblīviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Morior, mortuus, to die. So, *com-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-mŏrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So, *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

Orior, ŏrīri, ortus, to rise. So, *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ŏrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ītūrus;* thus, *mŏrĭtūrus, nascĭtūrus, ŏrĭtūrus.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Fourth Conjugation.*

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So, *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētior*

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So, *ex-, red-ordior.*

Expĕrior, expertus, to try.

Oppĕrior, oppertus, and *opperītus*, to wait, *or* tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, *to feed.*	Mĕdeor, mederi, *to heal.*
Līquor, līqui, *to melt*, or *be dissolved.*	Rĕmĭniscor, reminisci, *to remember*
	Irascor, irasci, *to be angry.*

Ringor, ringi, *to grin like a dog.*
Prævertor, præverti, *to get before, to outrun.*
Diffĭteor, diffĭtēri, *to deny.*
Divertor, diverti, *to turn aside, to take lodging.*
Dēfĕtiscor, defĕtisci, *to be weary,* or *faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, queo, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, fĕro,* and *fīo,* with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo.*

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-sum,* and *insum,* which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse,* &c.

PROSUM, *to do good,* has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e.*

Prosum, prodesse, profui.

Indicative Mode.

PR. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sŭmus, prod-estis, *&c*
IMP. Prod-ĕram, prod-ĕras, prod-ĕrat; prod-erāmus, *&c.*
PER. Pro-fui, pro-fuisti, pro-fuit; pro-fuĭmus, pro-fuistis, *&c*
PLU. Pro-fuĕram, pro-fuĕras, pro-fuĕrat; pro-fuerāmus, *&c.*
FUT. Prod-ĕro, prod-ĕris, prod-ĕrit; prod-erĭmus, *&c.*

Subjunctive Mode.

PR. Pro-sim, pro-sis, pro-sit; pro-sīmus, pro-sītis, pro-sint.
IMP. Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essēmus, *&c.*
PER. Pro-fuĕrim, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit; pro-fuerĭmus, *&c.*
PLU. Pro-fuissem, pro-fuisses, pro-fuisset; pro-fuissēmus, *&c.*
FUT. Pro-fuĕro, pro-fuĕris, pro-fuĕrit; pro-fuerĭmus, *&c*

Imperative Mode.

PR. 2. Prod-es *or* prod-esto, 2. Prod-este *or* prod-estōte,
3. Prod-esto; 3. Pro-sunto.

Infinitive Mode.

PR. Prod-esse.
PER. Pro-fuisse.
FUT. Esse pro-futūrus, -a, -um,
Fuisse pro-futūrus.

Participle.

FUT. Pro-futūrus.

POSSUM is compounded of *pŏtis,* able, and *sum:* and is thus conjugated:

Possum, posse, pŏtui. ***To be able.***

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Possum,	pŏtes,	pŏtest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt
Imp.	Pot-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Per.	Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit,	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu.	Pot-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant
Fut	Pot-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sītis,	-sint.
Imp.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
Per	Pot-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu	Pot-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
Fut	Pot-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Posse. Per. Potuisse. ***The rest wanting.***

EO, īre, īvi, ĭtum. ***To go.***

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imp.	Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibāmus,	ibātis,	ibant.
Per	Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit;	ivĭmus,	ivistis,	ivērunt *or* ivēre.
Plu	Ivĕram,	ivĕras,	ivĕrat;	iverāmus,	iverātis,	ivĕrant.
Fut	Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibĭmus,	ibĭtis,	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eāmus,	eātis,	eant.
Imp.	Irem,	ires,	iret;	irēmus,	irētis,	irent.
Per.	Ivĕrim,	ivĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.
Plu.	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissēmus,	ivissētis,	ivissent.
Fut.	Ivĕro,	ivĕris,	ivĕrit;	iverĭmus,	iverĭtis,	ivĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. { I, / Ito, } īto; { ite, / itōte, } eunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ire.
Per. Ivisse.
Fut. Esse itūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse itūrus, -a, -um.

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
Fut. Itūrus, -a, -um.	Eundi.	2. Itu.
	Eundo, &c.	

The compounds of *Eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ăd-*, *ăb-*, *ex-*, *cŏ-*, *ĭn-*, *inter-*, *ŏb-*, *rĕd-*, *sŭb-*, *pĕr-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo;* only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii,* seldom *adīvi, adĭtum, adīre,* to go to; perf. *Adii, adiisti,* or *adīsti,* &c. *adiĕram, adiĕrim,* &c. So likewise VENEO, *venii,* ——, to

be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But AMBIO, -*īvi*, -*ītum*, -*īre*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *īvĕrat*, he was gone; *ivĕrit*, he may be gone, *or* shall be gone. So, *vĕnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he has come; *vĕnĕrat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericŭla adeuntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri sibyllīni adīti sunt*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedĭbus transīri potest*. Cæs. *Inimicitiæ subeantur*. Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo;* only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO, velle, vŏlui. *To will*, or *to be willing*.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Vŏl-o,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	vultis,	volunt.
Imp.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu.	Vol-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
Fut.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velītis,	velint.
Imp.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	vellētis,	vellent.
Per.	Vol-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	uĕrint.
Plu.	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Vol-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode. — *Participle.*

Pr. Velle. Per. Voluisse. — Pr. Volens

The rest not used.

NOLO, nolle, nōlui. *To be unwilling*.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolŭmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Imp.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu.	Nol-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant
Fut.	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolēmus,	nolētis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolīmus,	nolītis,	nolint
Imp.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
Per.	Nol-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu.	Nol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissētis,	-uissent
Fut.	Nol-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Imperative.		*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
2. *Sing.*	2. *Plur.*		
Pr. Noli *or* Nolīto.	nolīte *or* nolitōte.	Pr. Nolle. Per. Noluisse.	Pr. Nolens. *The rest wanting.*

MALO, malle, malui. *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Māl-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malŭmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Imp.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Mal-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uĭstis,	-uērunt *or* -uēre.
Plu.	Mal-uĕram,	-uĕras,	-uĕrat;	-uerāmus,	-uerātis,	-uĕrant.
Fut.	Mal-am,	-es,	-et;	*&c. This is scarcely in use.*		

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Malim,	malis,	malit;	malīmus,	malītis,	malint.
Imp.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent
Per.	Mal-uĕrim,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.
Plu.	Mal-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent
Fut.	Mal-uĕro,	-uĕris,	-uĕrit;	-uerĭmus,	-uerĭtis,	-uĕrint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Malle. Per. Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, ferre, tŭli, lātum. *To carry, to bring,* or *suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Imp.	Fer-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ēbat;	ebāmus,	ebātis,	-ēbant.
Per.	Tuli,	tulisti,	tulit;	tulĭmus,	tulistis,	tulērunt *or* -ēre.
Plu.	Tul-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	erāmus,	-erātis,	-ĕrant.
Fut.	Feram,	feres,	feret:	ferēmus,	ferētis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Feram,	feras,	ferat;	ferāmus,	ferātis,	ferant.
Imp.	Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferrēmus,	ferrētis,	ferrent
Per.	Tul-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	Tul-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent
Fut.	Tul-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-erĭmus,	-erĭtis,	-ĕrint.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Fer, Ferto, ferto; { ferte, fertōte, } ferunto.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tulisse.
Fut. Esse latūrus, -a, -um.
Fuisse latūrus, -a, -um

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Fĕrens.	Ferendum,	1. Lātum.
Fut. Latūrus, -a, -um.	Ferendi,	2. Lātu
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fĕror, ferri, lātus. *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr.	Fĕror,	ferris *or* ferre,	fertur;	ferĭmur,	ferimĭni,	feruntur.
Imp.	Fer-ēbar,	-ebāris *or* -ebāre,	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamĭni,	-ebantur

Per. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.
Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fuĕram, &c.

Fut.	Ferar,	ferēris *or* ferere,	ferētur;	ferēmur	feremĭni,	ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr.	Ferar,	ferāris, *or* ferāre,	ferātur;	ferāmur,	feramĭni,	ferantur.
Imp.	Ferrer,	ferrēris *or* ferrēre,	ferrētur;	ferrēmur,	ferremĭni,	ferrentur.

Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuĕrim, &c.
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Latus fuĕro, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pr. Ferre *or* fertor, fertor; ferimĭni, feruntor.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Ferri.
Per. Esse *or* fuisse latus, -a, -um.

Participles.

Per. Latus, -a, -um.
Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro;* as, *affĕro, attŭli allātum; aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum; diffĕro, distŭli, dilātum; confĕro, contŭli, collātum; infĕro, intŭli, illātum; offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum; effĕro, extŭli, elātum.* So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-,* præ-, re-fĕro. In some

writers we find *adfĕro, adtŭli, adlātum; conlātum; inlātum; obfĕro*, &c. for *affĕro*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo; malo* for *magis volo; fero, fers, fert*, &c. for *feris, ferit*, &c. *Feror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur*, for *ferrĕris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco*, and *făcio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic, duc, fac;* instead of *dīce, dūce, făce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, fiĕri, factus. *To be made* or *done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

PR.	Fīo,	fis,	fit;	fimus,	fitis,	fiunt.
IMP.	Fiēbam,	fiēbas,	fiēbat;	fiebāmus,	fiebātis,	fiēbant.
PER.	Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.					
PLU.	Factus eram, &c. factus fuĕram, &c.					
FUT.	Fiam,	fies,	fiet;	fiēmus,	fiētis,	fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

PR.	Fiam,	fias,	fiat;	fiāmus,	fiātis,	fiant.
IMP.	Fiĕrem,	fiĕres,	fiĕret;	fierēmus,	fierētis,	fiĕrent.
PER.	Factus sim, &c. factus fuĕrim, &c.					
PLU.	Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.					
FUT.	Factus fuĕro, &c.					

Imperative Mode.

PR. { Fi, Fito, } fito: { fite, fitōte, } fiunto,

Infinitive Mode

PR. Fiĕri.
PER. Esse *or* fuisse factus, -a, -um.
FUT. Factum iri.

Participles.

PER. Factus, -a, -um.
FUT. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

The compounds of *făcio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefio, calĕfac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fīce* in the imperative; as, *conficio, confīce; conficior, confīci, confectus*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiĕri; defit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE *Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sŏleo, solēre, solĭtus*, to use; *audeo, audēre, ausus*, to dare; *gaudeo, gaudēre, gavīsus*, to rejoice; *fīdo, fidĕre, fīsus*, to trust. So, *confīdo*, to trust; and *diffīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdi*, and *diffīdi*. Some add *mœreo, mœrēre, mœstus*, to be sad; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrātus*

sum and *cœnātus sum*, for *jurāvi* and *cœnāvi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapŭlo, -āvi, -ātum*, to be beaten *or* whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cœpi*, and *mĕmĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs;* though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate, *or* have hated, *odĕram, odĕrim, odissem, odĕro, odisse.* Participles, *osus, osūrus; exōsus, perōsus.*

Cœpi, I begin, *or* have begun, *cœpĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.* Supine, *cœptu.* Participles, *cœptus, cœptūrus.*

Mĕmĭni, I remember, *or* have remembered, *meminĕram, -ĕrim, -issem, -ĕro, -isse.* Imperative, *memento, mementōte.*

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *osus sum:* and always *exōsus, perōsus sum*, and not *exōdi, perōdi.* We say, *opus cœpit fiĕri*, or *cœptum est.*

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Fŭro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus we say, *daris, datur;* but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fŏrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, *or* I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow: *cedo*, tell thou, *or* give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind.	Pr.	Aio,	ais,	ait;	——	——	aiunt.
	Imp.	Aiēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
	Per.	——	aisti,	——	——	——	——
Sub.	Pr.	——	aias,	aiat;	——	aiātis,	aiant.
Imp.		Ai.			Part.	Pr.	Aiens.
Ind.	Pr.	Inquam,	-quis,	-quit;	-quĭmus,	-quĭtis,	-quiunt.
	Imp.	——	——	inquiēbat;	——	——	inquiēbant.
	Per.	——	inquisti,	——	——	——	——
	Fut.	——	inquies,	inquiet;	——	——	——
Imp.		Inque, inquĭto.			Part.	Pr.	Inquiens.
Sub.	Imp. Plu.	Fŏrem,	fores,	foret;	forēmus,	forētis,	forent.

Inf.		Fore, *to be hereafter*, or *to be about to be*; the same with *esse futūrus*.					
Sub.	Pr.	Ausim,	ausis,	ausit;	——	——	——
	Per.	Faxim,	faxis,	faxit;	——	——	faxint.
	Fut.	Faxo,	faxis,	faxit;	——	faxītis,	faxint

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecĕrim* and *fecĕro*.

Imp.	Ave *or* avēto; *plur.* avēte *or* avetōte.	Inf. avēre.	
——	Salve *or* salvēto; — salvēte *or* salvetōte.	— salvēre.	
Ind. Fut.	———Salvēbis.		
Imp. *second pers. sing.*	Cedo, *plur.* cedĭte.		
Ind. pres. *first pers. sing.*	Quæso, *plur.* quæsŭmus.		

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets: as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si;* as, *sis*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sūltis*, for *si vultis; sodes*, for *si audes;* equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capsis*, for *cape si vis.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dĕlectat*, it delights; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvĕnit*, it happens:

		1st. Conj.	*2d. Conj.*	*3d. Conj.*	*4th. Conj*
Ind.	Pr.	Delectat,	Dĕcet,	Contingit,	Evĕnit,
	Imp.	Delectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingēbat,	Eveniēbat,
	Per.	Delectāvit,	Decuit,	Contĭgit,	Evēnit,
	Plu.	Delectavĕrat,	Decuĕrat,	Contigĕrat,	Evenĕrat,
	Fut.	Delectābit.	Decēbit.	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub.	Pr.	Delectet,	Dĕceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	Imp.	Delectāret,	Decēret,	Contingĕret,	Evenīret,
	Per.	Delectavĕrit,	Decuĕrit,	Contigĕrit,	Evenĕrit,
	Plu.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
	Fut.	Delectavĕrit.	Decuĕrit.	Contigĕrit.	Evenĕrit.
Inf.	Pr.	Delectāre.	Decēre.	Contingĕre.	Evenīre.
	Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contĭgisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur, fāvētur, currĭtur, vĕnītur;* from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind.	Pr.	Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Currĭtur,	Vĕnītur,
	Imp.	Pugnabātur,	Favebātur,	Currebātur,	Veniebātur,
	Per.	Pugnātum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	Plu.	Pugnātum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
	Fut.	Pugnabĭtur.	Favebĭtur.	Currētur.	Veniētur.
Sub.	Pr.	Pugnētur,	Faveātur,	Currātur,	Veniātur,
	Imp.	Pugnarētur,	Faverētur,	Currerētur,	Venirētur,
	Per.	Pugnātum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	Plu.	Pugnātum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	Fut.	Pugnātum fuĕrit.	Fautum fuĕrit.	Cursum fuĕrit.	Ventum fuĕrit.

Inf. Pr.	Pugnāri.	Favēri.	Curri.	Venīri.
Per.	Pugnātum esse.	Fautum esse.	Cursum esse.	Ventum esse.
Fut.	Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative; but instead of that we use the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight; &c. nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pœnĭtens*, *-dum*, *-dus*, &c. *Indūci ad pudendum et pigendum*. Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *pœnĭtet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misĕret*, it pities; *pĭget*, it irketh; *pŭdet*, it shameth; *lĭcet*, it is lawful; *lĭbet* or *lŭbet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieth; *lĭquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *misĕret*, *miseruit*, or *misertum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigĭtum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *pudĭtum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licĭtum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libĭtum est*; *tædet*, *tæduit*, *tæsum est*, oftener *pertæsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jŭvat*, *spectat*, *văcat*, *stat*, *constat*; *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attĭnet*, *pertĭnet*, *dēbet*, *dŏlet*, *nŏcet*, *lătet*, *lĭquet*, *pătet*, *plăcet*, *displĭcet*, *sĕdet*, *sŏlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accĭdit*, *incĭpit*, *desĭnit*, *suffĭcit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convĕnit*, *expĕdit*, &c.

Also, irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pŏtest*, *intĕrest*, *supĕrest*; *fit*, *prætĕrit*, *nĕquit*, and *nequītur*, *subit*, *confert*, *rĕfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat*, *fulmĭnat*, *tŏnat*, *grandĭnat*, *gĕlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; *or* I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnātur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So, *Currĭtur*, *venītur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favētur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, *or* I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus, we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audīre*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audīre*. So we can say, *multa homĭni contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contĭgi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contĭgit esse domi*, or *mihi contĭgit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavāre;* and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavĕre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,
Ferveo, ferves; *and* fervo, fervis, *to boil.*
Fulgeo, fulges; *and* fulgo, fulgis, *to shine.*
Strīdeo, strides; *and* strīdo, stridis, *to make a hissing noise, to creak.*
Tueor, tuēris, *and* tuor, tuĕris, *to defend.*
To these add *tergeo*, *terges;* and *tergo*, *tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,
Fodio, fodis, fodĕre, *and* fodio, fodis, fodīre, *to dig.*
Sallo, sallis, sallĕre, *and* sallio, sallis, sallīre, *to salt.*
Arcesso, -is, arcessĕre, *and* arcessio, arcessīre, *to send for.*
Morior, morĕris, mori, *and* morior, morīris, morīri, *to die.*
So, Orior, orĕris, *and* orior, orīris, orīri, *to rise.*
Potior, potĕris, *and* potior, potīris, potīri, *to enjoy.*

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cieo*, *cies*, *ciēre;* and *cio*, *cis*, *cīre*, to rouse; whence, *accīre* and *accītus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which, though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum;* thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo*, *edis* or *es*, *edit* or *est;* —— *editis* or *estis* ——
Sub. Imperf. *Edĕrem* or *essem*, *edĕres* or *esses*, &c.
Imp. *Ede* or *es*, *edīto* or *esto; edīte* or *este; editōte* or *estōte.*
Inf. Pres. *Edĕre* or *esse.*
Passive Ind. Pres. *Edītur* or *estur.*

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*	Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*
Appello, -as, *to call.*	Appello, -is, *to drive to, to arrive*
Compello, -as, *to address.*	Compello, -is, *to drive together.*
Collīgo, -as, *to bind.*	Colligo, -is, *to gather together*
Consterno, -as, *to astonish.*	Consterno, -is, *to strew.*
Effĕro, -as, *to enrage.*	Effĕro, -fers, *to bring out*
Fundo, -as, *to found.*	Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
Mando, -as, *to command.*	Mando, -is, *to chew.*
Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*	Obsĕro, -is, *to beset.*
Vŏlo, -as, *to fly.*	Vŏlo, vis, *to will.*

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, *to strain.*	Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*
Dīco, -as, *to dedicate.*	Dīco, -is, *to say.*
Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*	Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
Lēgo, -as, *to send on an embassy.*	Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
Vădo, -as, *to wade.*	Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite:

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*	Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*
Frīgeo, frixi, *to be cold.*	Frīgo, frixi, *to fry.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*	Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*	Lugeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Paveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*	Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*	Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine:

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*	Cerno, crētum, *to behold.*
Măneo, mansum, *to stay.*	Mando, mansum, *to chew.*
Sto, statum, *to stand.*	Sisto, statum, *to stop.*
Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*	Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*
Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*	Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*
Verro, versum, *to sweep.*	Verto, versum, *to turn.*
Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*	Vīvo, victum, *to live.*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM* without the *e;* as, *audībam, scībam,* for *audiēbam, sciēbam.*

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice; as, *dormībo, dormībor,* for *dormiam, dormiar.*

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM;* as, *edim* for *edam; duim* for *dem.*

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM,* and the future in *SSO;* as, *levassim, levasso,* for *levavĕrim, levavĕro; capsim, capso,* for *cepĕrim, cepĕro.* Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE;* as, *levassĕre,* for *levatūrus esse.*

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *mĭnor* in the plural; as, *famĭno,* for *fare;* and *progrĕdimĭnor,* for *progrĕdimĭni.*

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier,* for *fari; dicier,* for *dici.*

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse,* were sometimes used as indeclinable; thus, *credo inimīcos dictūrum esse,* for *dictūros.* Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias* for *missas.* Cic. ad. Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative;*

as, *Cœno,* to sup; *laudo,* to praise; *fraudo,* to defraud; *lapĭdo,* to throw stones; *opĕror,* to work; *frumentor,* to forage; *lignor,* to gather fuel; &c. from *cœna, laus, fraus,* &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative;* as, *Patrisso,* Grœcor, bŭbŭlo,

cornĭcor, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, an owl, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *bubo*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ĭto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamĭto*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrĭto*; *verto*, *verso*; *dormio*, *dormĭto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minĭtor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscĭto*, from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscĭtor*, from *scio*; *pavĭto*, from *paveo*, *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquĭtor*, from *loquor*. So, *quærĭto*, *fundĭto*, *agĭto*, *fluĭto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursĭto*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsĭto*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captĭto*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantĭto*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensĭto*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictĭto*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestĭto*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactĭto*; *venio*, *vento*, *ventĭto*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutĭto*), *mussĭto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person singular of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvĕnis*.

All Inceptives are neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cœnătŭrio*, I desire to sup, from *cœnātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsŭrio*, *-īvi*, *-ītum*, to desire to eat; *partŭrio*, *īvi*,— to be in travail; *nuptŭrio*, *-īvi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called Diminutive; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-āre*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albĭco*, and *candĭco*, *-are*, to be, or to grow whitish; also, *nigrĭco*, *fodĭco*, and *vellĭco*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso*, or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

II. Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with abverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejĕro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjūro*, *perrĕgo*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So, *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified, *to take*, or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition is changed: as

damno, condemno; calco, conculco; lædo, collīdo; audio, obedio, &c. Affĕro, aufĕro, collaudo, implĭco, &c. for *adfĕro, abfĕro, conlaudo, inplĭco, &c.*

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of Adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having, in Latin, gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *ămātūrus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circum locution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved; *quum amavisset, &c.*

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sĕdens, sessūrus; stans, statūrus.*

From some Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Errātus, festinātus, jurātus, laborātus, vigilātus, cessātus, sudātus, triumphātus, regnātus, decursus, desĭtus, emerĭtus, emersus, obĭtus, placĭtus, successus, occāsus,* &c. and also of the future in *dus;* as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus,* &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus; soleo, solens*, and *solĭtus; vapŭlo, vapŭlans*, and *vapulatūrus; Gaudeo, gaudens, gavīsus*, and *gavisūrus; Audeo, audens, ausus, ausūrus, audendus. Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense: as, *Ausi omnes immāne nefas, ausōque potīti.* Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locutūrus*, about to speak; *locūtus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignatūrus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignātus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, *or* having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominātus, conātus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blandĭtus, largĭtus, mentĭtus, oblĭtus, testātus, venerātus,* &c.

There are several Participles, compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as,

Insciens, *insperans*, *indicens* for *non dicens*, *inopinans* and *necopinans*, *immĕrens*; *Illæsus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustodītus*, *immolātus*, *impunītus*, *imparātus*, *incomitātus*, *incomptus*, *indemnātus*, *indotātus*, *incorruptus*, *interrĭtus*, and *imperterrĭtus*, *intestātus*, *inausus*, *inopinātus*, *inultus*, *incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus*; *invisus* for *non visus*; *indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invīsus* from *invĭdeo*; *indictus* from *indīco*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior*, *amantissĭmus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissĭmus*: or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consŏnans*, f. sc. *litĕra*, a consonant; *contĭnens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent, *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occĭdens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which, although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alātus*, *barbātus*, *cordātus*, *caudātus*, *cristātus*, *aurītus*, *pellītus*, *turrītus*; *astūtus*, *cornūtus*, *nasūtus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *aurātus*, *ærātus*, *argentātus*, *ferrātus*, *plumbātus*, *gypsātus*, *calceātus*, *clypeātus*, *galeatus*, *tunicātus*, *larvātus*, *palliātus*, *lymphātus*, *purpurātus*, *prætextātus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistrātus*, frizzled, crisped, or curled, *crinītus*, having long hair, *perītus*, skilled, &c.

There is a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much. *Sal. Jug.* 60. and 101. Liv. xxv. 13. So, *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Cicerōnem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectiōne Cicerōnis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *-di*, *-do*, *-dus*; *experiundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *petundum*, *ducundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number.

They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulātum, dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapulārem*, or *verberārer*, to be beaten. Plaut.

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance;* and those which denote *Quality, Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. *Motion or rest in a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic,	
Isthic,	*There.*
Ibi,	
Intus,	*Within.*
Fŏris,	*Without.*
Ubīque,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alīcubi,	*Some where.*
Alībi,	*Else where.*
Ubīvis,	*Any where.*
Ibīdem,	*In the same place*

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc,	*Thither.*
Isthuc,	
Intro,	*In.*
Fŏras,	*Out.*
Eò,	*To that place.*
Aliò,	*To another place.*
Alīquò,	*To some place.*
Eōdem,	*To the same place*

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorsum?	*Whitherward?*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Sursum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorsum,	*Towards the right.*
Sinistrorsum,	*Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illinc,	
Isthinc,	*Thence.*
Inde,	
Indīdem,	*From the same place.*
Aliunde,	*From elsewhere.*
Alīcunde,	*From some place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both sides.*
Sŭperne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlītus,	*From heaven.*
Fundītus,	*From the ground.*

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quà?	*Which way?*
Hàc,	*This way.*
Illac,	*That way.*
Isthac,	
Alià,	*Another way.*

2. **Adverbs of *Time* are three-fold, namely, such as signify,**

1. *Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hŏdie,	*To-day.*
Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Hĕri,	*Yesterday.*
Dūdum, Prīdem,	*Heretofore.*
Prīdie,	*The day before.*
Nūdius tertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nūper,	*Lately.*
Jamjam, Mox, Stătim,	*Presently. Immediately. By and by.*
Prōtĭnus,	*Instantly.*
Illĭco,	*Straightway.*
Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The day after.*
Pĕrendie,	*Two days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*
Quando?	*When?*
Alĭquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever, always.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Intĕrim,	*In the mean time.*
Quŏtīdie,	*Daily.*

2. *Continuance of time.*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, Jamprīdem,	*Long ago.*

3. *Vicissitude or repetition of time.*

Quŏties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Rārò,	*Seldom.*
Tŏties,	*So often.*
Alĭquŏties,	*For several times.*
Vĭcissim, Alternātim,	*By turns.*
Rursus, Itĕrum,	*Again.*
Sūbinde, Identĭdem,	*Ever and anon, now and then.*
Sĕmel,	*Once,*
Bis,	*Twice,*
Ter,	*Thrice,*
Quăter,	*Four times,* &c.

3. **Adverbs of *Order*.**

Inde,	*Then.*
Deinde,	*After that.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*
Deinceps,	*So forth.*
Dēnuo,	*Anew.*
Dēnĭque,	*Finally.*
Postrēmò,	*Lastly.*
Prīmò, -ŭm,	*First.*
Sĕcundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly,* &c.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called Absolute denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortĭter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *prŏfectò, certè, sānè, plānè, næ, ŭtĭque, ĭta, ĕtiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnīno*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *forte, forsan, fortassis, fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non, haud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all, *neutĭquam*, by no means; *mĭnĭme, nothing less*.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle, pol, edĕpol, mĕcastor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpŏte, vĭdĕlĭcet, scĭlĭcet, nīmīrum, nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *scorsum*, apart; *sĕpărātim*, separately; *sigillātim*, one by one; *vĭrītim*, man by man; *oppĭdātim*, town by town, &c.

9 JOINING TOGETHER; as, *sĭmul*, *unà*, *părĭter*, together; *gĕnĕralĭter*, generally; *ūnĭversalĭter*, universally; *plĕrumque*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quamobrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quōmŏdo*, *quì*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quò*, *quorsum*, *unde*, *quà*, *quando*, *quamdiu*, *quoties*.

Those adverbs which are called COMPARATIVE denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde*, *maxĭme*, *magnopĕre*, *maximopĕre*, *summopĕre*, *admŏdum*, *oppĭdò*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimium*, too much; *prorsus*, *penĭtus*, *omnīno*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *meliùs*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortiùs*, more bravely; and *optĭmè*, best; *pessĭmè*, worst; *fortissĭmè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Fermè*, *fĕrè*, *prŏpemŏdum*, *pĕnè*, almost; *părum*, little; *paulò*, *paulŭlum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pŏtiùs*, *sătiùs*, rather; *pŏtissĭmùm*, *præcĭpuè*, *præsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ĭta*, *sic*, *ădeò*, so; *ut*, *ŭti*, *sicut*, *sicŭti*, *vĕlut*, *velŭti*, *ceu*, *tanqvam*, *quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmŏdum*, even as; *sătìs*, enough; *ĭtĭdem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *alĭter*, *secus*, otherwise; *aliŏqui* or *aliŏquin*, else; *nĕdum*, much more, *or* much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim*, *paulātim*, *pĕdĕtentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *ægrè*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantùm*, *sōlùm*, *modò*, *tantummŏdo*, *duntaxat*, *dĕmum*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominātim*, by name; *generātim*, by kinds, generally; *speciātim*, *vicātim*, *gregātim*; *radĭcĭtus*, from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò*, *tantùm*, *gravĭter*: a few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectà*, *antiquĭtus*, *privātim*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, or *-ò*, *purè*, *-ĭter*; *certè*, *-ò*; *caute*, *-tim*; *humanè*, *-ĭter*, *-ĭtus*; *publicè*, *publicĭtus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpĭter*, *felicĭter*, *acrĭter*, *parĭter*; *facĭlè*, *repente*: one in O, *omnīno*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfĭdum ridens*, for *perfĭde*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multùm* or *valdè*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud*, *high*, &c. for *loudly*, *highly*, &c. In many cases a substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*: *optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hàc*, sc. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from ILLE, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from QUIS, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà* also of time; thus, *quando*, *quamdiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo*, *pungo*, *stringo*; *amanter*

prŏperanter, dubitanter; distinctè, emendātè; meritò, inopinātò; &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intro,* from *in; clancŭlum,* from *clam; subtus,* from *sub,* &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e,* or *ter;* as, *durè, facilè, acrĭter:* the *comparative,* in *ius;* as, *duriùs, faciliùs, acriùs:* the *superlative,* in *ĭme;* as, *durissĭmè, facillĭmè, acerrĭmè.*

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too, as, *benè, meliùs, optĭmè; malè, pejùs, pessĭmè; parùm, minùs, minĭmè, & -ùm; multum, plus, plurĭmùm; prope, propiùs, proxĭmè; ocyùs, ocyssĭme; priùs, primò, -um; nuper, nuperrĭmè; novè, & novĭter, novissĭmè; meritò, meritissĭmò,* &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpe, sæpiùs, sæpissĭmè; penitùs, penitiùs, penitissĭmè; satìs, satiùs; secus, seciùs,* &c. *Magìs, maximè;* and potius, *potissĭmùm,* want the positive.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie, magnopĕre, maximopĕre, summopĕre, tantopĕre, multimŏdis, omnimŏdis, quomŏdo, quare;* of *postĕro die, magno opĕre,* &c. *Ilĭcet, scilĭcet, videlĭcet,* of *ire, scire, vidēre, licet; illĭco,* of *in loco, quorsum,* of *quo versum; commĭnus,* hand to hand, of *cum* or *con* and *manus, emĭnus,* at a distance, of *e* and *manus; quorsum,* of *quo versum; denuo,* anew, of *de novo; quin,* why not, but, of *qui ne; cur,* of *cui rei; pedetentim,* step by step, as it were, of *pedem tendendo; perendie,* for *perempto die; nimĭrum,* of *ne,* i. e. *non,* and *mirum; antea, postea, præterea,* &c. of *ante* and *ea,* &c. *Ubĭvis, quovis, undelĭbet, quolĭbet, sicut, sicŭti, velut, velŭti, desŭper, insŭper, quamobrem,* &c. of *ubi* and *vis,* &c. *nudiustertius,* of *nunc dies tertius; identĭdem,* of *idem et idem; impræsentiārum,* i. e. *in tempŏre rerum præsentium,* &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter,* wisely, for *cum sapientiâ; hic,* for *in hoc loco; semper,* for *in omni tempŏre; semel,* for *unâ vice; bis,* for *duābus vicĭbus; Mehercŭle,* for *Hercŭles me juvet,* &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi,* where, or when; *inde,* from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactĕnus,* hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present,* or *future;* as, *jam,* already, now, by and by; *olim,* long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè,* to be abroad; *ire peregrè,* to go abroad; *redĭre peregre,* to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque,* answer to the English adjection *soever;* as, *ubiŭbi,* or *ubicunque,* wheresoever; *quoquò, quòcunque,* whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot,* or *quotcunque,* how many soever; *quantusquantus,* or *quantuscunque,* how great soever; *utut,* or *utcunque,* however or howsoever &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	*To.*	Infra,	*Beneath.*
Apud,	*At.*	Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ante,	*Before.*	Ob,	*For.*
Adversus, Adversum,	*Against, towards.*	Propter,	*For, hard by.*
		Per,	*By, through.*
Contra,	*Against.*	Præter,	*Besides, except.*
Cis, Citra,	*On this side.*	Pĕnes,	*In the power of.*
		Post,	*After.*
Circa, Circum,	*About.*	Pōne,	*Behind.*
		Sĕcus,	*By, along.*
Erga,	*Towards.*	Sĕcundum,	*According to.*
Extra,	*Without.*	Supra,	*Above.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*	Trans,	*On the farther side.*
Intra,	*Within.*	Ultra,	*Beyond.*

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely:

A, Ab, Abs,	*From* or *by.*	De,	*Of, concerning.*
		E, Ex,	*Of, out of.*
Absque,	*Without.*	Pro,	*For.*
Cum,	*With.*	Præ,	*Before.*
Clam,	*Without the knowledge of.*	Pălam,	*With the knowledge of.*
Cōram,	*Before, in the presence of.*	Sīne,	*Without.*
		Tĕnus,	*Up to, as far as.*

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sŭper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui*, and *quibus:* thus, *mecum, tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque;* and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English, they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum.* Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas.* C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendārum decembris distŭlit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem.* Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris.* Plin. But prepositions compounded

together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propălam, protĭnus, insŭper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adeo*, to go to: *præpōno*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. In, joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infĭdus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invŏcātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So, *infrænātus, immutātus, insuētus, impensus, inhumātus, intentātus*, &c. 2. Per commonly increases the signification; as, *Percārus, percĕler, percōmis, percuriōsus, perdifficĭlis, perelĕgans, pergrātus, pergrăvis, perhospitālis, perillustris, perlætus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. Præ sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus, prædīves, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalĭdus; prævăleo, præpolleo;* and also Ex; as, *Exclāmo, exaggĕro, exaugeo, excalefacio, extenuo, exhĭlăro;* but ex sometimes denotes privation; as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale: *excors, exanĭmis, -mo*, &c. 4. Sub often diminishes; as, *Subalbĭdus, subabsurdus, subamārus, subdulcis. subgrandis, subgrăvis, subnĭger;* &c. a little white or whitish, &c. De often signifies downward; as, *Decĭdo, decurro, degrăvo, despicio, delābor:* sometimes increases; as, *deămor, demĭror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens, decŏlor, deformis*, &c.

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di* or *dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	*round about.*	as	Ambio,	*to surround.*
Di,	*asunder.*		Dīvello,	*to pull asunder.*
Dis,	*asunder.*		Distrăho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,	*again.*		Rĕlĕgo,	*to read again.*
Se,	*aside*, or *apart.*		Sēpōno,	*to lay aside.*
Con,	*together.*		Concresco,	*to grow together.*

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah, hei, heu, eheu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apăge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fie, tush!

6. **EXCLAIMING**; as, *Oh, proh!* O!
7. **SURPRISE** or **FEAR**; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. **IMPRECATION**; as, *væ!* woe, pox on't!
9. **LAUGHTER**; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. **SILENCING**; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. **CALLING**; as, *eho, ehŏdum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. **DERISION**; as. *hui!* away with!
13. **ATTENTION**; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misĕrum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, "*You* and *I* and *the boy read Virgil,*" is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and*, twice employed; *I read Virgil, You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You *and* I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, at, atque, que,* and; *ĕtiam, quŏque, item,* also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, nĕque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either, or.
3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.
4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui,* but; *tamen, attămen, veruntămen, verumenimvĕro,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quŏd,* that, because.
6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igĭtur, idcirco, ităque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quandoquĭdem,* forasmuch as.
7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti;* that, to the end that.
8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin,* if; *dum, modo, dummŏdo,* provided, upon condition that; *siquĭdem,* if indeed.
9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.
10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe,* at least.
11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether; *ne, annon,* whether, not; *necne,* or not.
12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero,* now, truly; *quidem, equĭdem,* indeed.
13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde,* thereafter; *denĭque,* finally; *insŭper,* moreover; *cætĕrum,* moreover, but, however.
14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlĭcet, scilĭcet, nempe, nimirum,* &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an*, anne, &c. are either interrogative

adverbs; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions;* as, *Nescio an scribat,* I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquĭdem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquĭdem, præterquam,* &c.; some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim:* and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attămen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpŏte, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igĭtur, idcirco, ităque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi,* &c.

Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive,* and *Common.* To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne,* which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics;* because, when put after a long syllable, they make the accent *incline* to that syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discīve, trochīve, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fœtus, montanăque fraga legēbant. Ovid.

SYNTAX,

OR

CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS IN SENTENCES

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar, which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction.*

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood: or by a verbal adjective.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

All sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence is that which has but one nominative, and one finite verb; that is, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

The boy reads his lesson. Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of: "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home.* Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Substantive with another.*

RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

Cicĕro orātor, Cicero the orator; *Cicerōnis oratōris*, Of Cicero the orator. *Urbs Athēnæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.*

II. An adjective agrees with a Substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man; *Boni viri*, good men.
Fœmĭna casta, a chaste woman; *Fœmĭnæ castæ*, chaste women.
Dulce pomum, a sweet apple; *Dulcia poma*, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to adjective pronouns, and to participles;

as, *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled; Plur. *Mei libri, agri colendi*, &c.

OBS. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing. Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge. Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriōres feram*, sup. *partes*. Ter

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amīcus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferīna*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amīcus*, *caro* to *ferīna*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incŏla turba vocant*, the inhabitants. *Ovid. Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultĭmus*, *extrēmus*, *infĭmus*, *imus*, *summus*, *suprēmus*, *relĭquus*, *cætĕra*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissĭmus*, *res præstantissĭma*; &c.

3. *Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.*

III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read;	*Nos legĭmus*, We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest *or* you write;	*Vos scribĭtis*, Ye *or* you write.
Præceptor docet, The master teaches;	*Præceptōres docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos*, of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patrōnus, tu pater*. Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentīri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitātum tenuit dictatōrem;* the sacrifice, not being attended with favourable omens, detained the dictator for a long time. Liv. 7, 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facĕre quæ libet*, id *est esse regem.* Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milĭtes fugĕre*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiēbant*, or *fugĕre cœpērunt*. *Invidēre omnes mihi*, for *invidēbant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitūdo stat*, or *stant;* the multitude stands, *or* stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies

many separately, or as individuals. Hence if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trudunt*, sc. *formīcæ*. Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virgĭnes*. Liv. 1, 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. Æn. vii. 624.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valēre, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventāre*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est milĭtem fugĕre*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercĭtum cæsum fusumque cognōvi*. Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicĭtus susceptūrum*, scil. *me esse*. Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod, ut, ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valēre*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudĭnem: Jubeo vos bene sperāre*, or *ut bene sperētis; Prohibeo eum exīre*, or *ne exeat: Non dubĭto eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecĕrit*. *Scio quod filius amet*. Plaut. for *filium amāre*. *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*. Cic. *Nemo dubĭtat, ut popŭlus Romānus omnes virtūte superārit*, for *popŭlum Romānum superâsse*. Nep. *Ex anĭmi sententiâ juro, ut ego rempublĭcam non desĕram*, for *me non desertūrum esse*. Liv. xxii. 53.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

V. Any Verb may have the same Case after it as before it, *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

Ego sum discipŭlus,	I am a scholar.
Tu vocāris Joannes,	You are named John.
Illa incēdit regīna,	She walks as a queen.
Scio illum habēri sapientem,	I know that he is esteemed wise.
Scio vos esse discipŭlos,	I know that you are scholars.

So Redeo irātus, jaceo supplex; Evādent digni, they will become wor

thy; *Rempublĭcam defendi adolescens*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim vidēri timĭdus, quam parum prudens*. Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligenti*. Cic. *Natūra dedit omnĭbus esse beātis*. Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putāri mendācem; Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter. Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*. Ter. *Id est, domĭnum, non imperatōrem esse*. Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are:

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evādo, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nomĭnor, nuncŭpor;* to which add, *videor, existĭmor, creor, constituor, salūtor, designor*, &c.

These and other like verbs admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Intĕrest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*, sc. *me dici; Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents. Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*. Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amōris integrātio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love. Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppĭdum est appellātum Posidōnia*. Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beāto*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beātum, me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi* (me) *esse beātum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beātum*. One may be happy, scil. *alicui*, or *homĭni*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Rettŭlit Ajax Jovis esse pronĕpos*, for *se esse pronepōtem*. Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum patĕris sapiens emendatusque vocāri*, for *te vocāri sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refĕro versĭbus esse nocens*. Ovid. *Tutumque putāvit jam bonus esse socer*. Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former;*) as,

Amor Dei, The love of God. *Lex natūræ*, The law of nature.
Domus Cæsăris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herĭlis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Hercŭlis; Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, the love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *carĭtas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense: thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timētur;* and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus provĭdet.* So, *carĭtas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil. Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromăche*, scil. *uxor; Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum; Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum;* three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *cui corpus porrigĭtur*, whose body is extended. Virg. Æn. vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum alĭquo; Amor in*, vel *erga, alĭquem; Gaudium de re; Cura de alĭquo; Mentio illius*, vel *de illo; Quies ab armis; Fumus ex incendiis; Prædātor ex sociis*, for *sociōrum*. Sall. &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of;* as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent *to* Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. the book of him, or his book, sc. *homĭnis;* the book of her, or her book, sc *fœmĭnæ. Libri eōrum*, or *eārum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say. *meus liber*, not *mei: pater noster*, not *nostri; suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum;* but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primi-

tives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee. Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labour. Plaut.

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive, as, *Pectus tuum homĭnis simplĭcis*. Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duōrum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Mea scripta, timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccātum corrĭgi non potest*. Cic. *Id maxĭmè quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxĭmè*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon the nominative; as, *Cato interfĕcit se, Miles defendit suam vitam: Dicit se scriptūrum esse.* We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscĭmus ex operĭbus ejus*. Cic. *Persuādent Raurăcis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, for *una secum*. Cæs.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*,	A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indŏlis, or *probâ indŏle*,	A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ* is the same with *vir cum summâ prudentiâ*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formīca labōris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii, homo minĭmi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war. Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospĭtem accipies, sed multi joci*. Cic. *Ager trium jugĕrum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono anĭmo*, Be of good courage. *Mirâ sum alacritāte ad litigandum*. Cic. *Capĭte aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvolūto*, covered. *Capĭte et supercilio semper est rasis*. Id. *Mulier magno natu*. Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens, eximiâ spe, summæ virtūtis*. Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or, *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdŏche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus* secundum *or* quod ad *membra*, or *habens membra fracta*. Horat. *Os humerosque deo simĭlis*. Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, Plus eloquen-

tiæ, minus sapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; Quicquid erat patrum, reos dicĕres. Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc ætātis.* Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurĭmum, tantum, quantum, minus, minĭmum,* &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, alĭquid, quidvis, quiddam,* &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, alĭquid,* &c. elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sincĕri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostīle timērent*, not *hostīlis*: we find, however, *quicquid civīlis*. Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viārum, Opāca locōrum, Tellūris operta, loca* being understood. So, *Amāra curārum, acūta belli,* sc. *negotia*. Horat. An adjective, indeed, of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amīcus Cæsăris, Patria Ulyssis,* &c.

Opus and *Usus*.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Usus virĭbus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectiōnis opus est.* Quinct. *Opĕræ usus est.* Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est.* We need a general. Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturāto*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius. Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte, sit, quod opus sit sciri.* Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimŭles.* Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitāre equis.* Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit,* &c.

II. THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avĭdus gloriæ, Desirous of glory. *Ignārus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiōrum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax,*

edax, ferax, tenax, pertĭnax, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appĕtens, cupiens, insŏlens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuētus, insolĭtus,* &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire, as, *avārus, cupĭdus, studiōsus,* &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callĭdus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, perītus, prudens,* &c. *Ignārus, incertus, inscius, imprūdens, imperītus, immĕmor, rudis: ambiguus, dubius, suspensus,* &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiōsus, solicĭtus, provĭdus, dilĭgens; incuriōsus, secūrus, neglĭgens,* &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolōsus, pavĭdus, timĭdus, trepĭdus; impavĭdus, interrĭtus, intrepĭdus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innŏcens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *æger anĭmi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, fulsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, intĕger, lætus, præstans anĭmi; modĭcus voti; intĕger vitæ; seri studiōrum.* Hor. But we say, *æger pedĭbus, ardens in cupiditatĭbus, præstans doctrinâ, modĭcus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re,* or *propter rem,* &c. and never *æger pedum,* &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algōris,* able to bear cold; and *patiens algōrem,* actually bearing cold. So, *amans virtūtis,* and *amans virtūtem; doctus grammatĭcæ,* skilled in grammar; *doctus grammatĭcam,* one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avĭdus in pecuniis.* Cic. *Avidior ad rem.* Ter. *Jure consultus & perītus,* or *juris.* Cic. *Rudis literārum, in jure civīli.* Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala.* Ovid. *Doctus Latīnè, Latīnis litĕris.* Cic. *Assuētus labōre, in omnia.* Liv. *Mensæ herīli.* Virg. *Insuētus morĭbus Romānis,* in the dat. Liv. *Labōris, ad onĕra portanda.* Cæs. *Desuētus bello et triumphis,* in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, solicĭtus, secūrus, de re aliquâ; dilĭgens, in, ad, de.* Cic. *Neglĭgens in alĭquem, in* or *de re: Reus de vi, criminĭbus.* Cic. *Certior factus de re,* rather than *rei.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re,* or *in negotio,* or some such word understood; as, *Cupĭdus laudis,* i. e. *causâ* or *in re laudis,* desirous of praise, that is, on account of, *or* in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiōsus pecuniæ,* fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ,* having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Alĭquis philosophōrum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.
Doctissĭmus Romanōrum,	The most learned of the Romans.

Quis nostrum?	Which of us?
Una musārum,	One of the muses.
Octāvus sapientûm,	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them in English, *of* or *among;* as, *alius*, *nullus*, *solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres; primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerīque*, *medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus flumĭnum maxĭmus*. Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphĭnus animalium velocissĭmum*. Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numĕro*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sorōrum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numĕro sorōrum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in;* as, *Unus de fratrĭbus;* or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter;* as, *Pulcherrĭmus ante omnes*, for *omnium*. Virg. *Primus inter omnes*. Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissĭmus nostræ civitātis*. Cic. *Maxĭmus stirpis*. Liv. *Ultĭmos orbis* Britannos. Horat. Od. i. 35, 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two; Maxĭmus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether *or* which of you *two; Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three;* but these are sometimes taken promiscuously, the one for the other.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utĭlis bello,	Profitable for war.
Perniciōsus reipublĭcæ,	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Simĭlis patri,	Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus*, *bonus*, *commŏdus*, *felix*, *fructuōsus*, *prosper*, *salūber*.—*Calamitōsus*, *damnōsus*, *dirus*, *exitiōsus*, *funestus*, *incommŏdus*, *malus*, *noxius*, *perniciōsus*, *pestĭfer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus*, *dulcis*, *gratus*, *gratiōsus*, *jucundus*, *lætus*, *suavis*.—*Acerbus*, *amārus*, *insuāvis*, *injucundus*, *ingrātus*, *molestus*, *tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amīcus, benevŏlus, blandus, carus, dedĭtus, fidus, fidēlis, lenis, mitis, propitius.—Adversus, æmŭlus, asper, crudēlis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infĭdus, immītis, inimīcus, inīquus, invīsus, invĭdus, irātus, odiōsus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus.——Ambiguus, dubius, ignōtus, incertus, obscūrus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitĭmus, propior, proxĭmus, propinquus, socius, vicīnus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, apposĭtus, accommodātus, habĭlis, idoneus, opportūnus.——Ineptus, inhabĭlis, importūnus, inconveniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facĭlis, levis, obvius, pervius.——Difficĭlis, arduus, gravis, laboriōsus, periculōsus, invius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclīvis, propensus, promptus, parātus.*

8. Of equality, or inequality; as, *Æquālis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.——Inequālis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Simĭlis, æmŭlus, gemĭnus.——Dissimĭlis, absŏnus, aliēnus, diversus, discŏlor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognātus, concŏlor, concors, confīnis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consŏnus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, contĭnens,* contiguous; as, *Mari aër contĭnens est.* Cic.

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credŭlus, absurdus, decōrus, deformis, præsto,* indecl. at hand, *secundus,* &c.—particularly

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus or *amabĭlis omnĭbus,* To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terrĭbilis malis, Optabĭlis omnĭbus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia.* Cic. *Semel omnĭbus calcanda est via lethi.* Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matrĭbus detestāta,* hated by. Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. *a;* as, *Deus est venerandus et colendus a nobis.* Cic. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis deflēta,* rather than *multis deflēta.* Cic. *A te invitātus, rogātus, prodĭtus,* &c. hardly ever *tibi.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Simĭlis patri,* Like his father, *to* being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux,* or *filius mihi,* He is father, leader, *or* son to me; so, *Præsidium reis, decus amīcis,* &c. Hor. *Exitium pecŏri.* Virg. *Virtutĭbus hostis.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affīnis, simĭlis, commūnis, par, proprius, finitĭmus, fidus, contermĭnus, superstes, conscius, æquālis, contrarius,* and *adversus;* as, *Simĭlis tibi,* or

tui; Superstes patri, or *patris; Conscius facinŏri*, or *facinŏris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *Simĭles, dissimĭles, pares, dispăres, æquāles, commūnes, inter se: Par & commūnis cum alĭquo. Cīvĭtas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia.* Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utĭlis, inutĭlis, aptus, ineptus, accommodātus, idoneus, habĭlis, inhabĭlis, opportūnus, conveniens, &c. *alĭcui rei*, or *ad alĭquid.* Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *attentus quæsĭtis.* Hor. *Attentus ad rem.* Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabĭlis, arrŏgans, asper, cārus, diffĭcĭlis, fidēlis, invīsus, irātus, offensus, suspectus*, ALICUI. II. Some with the preposition IN and the accusative; as, *Acerbus, animātus, benefĭcus, gratiōsus, injuriōsus, liberālis, mendax, misericors, officiōsus, pius, impius, prolixus, sevērus, sordĭdus, torvus, vehĕmens*, IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS, going before; as, *Contŭmax, criminōsus, durus, exitiabĭlis, gravis, hospitālis, implacabĭlis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabĭlis & intolerabĭlis*) *inīquus, sævus*, ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM. *Benevŏlus, benignus, molestus*, ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis;* IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM and ALICUI. *Pervĭcax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudēlis*, IN ALIQUEM, seldom ALICUI. *Amīcus, æmŭlus, infensus, infestus*, ALICUI, seldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We say *aliēnus alĭcui* or *alicujus;* but oftener *ab alĭquo*, and sometimes *alĭquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis; Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratuum.* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis.* Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclīvis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram.*

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proxĭmus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad.* Sall. *Proxĭmus finem.* Liv.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invītum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.* Hor. *Jupĭter omnĭbus idem.* Virg. *Eădem illis censēmus.* Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem, qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum;* as, *Peripatetĭci, quondam iidem erant qui Academĭci.* Cic *Est anĭmus erga te, idem ac fuit.* Ter. *Diānam et Lunam eandem esse putant.* Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eōdem loco mecum.* Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum;* as, *Luna eădem est cum Diāna.* We likewise say, *alius, ac, atque*, or *et;* and sometimes *simĭlis & par.*

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *prædĭtus*, *captus*, and *fretus;* also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *edĭtus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honōre, Worthy of honor.
Contentus parvo, Content with little.
Prædĭtus virtūte, Endued with virtue.
Captus ocŭlis, Blind.
Fretus virĭbus, Trusting to his strength.
Ortus regĭbus, Descended of kings.

So *generātus*, *creātus*, *cretus*, *prognātus*, *oriundus*, *procreātus regĭbus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum; Fretus virĭbus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubĭna*. Sallust. *Edĭtus de nymphâ*. Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avōrum*. Virg. So *Macte esto* or *macti estōte virtūtis* or *virtūte*, Increase in virtue, *or* Go on and prosper; *Jubērem macte virtūte esse*, sc. *te*. Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger, *Inops ratiōnis* or *ratiōne*, Void of reason.

So *Non inŏpes tempŏris, sed prodĭgi sumus*. Sen. *Lentŭlus non verbis inops*. Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*. Cic. *Maxĭma quæque domus servis est plena superbis*. Juv. *Res est solicĭti plena timōris amor*. Ovid. *Amor et melle et felle est fœcundissĭmus*. Plaut. *Fœcunda virōrum paupertas fugĭtur*. Lucan. *Omnium consiliōrum ejus partĭceps*. Curt. *Homo ratiōne partĭceps*. Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Id. *Vacuas cædis habēte manus*. Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impŏtens*, *irrĭtus*, *liberālis*, *munifĭcus*, *prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only; *Beātus*, *differtus*, *frugĭfer*, *mutĭlus*, *tentus*, *distentus*, *tumĭdus*, *turgĭdus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos*, *consors*, *egēnus*, *exhæres*, *expers*, *fertĭlis*, *indĭgus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prodĭgus*, *sterĭlis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans*, *cassus*, *extorris*, *fœtus*, *frequens*, *gravis*, *gravĭdus*, *jejūnus*, *liber*, *locuples*, *nudus*, *onerātus*, *onustus*, *orbus*, *pollens*, *solūtus*, *truncus*, *viduus*, and *captus*.

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiōsus*, *dives*, *fœcundus ferax*, *immūnis*, *inānis*, *inops*, *largus*, *modĭcus*, *immodĭcus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *refertus*, *satur*, *vacuus*, *uber*.

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiōsus*, *firmus*, *parātus*, *imparātus*, *inops*, *instructus*, *a re alĭquâ;* for *quod ad rem alĭquam attĭnet*, in *or* with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatĭbus concio*. Liv. So *pauper*, *tenuis*, *fœcundus*, *modĭcus*, *parcus*, *in re alĭquâ*. *Immūnis*, *inānis*, *liber*, *nudus*, *solūtus*, *vacuus*, *a re alĭquâ*. *Potens ad rem*, *& in re*.

III. THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicĕre, Non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Milĭtum est suo duci parēre.* It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudāre se vani, vituperāre stulti est.* Sen. *Homĭnis est errāre; Arrogantis est negligĕre quid de se quisque sentiat.* Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi.* Virg. *Hæc sunt homĭnis.* Ter. *Paupĕris est numerāre pecus.* Ovid. *Temerĭtas est florentis ætātis, prudentia senectūtis.* Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.* Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humānum*, the same with *est regis, est homĭnis. Et facĕre et pati fortia, Romānum est.* Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus*, &c. which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est princĭpum; Tuum est hoc munus.* Cic. *Neutĭquam officium libĕri esse homĭnis puto.* Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* (liber) *fratris.* In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriōsa, neque patrandi belli*, scil. *causâ* or *facta.* Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertātis est*, for *ad æquandam libertātem pertĭnet.* Liv.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui munĕris; So mos est* or *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more.* Cic.

XVI. *Miserĕor, miseresco*, and *satăgo*, govern the genitive; as,

Miserēre civium tuōrum,	Pity your countrymen.
Satăgit rerum suārum,	He has his hands full at home, *or* has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor;* as, *Ne angas te anĭmi.* Plaut. *Labōrum decipĭtur.* Hor. *Discrucior anĭmi.* Ter. *Pendet mihi anĭmus, pendeo anĭmi* vel *anĭmo;* but we always say, *Pendēmus anĭmis*, not *animōrum*, are in suspense. Cic. *Justitiæ prius mirer.* Virg. *In like manner, Abstineo, desĭno, desisto, quiesco, regno:* likewise, *adipiscor, condĭco, credo, frustror, furo*, laudo, libĕro, levo, partĭcipo, prohibeo

as, *Abstinēto irārum; Desĭne querelārum; Regnāvit populōrum*. Hor. *Desistĕre pugnæ*. Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*. Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed: thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, anĭmo. Hoc anĭmum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, alĭquem*, or *alĭquid. Lætor alĭquâ re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quòd, ut, ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Desĭno alĭquid, & ab alĭquo*, to give over; *Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illâ mente; Quiesco a labōre; Regnāre in equitĭbus, oppĭdis*, sc. *in*. Cic. *Per urbes*. Virg. *Adipisci id; Frustrāri in re; Furĕre de alĭquo*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Misereor fratris*, scil. *causâ; Angor anĭmi*, scil. *dolōre* or *anxietāte*.

2. *Verbs governing the Dative.*

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English; as,

Finis vēnit imperio,	An end has come to the empire. Liv.
Anĭmus redit hostĭbus,	Courage returns to the enemy. Id.
Tĭbĭ seris, tibi metis,	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*. Cic. *Multa malè eveniunt bonis*. Id. *Sol lucet etiam scelerātis*. Sen. *Hæret latĕri lethālis arundo*. Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for;* nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum* and its compounds govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

Præfuit exercitui,	He commanded the army.
Adfuit precĭbus,	He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo, to have*, governs the dative of a person; as,

Est mihi liber,	A book is to me, *that is*, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri,	Books are to me, *i. e.* I have books.
Dico libros esse mihi,	I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum; habeo libros*. In like manner DEEST instead of *careo;* as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi; Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedĭco, benevŏlo, malefacio, maledĭco, tibi, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions,

AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, SUB, and SUPER govern the dative; as,

1. *Accēdo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnăto, adequĭto, adhæreo, adsto, adstipŭlor, advŏlvor, affulgeo, allābor, allabōro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspīro, assentior, assideo, assisto assuesco, assurgo.*
2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.*
3. *Collūdo, concĭno, consŏno, convivo.*
4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubĭto, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insideor, insto, insisto, insūdo, insulto, invigĭlo, illacrўmo, illūdo, immineo, immorior, immŏror, impendeo.*
5. *Intervenio, intermĭco, intercēdo, intercĭdo, interjaceo.*
6. *Obrēpo, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrĕpo, obmurmŭro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.*
7. *Postfĕro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpŭto, postscrĭbo:* with an accusative.
8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.*
9. *Succēdo, succumbo, sufficio, suffrăgor, subcresco, suboleo, subjacio, subrēpo.*
10. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commŏdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consŭlo, for *prospicio.* Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommŏdo, displiceo, insidior.*

2. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratŭlor, gratifĭcor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adūlor, plaudo, blandior, lenocĭnor, palpor, assentor, subparasĭtor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminicŭlor, subvenio, succurro, patrocĭnor, medeor, medĭcor, opitŭlor.* Likewise, *Derŏgo, detrăho, invideo, æmŭlor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impĕro, præcipio, mando; modĕror, for *modum adhibeo.* Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsĕquor, obtempĕro, morem gĕro, morigĕror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famŭlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renītor, resisto, refrăgor, adversor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, commĭnor, intermĭnor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as, *Fido, confīdo, crēdo, diffīdo.*

To these add *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplĭco, cedo, despēro, opĕror, præstōlor, prævarĭcor; recipio,* to promise; *renuncio; respondeo,* to answer or satisfy; *tempĕro, studeo; vaco,* to apply; *convicior.*

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo,* and *offendo,* govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, *Levo, erĭgo, alo, nutrio, amo, dilĭgo, vexo, crucio, aversor, &c. alĭquem,* not *alĭcui.*

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

Anteīre, antecedĕre, antecellĕre, præcedĕre, præcurrĕre, præīre, &c. alĭcui, *or* alĭquem, *to go before, to excel.*
Acquiescĕre, rei, re, *or* in re. Adequitāre portæ Syracūsas.
Adjacēre mari, *or* mare, *to lie near.*
Adnāre navĭbus, naves, ad naves, *to swim to.*
Adversāri ei, *rarely* eum, *to oppose.*
Advolvi genĭbus, genua, ad genua, *to fall at one's knees.*
Advolāre ei, ad eum, rostra, *to fly up to.*
Adflāre rei *or* homĭni; rem *or* homĭnem; alĭquid alĭcui, *to breathe upon.*
Adulāri ei, *or* eum, *to flatter.* Allābi oris; aures ejus. *Virg.* ad exta. *Liv.*
Apparēre consŭli, *to attend;* ad solium Jovis. Res appāret mihi, *appears.*
Appropinquāre Britanniæ, portam, ad portam, *to approach.*
Congruĕre alícui, cum re alĭquâ, inter se, *to agree.*
Domĭnāri cunctis oris. *Virg.* in cætĕra animalia, *to rule over.* Ovid.
Fidĕre, confidĕre alĭcui rei, alĭquâ re, in re, *to trust to* or *in.*
Ignoscĕre mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me,* or *my fault.*
Impendĕre alĭcui, alĭquem, in alĭquem, *to hang over.*
Incessit cura, cupīdo, timor ei, eum, *or* in eum, *seized.*
Incumbĕre toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon;* labōri, ad laudem, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitatiōnem, &c. *to apply to.*
Indulgēre alĭcui, id ei; nimio vestītu, *to indulge in.* Ter.
Inhiāre auro, bona ejus, *to gape after.* Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
Innīti rei, re, in re; in alĭquem, *to depend on.*
Insultāre rei & homĭni, *or* homĭnem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miseriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over.*
Latet res mihi, *or* me, *is unknown to me.* Medēri ei; cupiditātes, *to cure.*
Ministrāre ei, *to serve;* arma ei, *to furnish.*
Moderāri anĭmo, gentĭbus; navim, omnia, *to rule.*
Nocēre ei, *rarely* eum, *to hurt.* Plaut.
Nubĕre alĭcui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, *to marry.* Cic.
Obrepĕre ei & eum, *to creep upon;* in anĭmos; ad honōres.
Obstrepĕre aurĭbus & aures. Obtrectāre ei, laudĭbus ejus, *to detract from.*
Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, *shades.* Palpāri alicui, & alĭquem.
Pacisci alĭcui, cum alíquo; vitam ab eo. *Sall.* vitam pro laude. *Virg.*
Præstolāri alĭcui, & alĭquem, *to wait upon.*
Procumbĕre terræ; genĭbus ejus. *Ovid,* ad genua. *Liv.* ad pedes, *to fall.*

To these may be added verbs, which chiefly among the poets govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo, alĭcui,* for *cum alĭquo;* 2. *Distāre, dissentīre, discrepāre, dissidēre, differre rei alĭcui,* for *a re alĭquâ.* We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant,* &c. *inter se;* and *contendĕre, pugnāre contra,* & *adversus alĭquem.*

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formīdo, horreo tibi, de te,* & *pro te,* I am afraid for you, *or* for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te,* or *a te,* I fear or dread you.

is an enemy: So, *Consŭlo, prospicio, caveo tibi*, I consult, *or* provide for your safety; but *consŭlo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this: *Studēre alĭquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmŭlor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Ausculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem* I desire; *Fœnĕro, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc fœnerāret*, should not return with interest, or bring usury. *Ter.* And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5 Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad;* as,

Eo, vado, curro, propĕro, festīno, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclīno, &c. *ad locum, rem*, or *homĭnem*. Sometimes, however, in the poets, they are construed with the dative: as, *It clamor cœlo*, for *ad cœlum*. Virg.

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative.*

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverēre parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own;

as, *Ire iter* or *viam; Pugnāre pugnam* or *prœlium; Currĕre cursum; Canĕre cantilēnam; Vivĕre vitam; Ludĕre ludum; Sequi sectam; Somniāre somnium*, &c. Or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense: as, *Corȳdon ardēbat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amābat.* Virg. *Currĭmus æquor*, scil. *per. Id.* So, *Comptos arsit adultĕri crines.* Hor. *Saltāre Cyclōpa; Olet hircum; Sulcos et vinēta crepat mera.* Hor. *Vox homĭnem sonat; Sudāre mella.* Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athōne perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigâsset*, sc. *per.* Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamāre alĭquem nomĭne.* Virg. *Callēre jura; Mœrēre mortem; Horret irātum mare.* Hor.

Sometimes, instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinĕre; dolēre dolōre, vicem ejus; gaudēre gaudio; mori* or *obire morte; vivĕre vitâ; ardet virgĭne.* Horat. *Ludĕre aleam, or -â; manāre, pluĕre, rorāre, stillāre, sudāre, alĭquid* or *alĭquo. Erubescĕre jura.* Virg. *origĭne.* Tacit. *equo vehi.* Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrēre famam, *to dread infamy.* Liv. a litĭbus: ab uxōre ducendâ, *to be averse from.* Id. a meis morĭbus abhorret, *is inconsistent with.* Cic.

Abolēre monumenta viri, *to abolish.* Virg. illis cladis Caudīnæ nondum memoria abolevĕrat, *was not effaced from, they had not forgotten.* Liv.

Adolēre penātes, *to burn, to sacrifice to.* Virg. Ætas adolēvit; adolēvit ad ætātem. *Plaut.*

Declināre ictum, *to avoid;* loco; agmen alĭquo, *to remove.*

Degenerāre anĭmos, *to weaken;* patri, *to degenerate from;* a virtūte majōrum.

Durāre adolescentes labōre, *to harden;* Res durat ad breve tempus, *endures;* In ædĭbus durāre nequeo, *stay* or *remain.* Plaut.

Inclināre culpam in alĭquem, *to lay;* Hos ut sequar, inclinat

anĭmus, *inclines;* acies inclĭnat, *or* inclinātur, *gives away.*
Laborāre arma, *to forge;* morbo, a dolōre, e renĭbus, *to be ill;* de re alĭquâ, *to be concerned.*
Morāri iter, *to stop;* in urbe, *to stay;* Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.*
Properāre pecuniam hæredi. *Hor.* in orbem; ad unam sedem. *Ov.*
Quadrāre acervum, *to square.* Hor. alĭquid ad normam; alĭcui, in alĭquem, ad multa, *to fit.*
Suppeditāre copiam dicendi, *to furnish;* Sumptus illi, *or* illi sumptĭbus. *Ter.* suppedĭtat æratio, *is afforded;* Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditārunt, *were sufficient.* Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, alĭquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca,* &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrŭmat, Id succenset.* Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood; *Tum prora avertit,* sc. *se.* Virg. *Flumĭna præcipĭtant,* sc. *se.* Id. *Quòcumque intendĕrat,* sc. *se,* turned or directed himself. Sall. *Obiit,* sc. *mortem.* Ter. *Cum faciam vitŭlâ,* sc. *sacra.* Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridēre decōrum;* for *dulcem sermōnem, decōrum risum.* Hor.

XIX. *Recordor, memĭni, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem,*	I remember the lesson.
Obliviscor injuriæ or *injuriam,*	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memĭni vidēre virgĭnem.* Ter. *Oblītus est, quid paulo ante posuisset.* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memĭni,* when it signifies to *make mention,* is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de;* as, *Memĭni alicujus,* or *de alĭquo.* So, *recordor,* when it signifies *to recollect;* as, *Velim scire ecquid, de te recordēre.* Cic.

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,	He abounds in riches.
Caret omni culpâ,	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are *Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, suppedĭto, scateo,* &c.; of want, *Careo, egeo, indĭgeo, vaco, deficior, destituor,* &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget æris,* He needs money. Hor. *Non tam artis indĭgent, quam labōris.* Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpâ,* He is free from fault. Liv.

XXI. *Utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* govern the ablative; as,

Utĭtur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutĭtur* libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victĭto, consto; labōro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill; *pascor, epŭlor, nitor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as *Potīri urbis.* Sall. And we always say, *Potīri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus; imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epŭlor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as *Potīri urbem*. Cic. *Officia fungi*. Ter. *Munĕra fungi*. Tac. *Pascuntur silvas*. Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abūtor*, and *fruor;* as, *Uti consilium*. Plaut. *Opĕram abutĭtur*. Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as *Depascĭtur artus*. Virg.

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

XXII. *Sum* used instead of *affĕro (to bring)* governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptāti,	It is, *or* brings, a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others; as,

Ducĭtur honōri tibi, It is reckoned an honor to you. *Id vertĭtur, mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi munĕri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venīre, occurrĕre auxilio alĭcui*. Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as *Est exitium pecŏri*, for *exitio; Dare alĭquid alĭcui donum*, or *dono; Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimĭni ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alĭcui, hominĭbus*, or some such word. So, *ponĕre, opponĕre pignŏri*, sc. *alĭcui*, to pledge. *Canĕre receptui*, sc. *suis milităbus*, to sound a retreat; *Habĕre curæ quæstui, odio, voluptāti, religiōni, studio, ludibrio, despicatui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander;* or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.*

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of laziness.
Illum homicidii absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter.
Monet me officii,	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accūso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquīro, arguo, defĕro, insimŭlo, postŭlo, allĭgo, astringo;* of condemn-

ing, *Damno, condemno, infāmo, noto ;* of acquitting, *Absolvo, libĕro, purgo ;* of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de ;* as, *Monēre alĭquem officii*, or *de officio ; Accusāre alĭquem furti*, or *de furto. De vi condemnāti sunt.* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnāre, postulāre, absolvĕre eum crimĭnis*, or *capĭtis ;* and *crimĭne*, or *capĭte ;* also *Absolvo me peccāto.* Liv. And we always say, *Plectĕre, punīre alĭquem capĭte*, and not *capĭtis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, tradūco, vitupĕro, calumnior, crimĭnor, excūso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *alĭquem avaritiæ.* We sometimes also find *accūso, incūso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusāre inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiæ.* Cic. *Culpam arguo.* Liv. We say, *Agĕre cum alĭquo furti*, rather than *alĭquem*, to accuse one of theft. Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accūso, te illud.* We seldom find, however, *Errōrem te moneo.* but *errōris* or *de errōre ;* except in old writers, as Plautus.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihĭli ;* as,

Æstĭmo te magni,	I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstĭmo, existĭmo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo.* They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majōris, minōris, minĭmi, plurĭmi, maxĭmi, nauci, pili, assis, nihĭli, teruncii, hujus.*

Obs. 1. *Æstĭmo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstĭmo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio :* and also *nihĭlo.* We likewise say, *Pro nihĭlo habeo, puto, duco.*

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consŭlo ;* as, *Hoc consŭlo boni, æqui bonīque facio*, I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguĕre alĭquem furti*, scil. *de crimĭne furti ; Æstĭmo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii ; Consŭlo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*, or *munus boni viri*, or *anĭmi ; Monēre alĭquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii.*

3. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.*

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homēro,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuique tribuĭto,	Give every one his own.
Narras fabŭlam surdo,	You tell a story to a deaf man.
Eripuit me morti,	He rescued me from death.

16 *

OR,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, *(when, together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted)*; as,

Legam lectiōnem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis arātra boves.* Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala homĭnĭbus*, advises men to do bad things. Plaut. *Imperāre pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquĭbus*, to order them to furnish. Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparāre unam rem cum aliâ, & ad aliam*, or *comparāre res inter se: Eripuit me morti, morte, a* or *ex morte: Mittĕre epistŏlam alĭcui*, or *ad alĭquem: Intendĕre telum alĭcui*, or *in alĭquem: Incidĕre æri, in æs*, or *in ære;* and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdăre mœnia oppĭdo, or *oppĭdum mœnĭbus*, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludĕre commeātum alĭcui, or *alĭquem commeātu*, to intercept one's provisions.

Donāre, prohibĕre rem alĭcui, or *alĭquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactāre hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

Impertīre salūtem alĭcui, or *alĭquem salūte*, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romānis, or *Romānos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induĕre, exuĕre vestem sibi, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levāre dolōrem alĭcui; dolōrem alicujus; alĭquem dolōre, to ease one's distress.

Minări alĭquid alĭcui, or sometimes *alĭcui alĭquo*. Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsări gladio*. Sall.

Gratŭlor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulātur*. Liv.

Restituĕre alĭcui sanitātem, or *alĭquem sanitāti*, to restore to health.

Aspergĕre labem alĭcui, or *alĭquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguĭne*. *Litāre Deum sacris, & sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

Excusāre se alĭcui, & apud alĭquem, de re; valetudĭnem ei.

Exprobrāre vitium ei, or *in eo*, to upbraid.

Occupāre pecuniam alĭcui, & apud alĭquem, i. e. *pecuniam fœnŏri locāre*, to place at interest. Cic.

Opponĕre se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciāre id ei, & ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad;* as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipĭto, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incĭto, suscĭto, also, *hortor*, and *invīto, voco, provŏco, anĭmo, stimŭlo, conformo, lacesso;* thus, *Ad laudem milĭtes hortātur; Ad prætōrem homĭnem traxit.* Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*. Virg. *Invitāre alĭquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*. Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubĕre alĭcui*, scil. *se; Cedĕre alĭcui*, scil. *locum; Detrahĕre alĭcui*, scil. *laudem; Ignoscĕre alĭcui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, *for* to me.

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person and the other of a thing; as,

Poscĭmus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me grammatĭcam, He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are ***Rogo**, **oro**, **exōro**, **obsecro**, **precor**, **posco**, **reposco**, **flagĭto***, &c. Of teaching, ***Doceo**, **edoceo**, **dedoceo**, **erudio**.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, ***Celāvit me hanc rem***, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, ***celāvit hanc rem mihi***, or ***celāvit me de hac re***.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogāre rem ab alĭquo; Docēre alĭquem de re*, to inform, but we do not say, *docēre alĭquem de grammatĭca*, but *grammatĭcam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exĭgo a* or *abs te, Percontor, scitor, sciscĭtor, ex* or *a te* or *te* without the preposition; *Interrŏgo, consulto te de re; Ut facias te obsecro; Exōrat pacem divûm*, for *divos*. Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo alĭquem artĭbus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artĭbus, in* or *ab artĭbus*. Also, *instruo ad rem*, or *in re, ignorantiam alicujus. Erudīre alĭquem artes, de* or *in re, ad rem. Formāre ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus.*

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.*

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onĕrat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onĕro, cumŭlo, premo, opprĭmo, obruo*. Of unloading, *levo, exonĕro*, &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, allĭgo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo*, &c. Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libĕro, laxo, expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*. Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corōno*, & *calceo*. Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo*, &c.

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvĕre alĭquem ex catēnis.* Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, mans the ships. Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritātis implet*. Liv. And also vary their construction; as *Iduit, exuit, se vestĭbus*, or *vestes sibi*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accūsor furti,	I am accused of theft.
Virgilius comparātur Homēro,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Doceor grammatĭcam,	I am taught grammar.
Navis onerātur auro,	The ship is loaded with gold.

So, *Scio homĭnes accusātum iri furti;—Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a* or *ex morte;——puĕros doctum iri grammatĭcam;——rem celātum iri mihi,* or *me; me celātum iri de rē,* &c

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habētur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a;* as,

Tu laudāris a me, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te. Virtus diligĭtur a nobis; Nos diligĭmus virtūtem. Gaudeo meum factum probāri a te,* or *te probāre meum factum:* And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collūcet.* Cic. *Phalăris non a paucis interiit.* Id. So, *Cadĕre ab hoste; Cessāre a prœliis; Mori ab ense; Pati furāri alĭquid ab alĭquo,* &c. Also, *Venīre ab hostĭbus,* to be sold; *Vapulāre ab alĭquo, Exulāre ab urbe.* Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumĕre, petĕre, tollĕre, pellĕre, expectāre, emĕre,* &c. *ab alĭquo.*

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Desĕror conjŭge.* Ovid. *Desertus suis,* sc. *a.* Tacit. *Tabŭlâ distinguĭtur undâ qui navĭgat,* sc. *ab undâ,* is kept from the water by a plank. Juvenal.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A; as, *Per me defensa est respublĭca,* or *a me; Per me restitūtus; Per me* or *a me factum est.* Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agĭtur per creditōres, a rege,* sc. *a rege* vel *a legāto ejus.* Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernĭtur ulli, for *ab ullo.* Virg. *Vix audior ulli.* Ovid. *Scribĕris Vario,* for *a Vario.* Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur,* for *a viris.* Cic. Videor, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Vidĕris mihi,* You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Vidĕris a me,* You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuārum audīta mihi, neque visa sorōrum,* for *a me.* Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor,* also *exuor,* and *discingor,* are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induĭtur vestem* or *veste.*

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnāta est.* Cic. *Bellum militabĭtur.* Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, currĭtur, vivĭtur, venĭtur,* &c. *a vobis, ab illis,* &c. We are

standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, or *ab alĭquo:* I or any person may live well. *Provĭsum est nobis optĭmè a Deo; Reclamātum est ab omnĭbus*, all cried out against it. Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majorĭbus natu assurgātur, ut supplĭcum misereātur*. Cic. Except the accusative: for in these phrases, *Itur Athēnas, pugnātum est biduum, dormītur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormītur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amāræ; Oceănus raris ab orbe nostro navĭbus adĭtur*. Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expĕdit reipublĭcæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favētur mihi, I am favoured, and not *Ego faveor*. So, *Nocētur mihi, imperātur mihi*, &c. We find, however, *Hæc ego procurāre impĕror; Ego cur invideor*, for *imperātur, invidētur mihi*. Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cœpit, incĭpit, desĭnit, debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest nocēri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtūte*. Cic. *Per virtūtem potest iri ad astra. Aliōrum laudi et gloriæ invidēri solet*. The praise and glory of others use to be envied. Id. *Neque a fortissĭmis infirmissĭmo genĕri resisti posse*. Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re*, or *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria;* This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res*, or *de hac re*. *Doleo* or *dolet mihi, id factum esse*.

Obs. 3 The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines*, &c. And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccāre*, the same with *peccātum; Omnĭbus bonis expĕdit rempublĭcam esse salvam*, i. e. *Salus reipublĭcæ expĕdit omnĭbus bonis*. Cic. *Accĭdit, evĕnit, contĭgit, ut ibi essēmus*. These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet*. Cic. *Eădem licent*. Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*. Ter. *Stat casus renovāre omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved. Virg.

EXC. I. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* govern the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Intĕrest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua,* &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus intĕrest,* and *quorum intĕrest ;* or *cuja intĕrest,* from *cujus, -a, -um.*

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *intĕrest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil,* &c. also with common nouns ; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris ;* as, *Hoc parvi refert ; Illud mea magni intĕrest.* Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium.* Lucret. *Incessus in gravĭdâ refert.* Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurĭmum, infinĭtum, parum, maxĭmè, vehementer, minĭmè,* &c. as, *Faciam, quod maxĭmè reipublĭcæ interesse judicābo.* Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accus. with the prep. *ad ;* as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant ?* Of what importance is it ? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honōrem nostrum intĕrest.* Cic.; rarely the dative ; as, *Dic quid refĕrat intra natūræ fines viventi,* &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely ; as, *Magnopĕre intĕrest opprĭmi Dolabellam,* it is of great importance. Cic. *Permultum intĕrest, qualis primus adĭtus sit.* Id. *Adeōne est fundāta levĭter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis refĕrat.* Liv. *Plurĭmum enim interĕrit, quibus artĭbus; aut quibus hunc tu morĭbus instituas.* Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *intĕrest,* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua,* &c. likewise agree : as, *Intĕrest Cicerōnis,* i. e. *est inter negotia Cicerōnis* · *Refert patris,* i. e. *refert se hæc res ad negotia patris :* So, *intĕrest mea, est inter negotia mea.*

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET, PŒNITET, PUDET, TÆDET* and *PIGET,* govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

Misĕret me tui,	I pity you.	*Tædet me vitæ,*	I am weary of life.
Pœnĭtet me peccāti,	I repent of my sin.	*Pudet me culpæ,*	I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined ; as, *Misĕret me tui,* that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui misĕret me.*

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive ; as, *Pœnĭtet me peccâsse,* or *quod peccavĕrim.* The accusative is frequently understood ; as, *Scelĕrum si bene pœnĭtet,* scil. *nos.* Horat.

Obs. 3. *Misĕret, pœnĭtet,* &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod,* &c. as, *Ipse sui misĕret.* Lucr. *Nonne hæc te pudent.* Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitĕre possit, facias,* for *cujus te pœnitĕre possit.* Cic.

We sometimes find *misĕret* joined with two accusatives ; as, *Menedēmi vicem misĕret me,* scil. *secundum* or *quod ad.* Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *misĕret, pudet, tædet,* and *piget,* when used *in the passive form,* govern the same cases with the active ; as, *Mise-*

rĭtum est me tuārum fortunārum. Ter. We likewise find, *miserescit* and *miserētur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. Ter.; *Miserĕātur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuŏrum liberōrum miserēri po test*. Cic.

EXC. III. ***DECET***, ***DELECTAT***, ***JUVAT***, and ***OPORTET***, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studēre,	It delights me to study.
Non decet te rixāri,	It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decent*. Hor. *Est alĭquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*. Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportēbant*. Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*. Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consŭlat oportet. Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicātum oportuit; mansum oportuit; Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humored. Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, prætĕrit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmŏdi caput, non te fallit; De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribĕre*. Cic.

NOTE. *Attĭnet, pertĭnet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublĭcam pertĭnet, me conservāri*. Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attĭnet*, belongs. Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points. Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discĕre,	I desire to learn.

Obs 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*. Quinctil. And it sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equûm fumantia solvĕre colla*. Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistĕre victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*. Virg *Vidēre est*, one may see. *Dicĕre non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*. Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socrătem fidĭbus docuit*, scil. *canĕre*. Cic. So, *Discĕre, scire, fidĭbus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own: and it likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocināri, fraudāre turpe est*. Cic. *Didicisse fidelĭter artes emollit mores*. Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Perĭtus cantāre*, for *cantandi* or *cantûs*. *Virg*. 3. In the dative, *Parātus servīre*, for *servitūti*. Sall. 4. In

the accusative, *Da mihi fallĕre*, for *artem fallendi*. Horat. ***Quod faciam superest, præter amāre, nihil.*** Ovid. 5. In the vocative, ***O vivĕre nostrum, ut non sentientĭbus effluis!*** for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, ***Dignus amāri***, for *amōre*, or *qui amētur*. Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting*, *willing*, *ordering*, *fearing*, *hoping*; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubĭtat ita facĕre*, or more frequently, *an*, *num*, or *utrum ita factūrus sit; Dubitāvit an facĕret necne; Non dubĭto quin fecĕrit. Vis me facĕre*, or *ut faciam. Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangātur. Spero te ventūrum esse*, or *fore ut venias. Nunquam putāvi fore ut ad te supplex venīrem.* Cic. *Existimābant futūrum fuisse ut oppĭdum amitterētur.* Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum;* Time to read, *Tempus legendi;* Fit to swim, *Aptus natando;* Easy to say, *Facĭle dictu;* I am to write, *Scriptūrus sum;* A house to let, *or more properly*, to be let, *Domus locanda;* He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtūtem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; *Suspectiōres regĭbus*. Sall. *Invīsus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *In dies invisior*. Suet. *Occulta et marĭbus non invīsa solum, sed etiam inaudīta sacra*, unseen. Cic.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exōsa jugāles*. Ovid. *Plebs consŭlum nomen haud secus quàm regum perōsa erat.* Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with. Suet. *vitam*, weary of. Justin. *levitātis*. Cic.

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ.* Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium.* Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legĭbus.* Cic. *Insidiæ consŭli.* Sall. *Domum reditiōnis spe sublātâ.* Cæs. *Spectatio ludos.* Plaut.

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrăsis, similar to what we use in English; as, *Compertum habeo*, for *compĕri*, I have found. Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam; Inventum tibi curābo, et adductum tuum Pamphĭlum*, i. e. *inveniam* et *addūcam*. Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad;* as, *Tradĕre ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*. Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do alĭquid utendum*, or *ad utendum; Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obs. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *habeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *condūco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curāvi*, for *fiĕri*, or *ut fiĕret; Columnas ædificandas locāvit.* Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.
Tempus studendi, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that I must study.

But more particularly:

I. The gerund in *DUM* with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnĭbus*, All must die.
So, *Scio legendum esse mihi; moriendum esse omnĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 1. This gerund always impŏrts obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnĭbus est moriendum*, or *Omnĭbus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consŭlam tibi*. Cic.

Obs. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpŏre sano*, sc. *tibi*. Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milĭtes, est*, sc. *vobis*. Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi* or *alĭcui*. P. Syr.

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupĭdus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obs. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrōrum condonandi*, for *agros*. Cic. *Copia spectandi comœdiārum*, for *comœdias*. Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venĕrunt sui purgandi causâ*. Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causâ*. Liv. *Ejus videndi cupĭdus*, sc. *fœmĭnæ*. Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utĭlis scribendo, Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habĭlis*, He is not able to pay. Cic.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo*. Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing. Virg. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*. Virg. *Ob absolvendum*. Cic. *Circa movendum*. Quinctil.

Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnĭbus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a, ab, de, e, ex,* or *in;* as,

Pœna a peccandŏ absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augētur,	The memory is improved by exercising it.
Dĕfessus sum ambulando,	I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi,* or *legĕre:* only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocarĕtur ad imperandum,* i. e. *ut ipsi imperĕtur,* to receive orders. Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius; sic enim antīqui loquebantur.* Cic. i. e *ut tibi imperĕtur.* *Urit videndo,* i. e. *dum vidētur.* Virg.

Gerunds turned into Participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus,* which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,	or more frequently	*Pax est petenda mihi.*
Tempus petendi pacem,		*Tempus petendæ pacis.*
Ad petendum pacem,		*Ad petendam pacem.*
A petendo pacem,		*A petendâ pace.*

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus,* the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inĭta sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandōrum, nomĭnis Romāni extinguendi.* Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiendo labōri idoneus.* Colum. *Capessendæ reipublĭcæ habĭlis.* Tac. *Arca firma templis ac porticĭbus sustinendis.* Liv. *Onĕri ferendo est,* sc. *aptus* or *habĭlis.* Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis.* Ter. *Litĕris dandis vigilāre.* Cic. *Locum oppĭdo condendo capĕre.* Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnandâ Capuâ duces Romānos abstrahĕre.* Liv. *Oratiōnem Latīnam legendis nostris efficies pleniōrem.* Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor, utor, abūtor, fruor, fungor,* and *potior;* as, *Spes potiundi urbe,* or *potiundæ urbis*. *but we always say, Cupĭdus subveniendi tibi,* and never *tui.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in* um.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulātum, He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducĕre cohortes prædātum.* Liv. *Nunc venis irrīsum domĭnum?* *Quod in rem tuam optĭmum factu arbĭtror, te id admonĭtum venio.* Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perdĭtum*, the same with *id agit*, or *opĕram dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction. Ter. This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credēbas illam sine tuâ opĕrâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved; *An credēbas iri* (a te *or* ab alĭquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum.* Ter. The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocēmus.* Ter. *Revocātus defensum patriam; Divīsit copias hiemātum.* Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit orātum opem:* or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ.* 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem.* 3. *Venit opi orandæ.* 4. *Venit opem oratūrus.* 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret.* 6. *Venit opem orāre.* But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. *The Supine in* u.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facĭle dictu, Easy to tell, *or* to be told.

So, *Nihil dictu fœdum, visūque, hæc limĭna tangat, intra quæ puer est.* Juv. *Diffĭcĭlis res est inventu verus amīcus; Fas* or *nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu.* Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsonātu redeo*, from getting provisions. Plaut. *Primus cubĭtu surgat* (villĭcus), from bed, *postrēmus cubĭtum eat.* Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Diffĭcĭle cognĭtu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum; Res facĭlis ad credendum.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines, being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives, and other adverbs; as,

Benè scribit, He writes well. *Fortĭter pugnans,* Fighting bravely.
Servus egregiè fidēlis, A slave remarkably faithful. *Satis benè,* Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs sometimes likewise qualify substantives; as,

Homērus planè orātor: plane noster, verè Metellus. Cic. So, *Hodie mane, cras mane, heri mane; hodie vespĕri,* &c. *tam mane, tam vespĕre.*

Obs. 2. The adverb, for the most part in Latin, and always in English is placed near to the word which it qualifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non sensĕrunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *et sensĕrunt,* and they did perceive; *Non potĕram non exanimāri metu.* Cic. So, *non sum nescius,* i. e. *scio.* Cic. Or. 1, 11. *haud nihil est,* i. e. *est alĭquid.* Ter. Eun. 4, 2, 13. *nonnulli,* i. e. *alĭqui; nonnunquam,* i. e. *aliquando; non nemo,* i. e. *quidam; nemo non,* i. e. *quilĭbet,* &c. Examples, however, of the contrary of this occur in good authors, both Latin and English. Thus, in imitation of the Greeks, two negatives sometimes make a stronger negation: *Neque ego haud committam, ut, si quid peccātum siet, (te) fecisse dicas de meâ sententiâ,* I will not cause, that, &c. Plaut. Bacch. 4, 9, 114. *Jura, te non nocitūrum homĭni hâc de re nemĭni,* for *nulli homĭni.* Id. Mil. 5, 1, 18, *cf.* Epid. 4, 1, 6. & 5, 1, 57. *Nolle successum, non Patrĭbus, non Consulĭbus,* They did not wish success either to the Patricians, or the Consuls. Liv. 2, 45. So, *nihil iste nec ausus, nec potuit.* Virg. Æ. 9, 428, *add.* Virg. E. 4, 53. & 5, 53. Ter. Eun. 5, 9, 47. Heaut. 1, 1, 11. *Nullius rei neque præs, neque manceps factus est.* Nep. 25, 6.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprĭmè, admŏdum, vehementer, maxĭmè, perquam, valdè, oppĭdò,* &c. and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrûm gratum admŏdum fecĕris,* You will do what is very agreeable to both of us. Cic. *perquam puerĭle,* very childish; *oppĭdò pauci,* very few; *perfacĭle est,* &c. In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum;* as, *In rebus apertissĭmis, nimium longi sumus; parum firmus, multum bonus.* Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantùm amplior humānâ.* Liv.

Quam is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quàm difficĭle est!* How difficult it is! *Quàm crudēlis,* or *Ut crudēlis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quàm familiarĭter,* very familiarly. Ter. So, *quàm sevērè,* very severely. Cic. *Quàm latè,* very widely. Cæs. *Tam multa quàm,* &c. as many things as, &c. *Quàm maxĭmas potest copias armat,* as great as possible. Sall. *Quàm maxĭmas gratias agit, quàm primum, quàm sæpissĭmè.* Cic. *Quàm quisque pessĭmè fecit, tam maxĭmè tutus est.* Sall.

Facile, for *haud dubiè,* undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facĭlè doctissĭmus, facĭlè princeps,* or *præcipuus.* Longe, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissĭmus Plato.* Cic. *Pedĭbus longè melior Lycus.* Virg.

2. Cum, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; Dum, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Ægrōto, dum anĭma est, spes esse dicĭtur.* Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerābis amīcos.* Ovid. Dum and donec, for *usquĕdum,* until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive

as *Opperior, dum ista cognosco.* Cic. *Haud desĭnam donec perfecĕro.* Ter. So, QUOAD, *for quamdiu, quantum, quatĕnus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilīna fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbĭtur; quoad possem & licēret; quoad progrĕdi potuĕrit amentia.* Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonīcæ esse statuĕram, quoad alĭquid ad me scribĕres.* Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciātum erit te fecisse.* Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facĕre*, or *fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*, as, *quoad ejus facĕre potĕris*; *Quoad ejus fiĕri possit.* Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *alĭquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad anĭmam*, for *secundùm*, or *quod attĭnet ad corpus* or *anĭmam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is usually joined with the indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before: SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as soon as; UBI, when, sometimes with the indic. and sometimes with the subj.; as, *Antĕquam dico* or *dicam.* Cic. *Simulac persensit.* Virg. *Simul ut vidĕro Curiōnem.* Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit.* Liv. *Ubi semel quis perjuravĕrit, ei credi postea non oportet.* Cic. So, NÆ, truly, as, *Næ ego homo sum infēlix.* Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisses.* Cic. But NE, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura.* Plaut. *Ne post confĕras culpam in me.* Ter. *Ne tot annōrum felicitātem in unius horæ dedĕris discrīmen.* Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex.* Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbĭne venti confligunt.* Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur.* But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laborētur.* Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utĭnam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utĭnam ea res ei voluptāti sit.* Cic. *O mihi præterĭtos refĕrat si Jupĭter annos.* Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant.* Ter.

6. UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit, &c.* ¶ Also, for *quàm*, or *quomŏdo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus anĭmi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse.* Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem fecĕris, ita metes.* Cic.

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the indic. as, *Quin continĕtis vocem indĭcem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay, *or* but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est parātum argentum; quin tu hoc audi.* Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facĭlis res, quin diffĭcĭlis fiet, quum invītus facias.* Ter. *Nemo est, quin mālit; Facĕre non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending. *Nihil abest, quin sim miserrĭmus.* Cic.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridiè ejus diēi,	The day before that day.
Ubique gentium,	Every where.
Satis est verbōrum,	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc,* as, *Interea loci,* in the mean time; *postea loci,* afterwards; *inde loci,* then; *tunc tempŏris,* at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi,* and *quo,* with their compounds, *ubīque, ubicunque, ubīvis, ubiŭbi,* &c. Also, *Eo, huc, huccĭne, unde, usquam, nusquam, longè, ibīdem;* as, *Ubi, quo, quovis,* &c. also, *usquam, nusquam, unde terrārum,* or *gentium; longè gentium; ibīdem loci, eò audaciæ, vecordiæ, miseriārum,* &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abundè, affătim, largĭter, nimis, satĭs, parum, minĭmè;* as, *Abundè gloriæ, affătim divitiārum, largĭter auri, satĭs eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi* or *habet,* He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minĭmè gentium,* by no means.

Some add *ergô* and *instar;* as, *Ergô virtūtis,* for the sake of virtue. Cic. *Instar montis,* like a mountain. Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus,* the same with *abundantiam gloriæ;* or *res, locus,* or *negotium,* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci,* i. e. *inter ea negotia loci; Ubi terrārum,* for *in quo loco terrārum.*

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridiè, postridiè, ejus diēi,* seldom *diem;* but *pridiè, postridiè Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollināres, natālem ejus, absolutiōnem ejus,* &c. rarely *Kalendārum,* &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or *hostem; Ecce misĕrum homĭnem.* Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato.* Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras,) *tibi, Daphni.* Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce;* as, *Hem tibi Davum.* Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optĭmè loquĭtur,	He speaks the best of all.
Convenienter natūræ,	Agreeably to nature.
Venit obviàm ei,	He came to meet him.
Proxĭmè castris or *castra,*	Next the camp.

II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

AD astra, *to the stars;* religāri ad assĕrem, *to be bound to a plank;* ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at* or *on;* ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before;* ad urbem, Tibĕrim, *near, at;* ad templa supplicatio, *in;* ad summum, *at most,* or *to the top;* ad summam, *on the whole.* Cic.; ad ultĭmum, extrēmum, *at last, finally;* ad *or* in speciem, *to appearance;* mentis ad omnia capacĭtas; annus fatālis ad interĭtum; lenius ad severitātem, *for, with respect to.* Cic.; ad vivum, *sc.* corpus, *to the quick;* ad judĭcem agĕre, *before;* nihil ad Cæsărem, *in comparison of;* numĕro ad duodĕcim, *to the number of;* omnes ad unum, *to a man;* ad hoc, *besides;* ad vulgi opiniōnem, *according to;* homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man;* herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light*

of. Virg.; ad tempus venit, *at;* Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for:* ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to.* Cic.; ad decem annos, *after;* annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about.* Cic.; nebŭla erat ad multum diēi, *for a great part of the day.* Liv.; ad pedes jacēre, provolvi, procumbĕre, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at;* ad manus venīre, *to come to a close engagement;* ad libellam debēri, *to a farthing, no more and no less;* ad amussim, *exactly;* ad hæc visa auditāque, *upon seeing and hearing these things.* Liv.

Ad seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæsa sunt; ad mille homĭnum amissum est; ad ducenti periērunt, *about.* Liv.

Apud forum, *at;* apud me cœnābis, *at my house;* apud senātum, judĭces, *or* alĭquem dicĕre, *before;* apud majōres nostros, *among;* apud Xenophontem, *in the book of;* Est mihi fides, *or* valeo apud illum, *I have credit with him;* facio te apud illum deum. Ter.

Ante diem, focum, *&c. before.*

Adversus, *or* -um; Contra hostes, *against;* adversus infĭmos justitia est servanda, *toward;* adversum hunc loqui, *to.* Ter. Lerĭna adversum Antipŏlim, *over against.* Plin.

Cis *or* citra flumen, *on this side;* citra necessitātem, *without;* Ede citra cruditātem, bibe citra ebrietātem. Senec.

Circum & circa regem, *about;* Varia circa hæc opinio. Plin.

Erga amīcos, *towards.* Extra muros; Extra jocum, pericŭlum, noxiam, sortem, *without;* nemo extra te, *besides;* extra conjuratiōnem, *not concerned in.* Sall.

Infra tectum, *below the roof.*

Inter fratres, *among;* inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of;* inter hæc parāta, *during these preparations.* Sall. Inter tot annos, *in.* Cic. Inter diem, *whence* interdiu, *in the day time;* inter se amant, *they love one another;* Quasi non nôrĭmus nos inter nos. Ter.

Intra privātos pariĕtes, intra paucos annos, *within;* intra famam est, *less than report.* Quinct.

Juxta macellum, *near the shambles.*

Ob lucrum, *for gain;* ob ocŭlos, *before;* ob industriam *for* de industriâ, *on purpose.* Plaut.

Penes quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of;* Penes te es? *Are you in your senses?* Hor.

Per agros, *through;* per vim, per scelus, *by;* per anni tempus, per ætātem licet, *for, by reason of.*

Pone caput, *behind.*

Post hoc tempus, *after;* post tergum, *behind;* post homĭnes natos; post homĭnum memoriam, *since the world began.*

Præter te nemo, *nobody besides or except;* præter casam fugĕre, *beyond;* præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opiniōnem, &c. *contrary to, against, beyond;* præter cætĕros excellĕre, lamentāri, *above;* præter ripam ire, *along, near;* præter ocŭlos, *before.* Cic.

Propter virtūtem, *for, on account of;* propter aquæ rivum, *near by.* Virg.

Secundum facta & virtūtes tuas, *according to.* Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulnerātus est, *near to;* in actiōne secundum vocem vultus plurĭmum valet; secundum patrem tu es proxĭmus, *after, next to;* Prætor secundum me decrēvit, sententiam dedit, *for, in my favour.* Cic.

Secus viam, *by, along.*

Supra terram, *above.*

Trans mare, *over, beyond.*

Ultra oceănum, *beyond.*

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added Circiter, prope, usque, and versus;

as, Circĭter meridiem, *about mid-day;* prope muros, *near the walls;* usque Puteŏlos, Tarsum usque, *as far as;* Ori-

entem versus, *towards the east.* But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum. Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala. Hor. Ad oceănum versus. Cæs. In Italiam versus. Cic.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

A patre, ab omnĭbus, abs te, *by* or *from;* a puĕro, *or* puĕris, a pueritiâ, incunabŭlis, tenĕris unguĭbus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood;* ab ovo usque ad mala. *from the beginning to the end of supper;* a manu, *sc.* servus, *an amanuensis* or *clerk;* ad manum, *a waiting man;* a pedĭbus, *a footman;* a latĕre princĭpis, *an attendant.* *So,* a secrētis, rationĭbus, consiliis, cyăthis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.;* fores a nobis, *for* nostræ. Injuria ab illo, *for* illius. Ter. a cœnâ, *after;* Secundus, tertius a Romŭlo; ictus ab latĕre, *on or in;* a senātu stare, *for, in defence of;* ab ocŭlis doleo. Plaut. ab ingenio imprŏbus, a pecuniâ & militĭbus, imparātus, *as to, with respect to.* Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiōres ab re, *too careless about money;* a villâ mercenarium vidi. Ter.

Absque causâ, *without;* absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, *i. e.* si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you.* Ter. Absque *is chiefly used by comic writers;* sine, *by orators.*

Clam patre & patrem, (with the acc. or abl.) *without the knowledge of.*

Coram omnĭbus, *before, in presence of.*

Cum exercĭtu, *with;* testis mecum est annŭlus, *in my possession.* Ter. cum primâ luce, *at break of day;* cum imperio esse, *in;* cum primis, in primis, *in the first place;* cum metu dicĕre, cum lætitiâ vivĕre, cûm curâ, *&c.* Cic. *We say,* mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; *rarely* cum me, cum te, &c. *and* quocum *or* cum quo, quibuscum *or* cum quibus.

De lanâ caprīnâ rixantur, *about, concerning;* De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of;* de loco superiōre, *from;* de die, *by day;* de nocte, *by night;* de integro, *anew, afresh;* de *or* ex improvīso, *unexpectedly;* de *or* ex industriâ, *on purpose;* de meo, *at my expense;* Id de lucro putāto esse, *clear gain.* Ter. de *or* ex compacto agĕre, *by agreement;* de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart;* de *or* ex ejus sententiâ, consilio, *according to;* quâ *or* hâc de causâ, *for;* homo de plebe; templum de marmŏre, *of;* de scripto dicĕre, *to read a speech;* de filio emit, *from.* Cic. De servis fidelissĭmus; de ipsius exercĭtu non amplius homĭnum mille cecĭdit. Nep. Robur de exercĭtu. Liv. Adolescens de summo loco. Plaut. De procul aspicĕre. Id.

E foro, Ex ædĭbus, *from, out of;* e contrario, *or* contrariâ parte, *on the contrary;* e regiōne, *over against;* e republĭcâ, e re alicujus, *for the good of;* statim e somno, ex fugâ, ex tantâ properantiâ, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after;* e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately,* pocŭlum ex auro; ex equo pugnāre, *on horseback;* facĕre pugnam ex commŏdo, *on advantageous ground;* Sall.; diem ex die expectāre, *from day to day, day after day;* ex ordĭne, *in order;* magnâ ex parte, *for the most part;* ex supervacuo, *superfluously;* ex tuâ dignitāte *or* virtūte, ex decrēto senatûs, e natūrâ, *according to;* *so* vulgus ex veritāte pauca, ex opiniōne multa æstĭmat; ex *or* de more, ad *or* in morem alicujus: Ex anĭmo, *from the heart;* Insolentia ex prospĕris rebus, e viâ languēre, ex doctrīnâ nobĭlis, *on account of;* ex usu est tibi,

of advantage; ex eo die, *since*, ex amīcis certis certissĭmus, *of, or among*; ex pedĭbus laborāre, *to be ill of the gout*. Cic. E re natâ, *as the matter stands*. Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo puĕrum natum, *by*. Id.

PRO gloriâ certāre, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*. Sall. Hoc est pro me. Cic. pro templo, tribunāli, concione, rostris, castris, forĭbus, *before*; pro suâ dignitāte, sapientiâ, *&c.* pro potestāte cogĕre, pro tempŏre, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætōre, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehicŭlo est, *for, instead of*; pro virĭbus, pro parte virīli, pro suâ quisque parte *or* facultāte, *to one's ability or power*: Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddĭdi, *in comparison of, considering*. Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro ratâ parte, pro portiōne, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agĕre pro victorĭbus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; *so* pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihĭlo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est. Cic.

PRÆ se pugiōnem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*. Ter. præ lacrȳmis non possum scribĕre, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempsi, *in comparison of*: *So the adv.* præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit. Ter.

PALAM popŭlo, omnĭbus, *before, with the knowledge of.*

SINE labōre, *without*; sine ullâ causâ, pompâ, molestiâ, querēlâ, impensâ, *&c.*; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortūnis, sede, *&c.* Cic

Capŭlo TENUS, *up to the hilt.*

Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cumārum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two;

as, Oculōrum, aurium, narium, labrōrum, lumbōrum, crurum tenus, *up to*. *We also find* Corcȳræ tenus, *&* ostiis tenus. Liv. Colchis tenus. Flor. Pectorĭbus tenus. Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCUL:

as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patriâ*. Virg. *Procul ab ostentatiōne*. Quinct. *Culpa est procul a me*. Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACC. AND ABL.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative, *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, in te benignus, *towards*; in lucem, *until day*; in eam sententiam, *to that purpose, on that head*; in rem tuam est, *for your advantage*; in utramque partem disputāre, *on both sides, for and against*; litūra in nomen.

on. Cic. potestas in filium, *over;* in alĭquem dicĕre, *against;* mirum in modum, *after;* in pedes stare, in aurem dormīre, *on;* in os laudāre, *to, before;* in *or* inter patres lectus, *into the number of;* in vulgus probāri, spargĕre, *&c. among;* crescit in dies, in singŭlos dies, omnes in dies, *every day;* in diem postĕrum, proxĭmum, decĭmum, *against;* in diem vivĕre, *to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow;* Est in diem, *will happen sometime after.* Ter. Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for;* Ternis assĭbus in pedem, *or* in singŭlos pedes, transēgit, *He bargained for three shillings a foot,* or *for every foot;* *So* in jugĕrum, milĭtem, capĭta, naves, &c. In medimna singŭla, H. S. quinos denos dedisti. Cic.

In portu navĭgo, in tempŏre, *in;* esse in potestāte *or* in potestātem, honōre *or* honōrem, mente *or* mentem: in manu *or* manĭbus esse; habēre, tenēre, *in one's power, on hand;* in amīcis, *among;* in ocŭlis, *before;* Occīsus est in provinciam, *for* in provinciâ. Sall. In pueritiâ, adolescentiâ, senectūte, absentiâ, *for* puer *or* puĕri, *when a boy* or *boys,* &c. Hoc in tempŏre. Nep. In loco fratris diligĕre, *for* ut fratrem. Ter.

Sub terras ibit imāgo, sub aspectum cadit, *under;* sub ipsum funus, *near, just before.* Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vespĕram, brumam, *i. e.* incipiente luce, *&c. at the dawn of day, &c.;* sub idem tempus, *about;* sub eas litĕras recitātæ sunt tuæ, sub festos dies, *after.* Cic.

Sub muro, rege, pedĭbus, *&c. under;* sub urbe, *near.* Ter. sub eâ conditiōne *or* -em, *on* or *with.*

Super Numidiam, *above, beyond;* super ripas, *upon;* super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides.* Liv. super arbŏre, fronde super virĭdi, *upon;* super hâc re scribĕre, his accensa super, *concerning;* alii super alios trucidantur. Liv. Super cœnam, super vinum & epŭlas, *for* inter, *during.* Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molītur laude labōrem, *for.* Virg.

Subter terram *or* terrâ, *under.*

Obs. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra.* But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempŏre venit,* sc. *post id tempus. Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum,* & *clam,* are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, *Intus cellam,* for *intra.* Liv. *Intus templo divûm,* sc. *in.* Virg. *Simul his,* sc. *cum.* Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regiōne; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs before *q* and *t;* as, *abs te, abs quĭvis homĭne.* Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e;* as, *e longinquo, e regiōne, e vestigio, e re meâ est,* &c. Some only with *ex;* as, *Ex compacto, ex tempŏre, magnâ ex parte,* &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenĕre locos,* scil. *ad; It portis,* sc. *ex.* Virg. *Nunc id prodeo,* scil. *ob* or *propter.* Ter. *Maria aspĕra juro,* scil. *per.* Virg. *Ut se loco movĕre non possent,* scil. *e* or *de.* Cæs. *Vina promens dolio,* scil. *ex.* Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet,* sc. *de.* Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book; Get me some paper,* that is, *to me, for me.* We sometimes find the word to

which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*. Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church; Campum Stellātem divisit extra sortem ad viginti millĭbus, civium*, i. e. *civium millĭbus ad viginti millia*. Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittĕre servum*, scil. *manu*. Plaut. *Evomĕre virus*, scil. *ore*. Cic. *Educĕre copias*, scil. *castris*. Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeāmus scholam,	Let us go to the school.
Exeāmus scholâ,	Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adīre ad scholam; Exīre ex scholâ; Adgrĕdi alĭquid*, or *ad alĭquid; ingrĕdi oratiōnem*, or *in oratiōnem; inducĕre anĭmum*, & *in anĭmum; evadĕre undis* & *ex undis; decedĕre de suo jure, decedĕre viâ* or *de viâ; expellĕre, ejicĕre, extermināre, extrudĕre, exturbāre urbe*, & *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affāri, allŏqui, allatrāre alĭquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So, *Alluĕre urbem; accolĕre flumen; circumvenīre alĭquem; præterīre injuriam; abdicāre se magistrātu*, (also, *abdicāre magistrātum*;) *transducĕre exercĭtum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrĕre ad alĭquem, adhortāri ad alĭquid, incidĕre in morbum, avocāre a studiis, avertĕre ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abīre, demigrāre loco;* & *a, de, ex loco; abstrahĕre alĭquem, a, de*, or *e conspectu; Desistĕre sententiâ, a* or *de sententiâ; Excidĕre manĭbus, de* or *e manĭbus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egrĕdi urbe, or *urbem*, sc. *extra; egrĕdi extra vallum*. Nep. *Evadĕre insidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedĕre muros*. Lucan. *Scelerātâ excedĕre terrâ*. Virg. *Elābi ex manĭbus; elābi pugnam aut vincŭla*. Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Allŏquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me misĕrum!* Ah wretched me!

So, *O vir fortis atque amīcus!* Ter. *Heu vanĭtas humāna!* Plin. *Heu miserande puer!* Virg. *O præclārum custōdem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum!* Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobĭs!* Wo to you!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*. Ter. *Ohe libelle!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro, ah, vah, hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh homĭnum fidem!* Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupĭter!* Cic. *Hem astutias!* Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot, properly, have either concord or govern-

ment. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me misĕrum!* stands for *Heu! quàm me misĕrum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner*, and *Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure* and *Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duŏbus assĭbus,	I bought a book for two shillings.
Constĭtit talento,	It cost a talent.

So, *Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro vendle,* &c. *Nocet empta dolŏre voluptas.* Hor. *Spem pretio non emam.* Ter. *Plurĭmi auro veneunt honŏres.* Ovid.

¶ These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minŏris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constĭtit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendĕre.* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paulŭlo, minĭmo, plurĭmo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constĭtit*, scil. *pretio.* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, cariùs, carissĭmè; bene, meliùs, optĭmè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissĭmè; valdè, carè æstĭmas: Emit domum prope dimidio cariùs, quàm æstimābat.* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valēret.* Liv.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more,	He did it after his own way.
Scribo calămo,	I write with a pen.

So, *Ardet dolŏre; pallescĕre culpâ; æstuāre dubitatiōne, gestīre voluptāte* or *secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissĭmo supplicio; insignis pietāte; deterior licentiâ: Pietāte filius, consiliis pater, amōre frater;* hence, *Rex Dei gratiâ: Parĭtur pax bello.* Nep. *Procedĕre lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparātu: Nullo sono convertĭtur annus.*

Juv. *Jam veniet tacĭto curva senecta pede.* Ovid. *Percutĕre secūri, defendĕre saxis, configĕre sagittis,* &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locūta est.* Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hâc de causâ: Præ mœrōre, formidĭne,* &c. But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerāre alĭquem gladio,* not *cum gladio;* unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab;* as, *Trajectus ab ense.* Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsēdit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio.* Cic.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of, as, *Capitolium saxo quadrāto constructum.* Liv. *Floruit acumĭne ingenii.* Cic. *Pollet opĭbus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobĭlis,* &c. *Æger pedĭbus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmŏre,* seldom *marmŏris; Pocŭlum ex auro factum.* Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where,* or *in which.* 2. The place *whither,* or *to which.* 3. The place *whence,* or *from which.* 4. The place *by,* or *through which.*

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place in the ablative.

R *The place* WHERE.

• L. When the place *where,* or *in which,* is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,	He lived at Rome.
Mortuus est Londĭni,	He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habĭtat Carthagĭne,	He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Parisiis,	He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud;* as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam,* At *or* near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed

by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe* or *in oppĭdo*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris:* but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe;* or *in Româ celebri urbe*, or sometimes, *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner we usually say, *Habĭtat in urbe Carthagĭne*, with the preposition. We likewise find *Habĭtat Carthagĭni*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi?* Thus, *At ego aio hoc fiĕri in Græciâ, et Carthagĭni*. Plaut. Cas. Prol. 71. *Fuĕre Sicyōni jamdiu Dionysia*, the feasts of Bacchus were some time ago celebrated at Sicyon. Id. Cist. 1, 3, 8, *cf.* Ps. 4, 2, 38. *Neglectum Anxūri præsidium*. Liv. 5, 8. *Convento Antonio Tibūri*, having met with Anthony at Tibur. Cic. Att. 16. 3. *Nulla Lacedæmŏni tam est nobĭlis vidua, quæ non ad scenam eat mercēde conducta*. Nep. Præf. *Tibūri genĭtus*. Suet. Cal. 8. *add.* Id. Claud. 34.—Sometimes, though more rarely, names of towns in the first and second declension are found in the ablative; as, *Rex Tyro decēdit*, for *Tyri*. Justin. 18, 4. *Eâdem die, quâ in Italiâ pugnātum est, et Corintho, et Athēnis, et Lacedæmŏne nunciāta est victoria*. Id. 20, 3, f. *Add.* Vitruv. 3, 2, 7. Præf. 8, 3.

2. *The Place* Whither.

LI. When the place *whither*, or *to which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,	He came to Rome.
Profectus est Athēnas,	He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagĭni nuncios mittam*. Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciātum*, The report was carried to Rome. Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albāni*. Id. *Messānam litĕras dedit*. Cic.

3. *The Place* Whence.

LII. When the place *whence*, or *from which*, or the place *by* or *through which*, is spoken of, the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Discessit Corintho,	He departed from Corinth.
Laodicēâ iter faciēbat,	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*. Nep.

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	He stays at home.
Domum revertĭtur,	He returns home.
Domo arcessītus sum,	I am called from home.

Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri*,	He lives in the country.
Rediit rure,	He is returned from the country.
Abiit rus,	He is gone to the country.

Obs. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ*, not *domi paternæ*: So, *Ad domum paternam*: *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *aliēnus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit*. Cic. Tusc. 5, 39, 4. *Apud eum sic fui, tanquam domi meæ*. Cic. Fam. 13, 69. *Nonne mavis sine pericŭlo domi tuæ esse, quàm cum pericŭlo aliēnæ*. ib. 4, 7. *Me domo meâ expulistis, Cn. Pompeium domum suam compulistis*. Cis. Pis. 7. *Alius alium domos suas invĭtant*. Sall. Jug. 66. *add.* Liv. 2, 7. *Aurum atque argentum, et alia, quæ prima ducuntur, domum regiam comportant*. Sall. Jug. 76.—*RUS* and *rure* in the sing. joined with an adj. are found without a preposition; as, *appropinquante vespĕre, equum conscendit, et rus urbānum contendit*, sc. *ad.* Justin. 31, 2; *quartumque apud lapĭdem suburbāno rure substitĕrat*. Tac. An. 15, 60.—but never *rura* in the plural; as, *ubi dilapsi domos, et in rura vestra erĭtis*. Liv. 39, 16.

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi*, *domo*, or *in domo Cæsăris*.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by,
Ubi? *Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe*, &c.
Quo? *Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in* or *ad urbem*, &c.
Unde? *Rediit ex Italiâ, e Latio, ex urbe*, &c.
Qua? *Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem*, &c.

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Româ*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam, ex Româ*, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petīvit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*. Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considĕre Apollo*. Virg. *Non Lybiæ*, for *in Lybiâ*; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*. Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*. Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinŏra ejus memŏrat*, for *et in Numidiâ*. Sall.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,	The wall is ten feet high.

Urbs distat triginta millia, or *triginta millĭbus passuum*,	The city is thirty miles distant.
Iter, or *itinĕre unius diĕi*,	One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus*, and *altus: Patet, porrigĭtur, emĭnet*, &c. The names of measure are, *pes, cubĭtus, ulna, passus, digĭtus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denûm pedum*, for *denōrum*, in the genitive, *ad mensūram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millĭbus passuum ab urbe consĕdit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*. Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium*, or *milliāre, consĕdit*. Cic. *Ad quintum lapĭdem*. Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excĕdit illud digĭto. Toto vertĭce supra est. Virg. *Britanniæ longitūdo ejus latitudĭnem ducentis quadraginta milliarĭbus supĕrat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. Time *when* is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ,	He came at three o'clock.

¶ Time *how long* is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies,	He staid a few days.
Sex mensĭbus abfuit,	He was away six months.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentiâ*, or *in præsenti*, scil. *tempŏre; in* or *ad præsens; Per decem annos; Surgunt de nocte; ad horam destinātam, Intra annum; Per idem tempus, ad Kalendas solutūros ait*. Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, ætātis, tempŏris, horæ*, &c. for *hâc ætāte, hoc tempŏre*, &c. And *ante* or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Sicŭli quotannis tribūta confĕrunt*, sc. *tot annis, quot* or *quotquot*

sunt. Cic. *Prope diem,* sc. *ad,* soon; *Oppĭdum paucis diebus, quibus eò ventum est, expugnātum,* sc. *post eos dies.* Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accēpi tuas litĕras,* for *die tertio ante.* Cic. *Qui dies futūrus esset in ante diem octāvum Kalendas Novembris.* Id. *Exunte diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis morĭbus et nunquam mutātis legĭbus vivunt,* sc. *quam per.* Cic. We find *Primum stipendium meruit annōrum decem septemque,* sc. *Attĭcus;* for *septemdĕcim annos natus,* seventeen years old. Nep.

Obs. 3. The abverb *ABHINC,* which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium,* It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante;* as, *Paucos post annos;* but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases,* and is commonly called a *Period.*

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses.*

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes; that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment, or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many propositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who *loveth religion,* and *practiseth virtue.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod,* agrees with the antecedent in gender, number and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*
Vir qui,	The man who.	*Viri qui.*
Fœmĭna quæ,	The woman who	*Fœmĭnæ quæ.*
Negotium quod,	The thing which.	*Negotia quæ.*
Ego qui scribo,	I who write.	*Nos qui scribĭmus.*
Tu qui scribis,	Thou who writest,	*Vos qui scribĭtis.*
Vir qui scribit,	The man who writes.	*Viri qui scribunt.*
Mulier quæ scribit,	The woman who writes.	*Muliĕres quæ scribunt.*

Singular.		Plural.
Animal quod currit,	The animal which runs.	*Animalia quæ currunt*
Vir quem vidi,	The man whom I saw.	*Viri quos vidi.*
Mulier quam vidi,	The woman whom I saw.	*Muliĕres quas vidi.*
Anĭmal quod vidi,	The animal which I saw.	*Animalia quæ vidi.*
Vir cui paret,	The man whom he obeys.	*Viri quibus paret.*
Vir cui est simĭlis,	The man to whom he is like.	*Viri quibus est simĭlis.*
Vir a quo,	The man by whom.	*Viri a quibus.*
Mulier ad quam,	The woman to whom.	*Muliĕres ad quas.*
Vir cujus opus est,	The man whose work it is.	*Viri quorum opus est.*
Vir quem misereor, cujus misereor, or *miseresco, cujus me misĕret,*	The man whom I pity.	
cujus or *cuja intĕrest, &c.*		whose interest it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) *legit; vir quem* (virum) *amo:* Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hâc* (arte) *se exerceat.* Cic. *Eunŭchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit.* Ter. sc. *Eunŭchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnĭno duo itinĕra, quibus itinerĭbus domo exīre possent.* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos genus hoc minĭmè juvat,* for *sunt homĭnes, quos homĭnes,* &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixēre chaos. Ovid. *Est locus in carcĕre, quod Tulliānum appellātur.* Sall. *Anĭmal, quem vocāmus homĭnem.* Cic. *Cogĭto id quod res est.* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolōri,* scil. *Pompeium se affligĕre.* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word implied; as, *Scelus qui,* for *scelestus.* Ter. *Abundantia eārum rerum, quæ mortāles prima putant,* scil. *negotia.* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinĭtas,* quod *ego in alĭquâ parte amicitiæ puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium.* Ter. *In omni Afrĭcâ, qui agĕbant;* for in

omnĭbus Afris. Sallust. Jug. 89 *Non diffidentiâ futūri, quæ imperavisset,* for *quod.* Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio,* scarcely *facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make,* or *maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love;" it should be "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudāre fortūnas meas, qui habērem gnatum tali ingenio præditum. Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem,* &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure homĭnis necandi, quæ multa sunt,* scil. *tempŏra.* Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antīqua fuit: Tyrii tenuēre colōni,* scil. *quam* or *eam.* Virg. Or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditĭbus, quos filius ejus adduxĕrat, neque in priōre pugnâ adfuĕrant, Romānos invādunt:* for *quique in priōre pugnâ non adfuĕrant.* Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote,* for *the letter which I wrote; The man I love,* to wit, *whom.* But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum alĭquid agas eōrum, quorum consuēsti,* for *quæ consuēsti agĕre,* or *quorum alĭquid agĕre consuēsti.* Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum,* for *in locum, in quo.* Ter. And iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is,* and *idem,* in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui;* as, *Liber ejus,* His or her book; *Vita eōrum,* Their life, when applied to men; *Vita eārum,* Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus,* &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, Facies est,

qualem decet esse sorōrum. Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitūdo, quantam urbs capĕre potest:* and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civĭtas.* Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our father, which art in heaven:* and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which;* as, *That is what he wanted;* that is, *the thing which he wanted.*

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse?* Who do they say that I am? *not* whom. *Quem dicunt adventāre?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audīre cupio, quæ legĕris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audīre cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Quī vocāre? Geta, sc. *vocor. Quid quæris? Librum*, sc. *quæro. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ.* Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus*, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus est? Decem assĭbus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimĭne.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agĭtur? Statur*, sc. *a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomŏdo vales? Benè, malè. Scripsistīne? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo,* &c. *An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minĭmè,* &c. *Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ est indūtus? Factum.* Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and modes; as,

Honōra patrem et matrem,	Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec scribit,	He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, quàm, nisi, præter-

quam, an: and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut,* &c. as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postŭlo, prætcrquam hujus dici memoriam. Cic. *Gloria virtūtem tanquam umbra sequĭtur.* Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence, if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

Intĕrest mea et reipublĭcæ; Constĭtit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epīro; Decius cum se devovēret, et in mediam aciem irruēbat. Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summâque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis.* Sall. *Tecum habĭta, & nôris, quàm sit tibi curta supellex.* Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive,* or *nec,* are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise; aut* or *vel,* by *either;* the first *sive,* by *whether;* and the first *nec,* by *neither;* as,

Et legit, et scribit; so, *tum legit, tum scribit;* or *cum legit, tum scribit,* He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit,* Whether he reads or writes; *Jacĕre quâ vera, quâ falsa; Increpāre quâ consŭles ipsos, quâ exercĭtum,* To upbraid both the consuls and the army. Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et, ac, atque,* &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicĕro valēmus,* If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well. *Cic.* In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read; Cicero and I are well;* but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legĭmus.*

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui;* but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenārum et Cratippi, ad quos,* &c. *Propter summam doctōris auctoritātem et urbis, quorum alter,* &c. Cic. Where *Athenæ* & *urbs* are put for the

learned men of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legāti missi*, i. e. the king and queen. Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in ocŭlis sita sunt.* Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now, the *Genus* or class, which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicĕro meus flagitābit. Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto.* Virg. *Et ego in culpâ sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpâ*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmĭna, desunt*; or, *nihil hic deest nisi carmĭna. Omnia, quibus turbāri solĭta erat civĭtas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi.* Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senĭbus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor*, for *vescĭmur*. Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirĭnus jura dabunt. Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibĕbant.* Ter. *Frons, ocŭli, vultus sæpe mentiuntur.* Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions, *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utĭnam*, and *dummŏdo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,	I read that I may learn.
Utĭnam sapĕres,	I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives, as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotŭplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujas*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdĭu, quamdūdum, quamprĭdem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, dum, utrum, quomŏdo, qui, ut, quàm, quantopĕre*; or Conjunctions, *as, ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*, *I do not know* who it is. *An ventūrus* est? Nescio, dubĭto, an ventūrus

sit *Vides ut alta stet nive candĭdum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego.* Plaut. *Haud scio, an amat.* Ter. *Vide avaritia quid facit.* Id. *Vides quàm turpe est.* Cic.

¶ In like manner the relative QUI in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficĕre non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; *Neque Antonius procul abĕrat, utpŏte qui sequerĕtur*, &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So, *est qui, sunt qui, est quando* or *ubi*, &c. are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte dixĕrim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo.* Cic.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it; Although he was rich*, &c.

Obs. 3. ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive; ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it; as, *Ut quæras, non reperies.* Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM, QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for *dummŏdo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Odĕrint dum metuant.* Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indicative; as, *Quippe vetor fatis.*

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi, tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet *or* nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam,—quam; Adeo* or *ita,—ut:* in English, *As,—as*, or *so;* as, *Etsi sit liberālis, tamen non est profūsus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *priùs* or *antè,—quàm.* In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac*, or *facĭto;* as, *Ducas volo hodie uxōrem; Nolo mentiāre; Fac cogĭtes.* Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave;* as, *Cave facias.* Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octāvo, quam creātus erat.* Liv. 4. 47, scil. *post.* And so in English, *See you do it; I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that.*

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quòd* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause,

and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quòd* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quòd legi*, I am glad that *or* because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it: *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas.* Ter. *Ut sis vitălis, metuo.* Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not live;—*ne frater moriătur*, will die. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative, (*when it can be translated by* than); as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter *than* honey. *Præstantior auro*, better *than* gold.

Obs. 1. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce.* Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cætĕris.* We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes.* Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quàm*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quàm mel, scil. *est. Amo te magis quàm illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quàm amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quàm ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quàm ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quàm illo*, sc. *ab.*

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quàm* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus;* as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, scil. *quàm.* Cæs. *Plus quingentos colăphos infrĕgit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows. Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quàm.* Liv.

Quàm is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quàm gratior. Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prœlium atrocius, quàm pro numĕro pugnantium editur.* Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opiniōne, spe, æquo, justo, dicto;* as,

Credibili opinione major. Cic. *Credibili fortior.* Ovid, Fast. iii. 618 *Gravius æquo.* Sall. *Dicto citius.* Virg. *Majōra credibili tulimus.* Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat,* sc. *justo,* too freely Nepos. 2. 1.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli;* as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for *neminem.* Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius.* Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum.* So, *quid nobis laboriosius,* for *quis,* &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nullâ re,* or *quàm pater.* The comparative is sometimes repeated, or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus, plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque,* &c.

Obs. 4. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quàm ego,* He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit.* *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc.* Ter.

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by,* expressed or understood; (*or more shortly,* the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digitis altior quàm frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or* by ten inches. *Altĕro tanto major est fratre,* i. e. *duplo major,* He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipĕde minor,* a foot and a half less; *Altĕro tanto, aut sesquimājor,* as big again, or a half bigger. Cic. *Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quàm priùs.* Plaut. *Quinquies tanto amplius, quàm quantum licitum sit, civitatibus imperāvit,* five times more. Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio,* &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt,* The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior,* The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit.* Ovid, Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto,* also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberēmus.* Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit.* Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,	The sun rising, *or* while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.
Opĕre peracto, ludēmus,	Our work being finished, *or* when our work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitiâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtūte; Oppressâ libertāte patriæ, nihil est quod sperēmus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victûque mutāto, mores mutāri civitātûm puto.* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inittūris, et dictatōre arcem Romānam respectante, ac ab auguribus, simul aves ritè admisissent, ex composito tollerētur signum.*

Liv. *Bellīce, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades.* Ovid, Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milĭtes, hostĭbus victis, rediērunt.* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostĭbus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered*, or *being conquered*: 2. *When* or *after the enemy is* or *was conquered*: 3. *By conquering the enemy*: 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy*, &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicĕro locūtus hæc consēdit*, never, *his locūtis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romāni adepti libertātem floruērunt*; or *Romāni, lĭbertāte adeptâ, floruērunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentĭbus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsăre duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulĭbus*, scil. *existentĭbus*. *Invītâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ*, without learning. Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce natūrâ; vivis fratrĭbus; te hortatōre; Cæsăre, impulsōre*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regiōnem hostes petīssent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*. Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*. Id. *Excepto quòd non simul esses, cætĕra lætus*. Hor. *Parto quod avēbas*. Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell. Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis presente*. Plaut. *Absente nobis*. Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milĭte, veni*. Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consŭle fastos*. Lucan. v. 384. *Popŭlo spectante fiĕri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*. Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *sub*, or *in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantĭbus*. Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciōsâ libidĭne paulisper usus, infirmĭtas natūræ accusātur*. Sall. Jug. 1

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum*, *dum*, or *quandŏ Superbus regnābat*. *Opĕre peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle, in English, independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at;* in curiam, *to desire to be admitted.* Cic. equis Achillis, *to wish for;* labōri ejus, *to favour;* amōrem dictis, *sc.* ei, *to infuse.* Virg.

DESPERARE sibi de se; salūtem, salūti, de salūte, *to despair of.*

LEGARE alĭquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador;* alĭquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant;* pecuniam alĭcui, *i. e.* testamento relinquĕre. *N. B.* Publĭce *legantur* homĭnes; qui inde *legāti* dicuntur: privātim *allegantur;* unde *allegāti.*

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay;* labōrem altĕri, *to lay upon;* alĭquid ad alĭquem, *i. e.* in eum transferre. Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease.*

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished;* alĭquid alĭquâ re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange;* vestem, *i. e.* sordĭdam togam induĕre. Liv. vestem cum alĭquo. Ter. fidem, *to break.*

OBNUNCIARE comitiis *or* concilio, *i. e.* comitia auspiciis impedīre, *to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consŭli *or* magistratui; *i. e.* prohibēre ne cum popŭlo agat. Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise;* alĭquid edicto, *to order;* sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators.* Cic.

RENUNCIARE alĭquid, de re, alĭcui, ad alĭquem, *to tell;* consŭlem, *to declare, to name;* vitæ, amicitiam ei, *to give up;* munĕri, hospitio, *to refuse;* repudium, *to divorce.*

OCCUPARE alĭquem, *to seize,* se in alĭquo negotio, *to be employed,* se ad negotium. Plaut. pecuniam alĭcui *or* apud alĭquem grandi fœnōre, *to give at interest.* Cic. occŭpat facĕre bellum, transīre in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates* Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to seize before hand.* Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE alĭquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial.* Cic.

ROGARE alĭquem id, & de eâ re; id ab eo; salūtem, & pro salūte. Cic. legem, *to propose; hence,* UTI ROGAS, dicĕre, *to pass it;* milĭtem sacramento, *to administer the military oath;* Roget quis? *if any one should ask.* Comitia rogandis consulĭbus, *for electing.* Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom* legi, *to disannul a law, to repeal,* or *to change in part;* multam, *to take off a fine;* imperium ei, *to take from.*

ABROGARE id sibi, *to claim.*

DEROGARE alĭquid legi *or* de lege, *to repeal* or *take away some clause of a law;* lex derogātur. Cic. fidem ei, *or* de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit;* ex æquitāte; sibi, alĭcui, *to derogate* or *take from.*

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium provin-

ciam alĭcui, *to prolong;* diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

Subrogare alĭquem in locum alterius, *to substitute;* legi, *to add a new clause,* or *to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards;* alĭquem ex censu anĭmum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome;* montes, *to pass;* supĕrat pars cœpti, *sc.* opĕris, *remains;* Captæ superavĭmus urbi, *survived.* Virg.

Temperare iras, ventos, *to moderate;* orbem, *to rule;* mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear;* alĭcui, *to spare;* cædĭbus, a lacrўmis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munĕre militiæ, *&c.* a labōre, *to be free from;* anĭmo, *sc.* in, *to be at ease;* philosophiæ, in *or* ad rem, *to apply to;* vacat locus, *is empty;* si vacas, *or* vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge;* ab interĭtu, exercĭtum fame, *to free;* id sibi, *&* ad se, *to claim;* libertātem ejus, *to defend;* se in libertātem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE anĭmam, *to die;* anĭmos, *to encourage;* manus, *to yield;* manum ei, *to shake hands.* Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws;* litĕras alĭcui ad alĭquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another;* terga, fugam, *or* se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly;* hostes in fugam, *to put to flight;* opĕram, *to endeavour;* opĕram philosophiæ, litĕris, palæstræ, *to apply to;* opĕram honorĭbus, *to seek.* Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request.* Ter. gemĭtus, lacrўmas, amplexus, cantus, ruĭnam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c.* cognitōres honestos, *to give good vouchers for one's character.* Cic. alĭquid mutuum, *or* utendum, *to lend;* pecuniam fœnŏri, *&* collocāre, *to place at interest;* se alĭcui ad docendum. Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of;* se ad alĭquid, *to apply to;* se auctoritāti senātûs, *to yield;* fabŭlam, scripta foras, *to publish.* Cic. effectum, *to perform;* senātum, *to give a hearing of the senate;* actiōnem, *to grant leave to prosecute;* præcipĭtem, *to tumble headlong;* alĭquid paternum, *to act like one's father;* lectos faciendos, *to bespeak.* Ter. litem secundum alĭquem, *to determine a lawsuit in favour of one;* alĭquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely* lethum alĭcui, *to kill;* alĭquid alĭcui dono, *or* munĕri, *to make a present;* crimĭni, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise;* pœnas, *to suffer;* nomen militiæ, *or* in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier;* se alĭcui, *to be familiar with.* Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me.* Id. aures, *to listen;* obliviōni, *to forget;* civitātem ei, *to make one free of the city;* dicta, *to speak;* verba alĭcui, *to impose on, to cheat;* se in viam, *to enter on a journey;* viam ei, *to give place;* jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest;* se turpĭter, *to make a shabby appearance;* fundum *or* domum alĭcui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to;* Vitāque mancipio nulli datur, omnĭbus usu Lucr. servos in quæstiōnem, *to give up slaves to be tortured;* primas, secundas, &c. (*sc.* partes) actiōni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery.* Cic. Dat ei bibĕre. Ter. comas diffundĕre ventis, *to let them flow loose.* Virg. Da mihi *or* nobis, *tell us.* Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go;* solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert.* Ter.

Satisdare judicātum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid.* Cic.

STARE contra alĭquem; ab, cum, *or* pro alĭquo, *to side with, to be of the same party;* judicio ejus, *to follow;* in sententiâ; pacto, conditionĭbus, conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement;* re judicātâ, *to keep to what has been determined;* stāre *or* constāre anĭmo, *to be in his senses:* Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solva-

tur, *It is not owing to me that, &c.* multōrum sanguĭne ea Pœnis victoria stetit, *cost.* Liv. Mihi stat alĕre morbum desinĕre, *I am resolved* Nep.

Adstare mensæ, *to stand by;* ad mensam, in conspectu.

Constare ex multis rebus, anĭmo et corpŏre, *to consist of;* secum, *to be consistent with.* Cic. liber constĭtit *or* stetit mihi duōbus assĭbus, *cost me;* non constat ei color, *his colour comes and goes;* auri ratio constat, *the sum is right.* Constat, impers. *It is evident, certain,* or *agreed on;* mihi, inter omnes, de hâc re.

Extare aquis, *to be above.* Ovid. ad memoriam posteritātis, *to remain.* Cic. sepulchra extant. Liv.

Instare victis, *to press on the vanquished;* rectam viam, *to be in the right way;* currum Marti, *to make speedily.* Virg.; instat factum, *insists that it was done.* Ter.

Obstare ei, *to hinder.*

Præstare multa, *to perform;* alĭcui, *or* alĭquem virtūte, *to excel;* silentium ei, *to give;* auxilium, *to grant.* Juv. impensas, *to defray;* iter tutum, *to procure;* se incolŭmem, *to preserve;* se virum, *i. e.* præbēre, exhibēre; amōrem, *or* benevolentiam alĭcui, *to show;* culpam *or* damnum, *i. e.* in se transferre, *to take on one's self;* præstābo de me eum factūrum, *I will be answerable.* In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancĭpi sunt, is periculum judicii præstāre debet, qui se nexu obligāvit. *In recovering,* or *in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial.* Cic. *N. B.* Those things were called, Res mancĭpi, (*contracted for* mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu capĕret,) *the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.*

Præstat, impers, i. e. *it is better:* Præsto esse alĭcui, adv. *to be present, to assist;* Libri prostant venāles, *the books are exposed to sale.*

ACCUBARE alĭcui in convivio, *to recline near;* apud alĭquem. Incubāre ovis & ova, *to sit upon;* stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exĭtum, tempus, consuetudĭnem, voluntātem nocendi, opus in manĭbus, *or* inter manus, *to have;* gratiam & gratum, *to have a grateful sense of a favour;* judicium, *to hold a trial;* honōrem ei, *to honour;* in ocŭlis, *to be fond of.* Ter.: fidem alĭcui, *to trust* or *believe;* curam de *or* pro eo; ratiōnem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office;* ratiōnem, *or* rem cum alĭquo, *to have business with;* satis, *to be satisfied;* oratiōnem, conciōnem ad popŭlum, *to make a speech;* alĭquem odio, in odium, *to hate;* ludibrio, *to mock;* id religiōni, *to have a scruple about it: So,* habēre alĭquid quæstui, honōri, prædæ, voluptāti, &c. *sc.* sibi; se benè *or* gravĭter, *to be well or ill;* se parce et durĭter, *to live.* Ter. alĭquid compertum, cognĭtum, perspectum, explorātum, certum *or* pro certo, *to know for certain;* alĭquem contemptui, despicatui, -um, *or* in despicātum, *to despise;* excusātum, *to excuse;* susque deque, *to scorn, to slight;* Ut res se habet, *stands, is;* rebus ita se habentĭbus, *in this state of affairs;* Hæc habeo, *or* habui dicĕre de, *&c.* Non habeo necesse scribĕre quid sim factūrus. Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce.*

Adhibere diligentiam, celeritātem, vim, severitātem in alĭquem, *to use;* in convivium, *or* consilium, *to admit;* remedium vulnĕri, curatiōnem morbo, *to apply;* vinum ægrōtis, *to give;* aures versĭbus *to*

hear with taste; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*. Cic. Exhibēre molestiam alĭcui, *to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass;* regem, *to choose;* alĭquem salvēre, *to wish one health;* esse bono anĭmo, &c. Uxōrem suas res sibi habēre jussit, *divorced.* Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hâc re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latīnis & Græcis litĕris; Latīnè & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE alĭquid alĭcui, cum alĭquo, ad alĭquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguĭne. Tacit. sacra profānis. Hor. humāna divīnis. Liv.

VIDERE rem *or* de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of.* Ter. plus, *to be more wise.* Cic. De hoc tu vidēris, *consider, be answerable for.* Cic. Videor vidēre, *methinks I see;* visus sum audīre, *methought I heard;* mihi visus est dicĕre, *he seemed;* Quid tibi vidētur? *What think you?* Si tibi vidētur, *if you please;* vidētur fecisse, *guilty,* &c.

Invidere honōrem ei, *or* honōri ejus; ei, *or* eum, *to envy.*

Providere & prospicĕre id, *to foresee;* ei, *to provide for;* in postĕrum; rei frumentariæ, rem *or* de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride;* toga benè sedet, *fits;* Sedet hoc anĭmo, *is fixed.* Virg.

Assidere ei; Adherbălem, *to sit by.* Sall. Assĭdet insāno, *is near* or *like to.* Hor.

Dissidere cum alĭquo, *to disagree.*

Insidere equo, & in equo, *to sit upon;* locum. Liv. in anĭmo, memoriâ, *to be fixed.*

Præsidere urbi, imperio, *to command.* Cic. exercĭtum, Italiam. Tacit.

Supersedere labōre,litĭbus; pugnæ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over.*

PENDERE promissis, ab *or* ex alĭquo, *to depend;* de, ex, ab, & in arbŏre; Opĕra pendent interrupta. Virg.

Impendet malum nobis, nos, *or* in nos, *threatens.*

SPONDERE & despondēre filiam alĭcui, *to betroth.*

Despondere domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of.* Cic. anĭmo & -is, *to promise, to hope;* anĭmum & -os, *to despair.* Liv.

Respondere ei, litĕris ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer;* votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes;* ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, *or* de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of.*

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, *or* hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud alĭquem, *to be in favour with one;* lex valet, *is in force;* quid verbum valeat, non video, *signifies;* valet decem talenta, *or oftener* talentis, *is worth;* vale *or* valeas, *farewell; or,* ironically, *away with you.*

EMINERE alĭquâ re, *or* in alĭquâ re, inter omnes; super cætĕra. Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel;* ex aquâ, *or* aquam, super undas, *to be above.* Imminēre alĭcui, *to hang over, to threaten;* in occasiōnem, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for.*

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppĭdo, castris, *sc.* in, *to keep;* modum, ordĭnem, *to observe;* rem, dicta, lectiōnem, *to understand, to remember;* linguam, *but not* suam, silentium, se in silentio, *to be silent;* ora, *to keep the countenance fixed;* secundum locum imperii, *to hold.* Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy.* Cic. causam, *to gain;* mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of;* terram, portum, metam montes, *to reach;* risum lachrȳmas, *to restrain;* se ab accusando, quin accūset. Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows;* tenēri legĭbus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by;* leges tenent eum, *bind;* tenēri in manifesto furto, *to be seized;* tenet fama, *prevails.*

Abstinere maledictis, *or* a, *to abstain;* publĭco, *to live retired.* Tacit. anĭmum a scelĕre, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from;* jus belli ab alĭ-

quo, *not to treat rigorously*. Liv. Id ad me, ad religiōnem, *&c*. pertĭnet, *concerns me;* crimen ad te pertĭnet. Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertĭnet, *for* mei fratris est, *belongs to;* venæ ad *or* in omnes corpŏris partes pertĭnent, *reach*.

Sustinere persōnam judĭcis, nomen consulātûs, *to bear the character;* assensiōnem, *or* se ab assensu, *to withhold assent;* rem in noctem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud alĭquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposĭto, sententiâ, in sententiâ, statu suo, *&c*. adventum hostium, *to expect*. Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*. Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*. Horat. Manent ingenia senĭbus, modo permaneat studium & industria. Cic. Munĕra vobis certa manent. Virg.

MERERE laudem; benè, malè de alĭquo; stipendia, equo, pedĭbus, *to serve as a soldier;* fustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE latĕri; tergis, *or* in terga hostium. Liv. curru. Virg. alĭcui in viscerĭbus. Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt* Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*. Cic.

Adhærere & adhærescĕre justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærēre rei, *&* in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp;* bella, *to raise;* alĭquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe;* e senātu, *to degrade a senator;* risum *or* jocum alĭcui, *to cause laughter;* stomăchum ei, *to trouble*. Cic.

FAVETE ore, *or* linguis, *sc*. mihi, *attend in silence*, or *abstain from words of a bad omen*.

Cavere alĭquid, alĭquem, *or* ab alĭquo, *to guard against, to avoid;* alĭcuī, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client;* alĭquid alĭcui. Cic. sibi ab alĭquo *or* per alĭquem de re alĭquâ, *to get security on;* mihi prædĭbus & chirogrăpho cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond;* veterānis cautum esse volŭmus. Cic. Cave facias, *sc*. ne, *see you don't do it;* mihi cavendum, *or* mea cautio est, *I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgŭra. Suet. *to wink;* in homĭnum scelerĭbus, *to take no notice of*. Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumĭne, in Tibĕrim, *to make;* divortium cum uxōre. Cic. bellum regi. Nep. se hilărem, *to show*. Ter. se divĭtem, misĕrum, paupĕrem, *to pretend*. Cic. æs aliēnum, *or* contrahĕre, conflāre, *to contract debt;* anĭmos, *to encourage;* damnum, detrimentum, jactūram, *to lose;* naufragium, *to suffer;* sumptum, *to spend;* gratum alĭcui, *to oblige;* gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault;* gratiam legis, *to dispense with;* justa *or* funus alĭcui, *to perform one's funeral rites;* rem, *to make an estate;* pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, *or* inīre, icĕre, ferīre, percutĕre, jungĕre, sancīre, firmāre, &c. *to make a league;* moram alĭcui, *to delay;* verba, *to speak;* audientiam sibi. Cic. negotium, *&* facessĕre, *to trouble;* alĭquid missum, *to pass over;* alĭquem missum, *to dismiss* or *excuse;* ad alĭquid, *rarely* alĭcui, *to be fit* or *useful;* ratum, *to ratify;* planum, *to explain;* palam suis, *to make known*. Nep. stipendium pedĭbus *or* equo, *&* merēre, *to serve in the army;* sacra, sacrificium, *or* rem divīnam, *to sacrifice;* reum, *to impeach;* fabŭlam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play, &c*. copiam consilii ei, *to offer advice;* copiam *or* potestātem dicendi legātis, *to grant leave;* fidem,

to procure or give credit; pericŭlum, *to make trial;* potestātem sui, *to expose himself.* Nep. alĭquem loquentem, *or* loqui, *to suppose* or *represent.* Cic. piratĭcam, *sc.* rem, *to be a pirate;* argentariam, medicīnam, mercatūram, &c. *to be an usurer, a physician, &c.* versūram, *to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest.* Cic. cum *or* ab alĭquo, *to side with;* contra *or* adversùs, *to oppose;* nomen, *or* nomĭna, *to borrow money;* and also, *to settle accounts, i. e.* ratiōnes acceptārum, *sc.* pecuniārum, & expensārum inter se conferre; nomen in litūrâ, *to write it where something was before.* Cic. pedem *or* pedes *to trim the sails.* Virg. Fac ita esse, *suppose it is so;* obvius fiĕri alĭcui, *to meet;* ne longum *or* longa faciam, *not to be tedious;* equus non facit, *will not move.* Cic. Fac velle, *sc.* me, *suppose me to be willing.* Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

Afficere alĭquem laude, honōre, præmio, & ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c.* Affectus ætāte, morbo, *weakened.*

Conficere bellum, *to finish,* oratiōnes, *to compose.* Nep. cibum, *to chew;* argentum, *to raise, to get;* also, *to spend.* Cic.; cum alĭquo de re, *to conclude a bargain;* exercĭtus hostium, *to destroy;* altĕrum Curiatium, *to kill.* Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, *i. e.* emerĭti, *had served out their time.* Cic.

Deficere anĭmo, *to faint;* ab alĭquo, *to revolt;* tempus defĭcit mihi *or* me, *fails:* Defĭci virĭbus, ratiōne, &c. *to be deprived of.*

Inficere se vitro, *to stain:* Infectus, part. *stained;* infectus, adj. *not done.* Inficior, -āri, -ātus, *to deny.*

Officere alĭcui, *to hinder* or *hurt;* Diogĕni apricanti, *to stand betwixt him and the sun;* aurĭbus, visui, *to stop* or *obstruct;* Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem effĭcit. Cic

Præficere alĭquem exercitui, *to set over.* Proficĕre alĭcui, *to profit, to do good;* in philosophiâ, & progressus facĕre, *to make progress.*

Reficere muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair;* anĭmum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover.*

Sufficere laborĭbus, ictĭbus, *to be able to bear;* arma *or* vires alĭcui, *to afford;* Valerius in locum Collatīni suffectus est, *was substituted.* Liv. Filius patri suffectus. Tacit. Ocŭlos suffecti sanguine & igne, *sc.* secundùm, *having their eyes red and inflamed.* Virg.

Satisfacere alĭcui, in *or* de alĭquâ re, *to satisfy;* fidei, promisso, *to perform.*

JACERE alĭquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw;* fundamenta, & ponĕre, *to lay;* talos, *to play at dice;* anchŏram, *to cast.*

Adjicere, *to add;* ocŭlos alĭcui rei, *to covet;* anĭmum studiis, *to apply;* sacerdotĭbus creandis. Liv.

Conjicere se in pedes, *or* fugam, *to fly;* cætĕra, *to conjecture.*

Injicere manus ei, *to lay on;* spem, ardōrem, suspiciōnem, pavōrem, alĭcui, *to inspire;* admiratiōnem sui cuivis ipso aspectu. Nep.

Objicere se hostĭbus, in *or* ad omnes causus, *to oppose* or *expose;* crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge.*

Rejicere tela in hostes, *to throw back;* judĭces, mala, *to reject;* rem ad senātum, Romam, *to refer;* rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay.* Cic.

Subjicere ova gallīnæ, *to set an hen;* se imperio alicujus, *to submit;* testamenta, *to forge;* testes, *to suborn;* partes *or* species genĕrĭbus, ex quibus emānant, *to put or class under;* alĭquid ei, *to suggest;* libellum ei, *i. e.* in manus dare. odio civium, *to expose;* bona Pompeii *or* fortūnas hastæ *or* voci & sub voce præcōnis, *to expose to public sale.* Cic. sub hastâ venīre, *to be sold.* Liv.

Trajicere copias *or* exercĭtum, fluvium, Hellespontum, *or* trans

fluvium, *to transport:* Marius cum parvâ naviculâ in Africam trajectus est, *passed or sailed over.* Trajectus ferro, *pierced.*

CAPERE conjectūram, consilium, dolōrem, fugam, specĭmen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, *or* auspicium, & agĕre, *to take an omen:* exemplum de alĭquo: locum castris; terram, *to alight;* insŭlam, summa, *sc.* loca, *to reach;* spolia ex nobilitāte, *to gain.* Sall. de republĭcâ nihil præter gloriam. Nep. magistrātum, *to receive* or *enjoy;* virgĭnem Vestālem, *to choose;* amentiam, spirĭtus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain;* alĭquem, consilio, perfidiâ, *to catch;* nec te Troja capit. Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us.* Altĕro ocŭlo capĭtur, *blind of one eye;* capĭtur locis, *he is delighted with.* Virg.

Accipere pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab alĭquo, *to receive:* Orbis terrārum divitias accipĕre nolo pro patriæ carităte. Nep. binas litĕras eōdem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter.* Cic. clamōrem de Socrăte, *to hear;* id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense;* omnia ad contumeliam, alĭter, aliorsum, ac, atque. Ter. rudem *or* rude donāri, *to be discharged as a gladiator;* alĭquem bene, *or* malè, *to treat;* eum malè acceptum in Mediam hiemātum coēgit redīre, *roughly handled.* Nep. rogatiōnem, *to approve the bill;* nomen, *i. e.* ad petendum admittĕre, *to allow to stand candidate;* omen, *to esteem good;* satisfactiōnem, *or* excusatiōnem. Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, *popular.*

Concipere verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath;* conceptis verbis jurāre: inimicitias cum alĭquo, *to bear enmity to one;* aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct.* Frontīnus.

Excipere eum hospitio, *to entertain;* fugientes, *to catch;* extrēmum spirĭtum cognatōrum; sanguĭnem patĕrâ, *to keep* or *gather;* notis, & scribĕre, *to write in short hand;* motus futūros, *to perceive;* Hos homĭnes excipio, *I except,* virtūtem excĭpit immortalĭtas; turbulentior annus excēpit, *succeeded;* sic excēpit regia Juno, *replied.* Virg.

Incipere, occipĕre, *to begin.* Percipĕre fructus, *to reap.*

Præcipere futūra, *to foresee;* gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate;* pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time.* Cæs. lac, *to dry up.* Virg. alĭcui id, *or* de eâ re, *to order;* artem ei, *to teach.*

Recipere alĭquid, *to receive;* urbem, *to recover;* eum tectis, *to entertain;* se *or* pedem, *to retreat,* se domum, *to return;* se, mentem, anĭmum, *to come to one's self again, to recover spirits;* in se, *to take charge;* alĭcui, *to promise;* se ad frugem, *to amend;* senem sessum, *to give a seat to.* Cic.

RAPERE *or* trahĕre in pejōrem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense;* in jus, *to bring before a judge;* partes inter se, *to share.* Liv. Sub divum, *to re*[illegible]

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestĭbus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off;* fidem, sacramentum, *to break;* mentem, *to change.* Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from.*

RUERE ad interĭtum, in ferrum: cætĕros. Ter. spumas, *to drive* or *toss.* Virg.

LUERE pœnas capĭtis, *to suffer;* æs aliēnum, *to pay.* Curt. culpam suam *or* alterĭus, mórte, sanguĭne, *to expiate, to atone* or *suffer for.*

Eluere amicitias remissiōne usûs, *to drop gradually.* Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publĭco, *to appoint;* exemplum in homĭnem, *or* -ne, *to make one a public example;* alĭquem capĭte in terram, *to set* or *place.* Ter.

Constituere coloniam, *to settle;* agmen paulisper, *to make to stop* or *halt.* Sall. in digĭtis, *to count on one's fingers.* Cic. urbem, *to build.*

Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolved*. Ter. Si utilĭtas amicitiam constituit, tollet eădem, *makes, constitutes*. Cic. Corpus benè constitūtum, *a good constitution*. Id.

Destĭtuere alĭquem, *to forsake;* spem, *to deceive;* proposĭtum, *to give over*. Ovid. deos pactà mercēde, *to defraud*. Hor.

Instituere alĭquem secundum hærēdem filio, *to appoint*. Cic. collegium fabrōrum, sacra, *to institute, to found*. Plin. alĭquem doctrīnâ, Græcis litĕris, *to instruct;* naves, *to build*. Cæs. sermōnem, *to enter upon*. Id. anĭmum ad cogitandum, *to settle;* antĕquam pro Murænâ, dicĕre instituo, *I begin*. Cic.

Præstituere petitōri, quâ actiōne illum uti oporteat, *to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*. Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

Restituere exŭles; virgĭnem suis, *to restore;* oppĭda vicosque, *to repair;* aciem inclinātum, *to rally;* prælium, *to renew*. Liv.

Substituere alĭquem in locum ejus, pro altĕro, *to substitute* or *put in the place of*. Cic.

STRUERE epŭlas, *to prepare;* insidias, mendacium, *to contrive;* odium, crimen alĭcui, *or* in alĭquem, *to raise against*.

BO.

SCRIBERE suâ manu, benè, velocĭter, epistŏlam alĭcui, *or* ad alĭquem; bellum, *or* de bello; milĭtes, *to enlist;* supplementum milĭtĭbus, *to recruit them;* hærēdem, *to make one his heir;* dicam ei, *to raise an action against one;* nummos, *to give a bill of exchange;* de rebus suis scribi cupīvit. Cic. Decemvir legĭbus scribendis. Liv.

Ascribere alĭquem civitāti, in civitātem, *or* -e, *to make free*.

Describere alĭquem, *to describe and not to name;* partes Italiæ, pecuniam popŭlum ordinĭbus, *to distribute, to divide;* vectīgal civitatĭbus, *i. e.* imperāre; jura, *i. e.* dare *or* constituĕre; censōres binos in singŭlas civitātes, *i. e.* facĕre. Cic.

Inscribere litĕras alĭcui, *to direct a letter;* librum, *to entitle*, or *name;* ædes mercēde, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*. Ter.

Proscribere bona alicūjus ædes suas, auctiōnem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale;* alĭquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

Rescribere alicūjus, litĕris, *or* ad litĕras, alĭcui ad alĭquid, *to write an answer;* pecuniam, *to pay money by bill;* legiōnem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*. Cæs.

Subscribere exemplum literārum, *to write below;* causæ, *to join* or *take part in an accusation;* Cæsăris iræ, *to favour*. Ovid.

CO.

DICERE alĭquid, *or* de alĭquâ re, ex alĭquo loco, alĭcui, ad *or* apud alĭquem; in alĭquem, *against;* ad alĭquid, *in answer to;* sententiam, *to give an opinion;* jus, *to administer justice, to pronounce sentence;* mulctam ei, *to amerce* or *fine;* diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people;* prodicĕre, *to put it off;* causam, *to plead;* testimonium, *to give evidence;* non idem *loqui* est ac *dicĕre, to harangue*. Cic. sacramento, *seldom* sacramentum, *to take the military oath*.

Addicere alĭquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell;* servitūti, *or* in servitūtem, *to sentence* or *adjudge to bondage;* bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor;* se alĭcui, *to devote himself to one's service;* aves non addixĕrunt, *or* abdixĕrunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen;* pretio addictam habēre fidem, *to be corrupt*. Cic.

Condicere opĕram alĭcui, *to promise assistance;* cœnam alĭcui, *or* ad cœnam, *to purpose supping with one without invitation*.

Edicere alĭcui, *to order;* delectum, *to appoint a levy;* prædam militĭbus, *to promise by an edict;*

justitium, diem comitiis, *or* comitia consulĭbus creandis, *to appoint.*

Indicere bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war;* legem sibi, *to appoint.* Cic. cœtus in domos tribunōrum, *to summon.* Liv. indicāre, *to show;* Indictus, an adj. *not said;* causâ indictâ, *or* non cognĭtâ, condemnāri, *to be condemned without being heard;* me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling.* Ter.

Interdicere alĭcui, alĭquid, *or* alĭquâ re; fœmĭnis usum purpūræ, *to forbid* or *debar from;* ei aquâ et igne *or* aquam et ignem, *to banish;* malè rem gerentĭbus bonis paternis ĭnterdīci solet. Cic. interdīci non potĕrat socĕro gener, *discharged the company of.* Nep.

Prædicere alĭcui alĭquid, de alĭquâ re, id in hâc re, *to foretell, to forewarn.*

DUCERE in carcĕrem *or* vincŭla, *to lead;* exercĭtum, *to command;* spirĭtum, anĭmam, vitam, *to breathe, to live,* fossam, murum, sulcum, *to make* or *draw;* bellum, *to prolong,* also *to carry on.* Virg. ætātem, diem, *to spend;* uxōrem, *to take a wife;* in jus, *to summon before a judge;* alĭquem, *&* vultum alicūjus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmŏre, &c. *to make a statue;* genus, nomen ab *or* ex alĭquo, *to derive;* omnia pro nihĭlo, infra se; id laudi, laudem, *or* in laudem, (*oftener the first,*) *to reckon it a praise to him;* in conscientiam, *to impute to a consciousness of guilt;* in gloriâ. Plin. in crimen. Tacit. centesĭmas, *sc.* usūras *or* fœnus centesĭmis, *to compute interest at one for the hundred a month,* or *at* 12 *per cent. per annum;* binis centesĭmis fœnerāri, *to take* 24 *per cent. per annum;* Cic. ducĕre longas voces in fletum, *to draw out.* Virg. ordĭnes, *to be a centurion.* Liv. ilia, *to pant like a broken-winded horse.* Hor.

Adducere alĭquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, *to bring to a trial;* in suspiciōnem regi. Nep. arcum, *to draw in;* habĕnas, *to straighten the reins.*

Conducere alĭquem ex loco, *to convey;* navem, domum, coquos, *to hire;* columnam faciendam, *to engage to make at a certain price;* Condūcit hoc tuæ laudi, in *or* ad rem, *is of advantage.*

Deducere naves, *to launch;* classem in prælium, *to bring.* Nep. equĭtes, *to make to alight.* Liv. eum domum, *to accompany, to carry home;* de sententiâ. Cic. coloniam, *to transplant;* lacum, *to drain.*

Educere gladium e vagīnâ, *to draw;* florem Italiæ, *to lead out;* copias in aciem. Cic. filium, *to educate, oftener* educāre; in astra, *to extol.* Hor. cœlo. Virg.

Inducere tenebras clarissĭmis rebus, *to bring on.* Cic. anĭmum, *or* in anĭmum, *to persuade himself;* scuta pellĭbus, *to cover.* Cæs. soleas pedĭbus, *or* in pedes, *to put on;* colōrem pictūræ, *to varnish.* Plin. nomĭna, *to cancel* or *erase, to rub out.*

Obducere exercĭtum, *to lead against;* callum dolōri, *to blunt it,* sepulchrum sentĭbus, *to cover.*

Reducere alĭquem in memoriam, alicūjus *or* alĭcui, alĭquid in memoriam, *to bring back to one's remembrance;* in gratiam cum alĭquo, *to reconcile;* Vallis reducta, *retired* or *low.*

Producere testes, *to bring out;* funus, *to attend;* sermōnem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue;* rem in hiĕmem, *to defer;* servos vendendos, *to bring to market.*

Subducere se a custodĭbus, *to steal away;* naves, *to draw up on shore;* cibum ei, *&* deducĕre, *to take from;* summam, ratiōnes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts.*

PARCERE sibi, labōre, *to spare, &c.* a cædĭbus, *to forbear;* aurum natis. Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alĭcui *or* re alĭquâ, in *or* ad hoc, *to be accustomed;* mentem plurĭbus, *&* assuefacĕre. Hor. Anĭmis bella. Virg. *to accustom.* *So,* insuesco rei, *or* re; insuēvit hoc me pater. Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree; hence* plebiscĭtum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume;* socios sibi, ad societātem scelĕris, *to associate;* ritus peregrīnos, *to adopt.*

CONSCISCERE mortem *or* necem sibi, *to kill one's self;* fugam sibi, *to flee.* Liv.

DISCERE alĭquid ab alĭquo, *or* apud alĭquem, ex alĭquâ re, *or without* ex: Dediscĕre, *to forget what he hath learned;* Ediscĕre, *to get by heart.*

DO.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædĭbus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrēma, *to have recourse to.* Cic.

LUDERE aleâ, *or* -am, *to play at dice;* par impar, *at even & odd;* opĕram, *to lose one's labour.*

ALLUDERE alĭcui, ad alĭquem; Colludĕre ei, cum eo; illudĕre ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock.*

EVADERE insidias, -iis, *or* ex, *to escape;* in murum, *to mount;* Hæc quorsum evādant, nescio, *to what they will turn out;* Clarus evāsit, *became.*

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure. Cic. Bona creditorĭbus, *to yield, whence* cessio bonōrum; alĭcui loco, de, a, ex loco, *or* locum, *to give place;* vitâ, e vitâ decedĕre, *to die;* foro, *to turn bankrupt;* Hærediītas cedit mihi, *falls to;* Cedit in proverbium, *becomes.*

ACCEDERE oppĭdum, -do, ad *or* in oppĭdum, *to approach;* ad conditiōnes, *to agree to;* Cicerōni, sententiæ, *or* ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with;* ad Cicerōnem, *to go to;* ad rempublĭcam, *to bear the questorship,* or *the first public office;* ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of.* Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accēdit etiam, *is added.* Ter. Robur accessit ætāti. Cic. Anĭmi accessēre hosti. Liv. Ad corpŏris firmitātem plura anĭmi bona accessĕrant. Nep. Accēdit plurĭmum pretio; huc, eò, accēdit quod, *is added.*

ANTECEDERE alĭcui rei; alĭquem, *rarely* alĭcui, *to excel.*

CONCEDERE ei alĭquid & de alĭquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant;* ab ocŭlis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go;* fato, natūræ, vitâ, *to die;* in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures;* in conditiōnes, *to agree to.* Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, *or* digĭtum a re, *to depart in the least.*

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law;* pecuniam pro alĭquo, *to become surety:* Intercēdit mihi tecum amicitia *or* inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed;* muro, *or* murum; ad urbem; sub prĭmam aciem; in pugnam, *to come unto.*

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall;* causâ formŭlâ, in judicio, & litem perdĕre, *to lose one's cause, to be cast;* in *or* sub sensum, ocŭlos, potestātem, &c. in morbum, & incidĕre. Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentīri, *is incapable of.* Cic. Homĭni lachrȳmæ cadunt, quasi puĕro, gaudio. Ter.

ACCIDERE genĭbus *or* ad genua, *to fall at:* aurĭbus *or* ad aures, *to come to;* alĭcui, casu, præter opiniōnem, *to happen;* accĭdit in te istud verbum, *applies.* Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch;* insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares;* arcum, *to bend;* iter, cursum, *to direct;* ad altiōra, in cœlum, *to aim at;* extra vallum, *sc.* tabernacŭlum, *to pitch a tent;* Manĭbus tendit divellĕre nodos, *tries.* Virg.

ATTENDO te. Cic. tibi. Plin. de hàc re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed;* anĭmum ad rem; res hostium. Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnĭbus nervis, *to exert one's self;* alĭquid ab alĭquo, *to ask earnestly;* inter se; amōri, *poet. for* cum amōre, *to strive;* causas, *sc.* inter se, *to compare.* Cic. Alĭquid ad alĭquid, cum alĭquo, & alĭcui.

COMPREHENDERE natūram rerum, *to understand;* rem plurĭbus & luculentiorĭbus verbis, *to express;* alĭquem humanitāte, amicitiâ, *to gain;* rem fictam, *to discover.*

INTENDERE anĭmum rei, ad *or* in rem, *to apply;* Intendi anĭmo in rem. Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert;* arcum, *to bend;* actiōnem, *or* litem alĭcui *or* in alĭquem, *also* impingĕre, *to raise a law-suit against one;* telum ei, *or* in eum, *to shoot at;* manum *or* digĭtum in alĭquid, *to point at;* alĭquo, *sc.* ire, *to go to;* officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required.* Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, *or* rem velo, *to cover, to veil.*

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay;* pœnas, *to suffer;* id parvi, *to value it little.*

SUSPENDERE alĭquem arbŏri, de, in, *or* ex arbŏre, *to hang;* expectatiōne, *or* suspensum detinēre, *to keep in suspense;* ædificium, *to arch a house;* naso adunco, *to sneer at.* Hor.

ABDERE se litĕris, in litĕras, *to hide* or *shut up one's self among books;* se domum, rus, &c. domo. Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build;* fructus, *to lay up;* in carcĕrem, *to imprison;* carmen, *to compose;* lumĭna, *to close.* Ov. Jura, *to establish;* terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury.*

DEDERE se alĭcui, in ditiōnem alicujus, ad alĭquem, *to surrender;* Dedĭtus præceptōri, *&* studiis, *fond of;* vino epŭlisque, *engaged in.* Nep. dedĭtâ opĕrâ, *on purpose.*

EDERE librum, *&* in lucem, *to publish;* ovum, *to lay;* sonos, cantus, risus, gemĭtus, questus, hinnĭtum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, to sing, &c.* manus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a show of gladiators;* nomen, *to mention;* fœtus, *to bring forth;* extrēmum spirĭtum, *to die;* exempla cruciatûs in alĭquem, *to inflict exemplary torture.*

OBDERE pessŭlum forĭbus, *to bolt the door.*

PRODERE arcem hostĭbus, *to betray;* alĭquid postĕris, *or* memoriæ, *to hand down;* genus ab alĭquo, *to derive;* flamĭnem, interrēgem, *to appoint;* alĭquot dies nuptiis, *to put off.* Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity.* Liv.

REDDERE anĭmum, se sibi, *to revive;* anĭmam *or* vitam, *to die;* Latīnè, verbum verbo, *to translate;* matrem, *i. e.* referre, *to resemble;* epistŏlam alĭcui, *to deliver.*

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur;* spirĭtus alĭcui, *to encourage.*

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe;* alĭquid alĭcui, *to trust;* pecuniam ei per syngrăpham, *to lend on bond* or *bill;* rumorĭbus credi non oportet; Ităque credo, si, &c. *I suppose.* Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out;* hostes, *to rout.*

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratōrum, *to produce;* ærarium, *to spend;* odium, *i. e.* dimittĕre, *to drop;* gratiam collectam, *i. e.* perdĕre: omnia, quæ tacuĕrat, *to tell.*

GO.

JUNGERE se cum alĭquo, alĭcui, *&* ad alĭquem, dextram dextræ, *to join;* equos currui, *to yoke,* amnem ponte, *to make a bridge.*

ADJUNGERE accessiōnem ædĭbus, *to build an addition to one's house;* anĭmum ad studia, *to apply.*

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensem, *to draw;* frondes, *to lop off;* glandes, baccas, *to beat down;* rem, *to waste one's fortune.* Hor. littus, *to touch, to brush,* or *graze upon.* Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head.*

ATTINGERE Britanniam navĭbus, *to reach;* reges, res summas, *to mention.* Nep. Alĭquem cognatiōne, affinitāte, *to be related to;* forum, *to reach manhood.* Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns.*

FINGERE oratiōnem, *to polish;* oratōrem, *to form;* se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt:* Vultus a mente fingĭtur, lingua fingit vocem. Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortūnam. Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break;* navem, *to suffer shipwreck;* fœdus, fidem, *to violate;* sententiam ejus, *to refute.* Cic. hostem, *to subdue.*

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks;* vitam, *to live;* prædas, *to plunder;* fabŭlam, *to act a play;* triumpham de alĭquo, ex alĭquâ re, *to triumph;* nugas, *to trifle;* ambāges, *to beat about the bush;* statiōnem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard;* rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent;* causam, *to plead;* de re, *to speak;* radīces, *to take root;* cunicŭlos, *to undermine;* undam, *to raise a steam;* anĭmam, *to be at the last gasp;* alias res, *to be inattentive;* festum diem, natālem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe;* actum, *or* rem actam, *to labour in vain;* censum, & habēre, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes;* lege in alĭquem, & cum alĭquo, *to go to law with one; hence* actor, *a plaintiff;* in hereditātem, *to claim;* cum popŭlo, *to treat with, to lay before;* decĭmum agit annum, *he is ten years old;* id agĭtur, *that is the question;* libertas agĭtur, *or* de libertāte, *is at stake;* actum est de libertāte, *is lost;* actum est, ilĭcet, *all is over;* actum est de pace, *was treated about;* cum illo benè actum est, *he has been lucky,* or *well used;* hoc age, *mind what you are about:* Civĭtas læta agĕre, *for* erat. Sall.

Adigere milĭtes sacramento, ad *or* in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, *to force to enlist;* arbĭtrum, *i. e.* agĕre *or* cogĕre alĭquem ad arbĭtrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration.* Cic.

Cogere copias, *to bring together;* ad militiam, *to force to enlist;* senātum, *to assemble;* in senātum, *sc.* minis, pignorĭbus captis, &c. *to force to attend;* agmen, *to rally, to bring up;* lac, *to curdle;* jus civīle diffūsum & dissipātum, in certa genĕra cogĕre, *to digest, to arrange.*

Exigere foras, *to drive out, to divorce;* alĭquid ab alĭquo, *to require;* sarta tecta, *sc.* et, *i. e.* sarta et tecta, ut sint benè reparāta, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation* Cic. supplicium, de alĭquo, *to inflict;* sua nomĭna, *to demand* or *call in one's debts;* ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend;* alĭquid ad normam, *to try* or *examine;* columnam ad perpendicŭlum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight;* monumentum, *to finish.* Hor. tempus & modum, *to settle.* Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off.* Ter.

Redigere alĭquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back;* pecuniam ex bonis vendĭtis, *to raise money;* hostes sub imperium, *to reduce.*

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along;* vela, *to furl the sails;* halĭtum, *to catch one's breath;* milĭtes, *to enlist;* alĭquem in senātum, in Patres, *to choose;* sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege.* Hor.

HO.

TRAHERE obsidiōnem, bellum, *to prolong;* purpŭras, *to spin;* alĭquid in religiōnem, *to scruple;* navem remulco, *to tow.*

Detrahere alíquem, *to draw down;* alĭcui *or* de alĭquo, de famâ, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame;* alíquid alĭcui, *to take by force;* laudem, *or* de laudĭbus: novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine.* Nep.

Extrahere diem, *to spin out, to spend;* certāmen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong.*

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrĭgis, &c. *riding in a chariot;* invĕhi in portum ex alto, *to enter;* in alĭquem, *to inveigh against;* provĕhi longiùs, *to proceed too far.*

LO

CONSULERE rem, *or* de re, *to consult about;* eum, *to ask his advice;* ei, *to consult for his good,* de salūte suâ; gravius in alĭquem, *to pass a severe sentence against;* in commūne, publĭcum, medium, *to provide for the common good;* verba boni, *to take in good part;* ego consŭlor, *my advice is asked:*

mihi consulĭtur, *my good is consulted;* mihi consultum ac provīsum est *for* a me, *I have taken care.* Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italiam, *or* classem, *to land on;* se alĭquò. Ter. ad villam nostram navis appellētur. Cic. anĭmum ad philosophiam, *to apply.*

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* eum: excellĕre aliis, super, inter, præter alios alĭquâ re *or* in re, *to excel.*

TOLLERE anĭmos suos, *to take courage;* anĭmos alĭcui, *to encourage;* alĭquem laudĭbus, *&* laudes ejus in astra, *to extol;* inducias, *to break a truce;* clamōres, *to cry;* filium, *to educate;* de *or* e medio, *to kill.*

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxōri, *to divorce;* annŭlum *or* equum equĭti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade.*

Dirimere litem, controversiam, *to determine.*

Eximere alĭquem servitio, noxæ e vincŭlis, a culpâ, de numĕro proscrīptōrum, obsidiōne, *to free;* de dolio, *to draw out;* diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking.*

Interimere se, *to kill.*

Redimere captīvos, *to ransom;* pecuaria de censorĭbus, *to take* or *farm the public pastures.*

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex *or* de eo, *to take;* pœnas, supplicium de alĭquo, *to punish;* pecunias mutuas, *to borrow;* togam virīlem, *to put on the dress of a man;* sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will;* opĕram in re *or* in rem insumĕre, *to bestow pains;* sumo tantum, *or* hoc mihi, *I take this upon me.*

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese;* vocem, *to be silent;* dolōrem corde, *to conceal;* vestigia ejus, *to follow;* littus, *to come near;* pollĭcem, *to save a gladiator;* librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing.* Hor.

Exprimere succum, *to press out;* risum alĭcui; pecuniam ab alĭquo, *to force from;* effigiem, *to draw to the life;* verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word.*

Imprimere alĭquid anĭmo, in anĭmo, *or* in anĭmum, *to imprint.*

Reprimere se, *&* reprendĕre *or* retinēre, *to check.*

NO.

PONERE spem in homine *or* re, *&* habēre; castra, *to pitch;* vitem, *to plant;* vitam, *to die;* ova, *to lay;* insidias alĭcui; panem convīvis, *not* ante; persōnam amīci, *to lay aside the character of a friend;* præmia, *to propose;* pocŭla, *to stake* or *lay;* studium, tempus, multum opĕræ in alĭquâ re, *to employ, to bestow;* alĭquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon;* ferocia corda, *to lay aside;* alĭquem in gratiam *or* gratiâ, *i. e.* effīcĕre gratiōsum apud altĕrum. Cic ventos, *to calm;* homĭnem colorĭbus, saxo, *to paint, engrave.* Hor. pecuniam in fœnŏre, *to lay out at interest;* templa, *to build.* Virg. Venti posuēre, *are hushed.* Virg. Pone esse victum eum. Ter. Posĭtum sit, *suppose, grant.* Cic.

Componere carmen, litĕras, &c. *to compose;* lites, *to settle;* bellum, *to finish by treaty;* parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare;* manus manĭbus, *to join.* Virg.

Deponere *or* ponĕre togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy;* imperium, *&* demittĕre, *to lay down a command.*

Exponere rem, *to set forth* or *explain;* frumentum, *to expose to sale.* Cic. puĕros, fœtus, *to leave to* perish. Liv. exercĭtum, *sc.* in terram, *to land.*

Imponere onus alĭcui *or* in alĭquem; alĭquem in equum, *to set upon;* persōnam *or* partes duriōres ei, *to lay a task* or *duty on one;* alĭcui, *to impose on, to deceive.* Nep. honōrem ei, *to confer;* vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail;* Nep. manum summam *or* extrēmam rei alĭcui, in alĭquâ re, *to fin-*

ish; pontem flumĭni, *to make a bridge.* Curt. Hoc loco libet interponěre, *to insert.* Nep.

Opponere se pericŭlis & ad pericŭla, *to expose;* pignŏri, *to pledge;* manum fronti, ante ocŭlos, *to put.* Ovid.

Proponere alĭquid sibi facĕre, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before:* edicta, legem in publĭcum, *i. e.* publĭcè legenda effigĕre; congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn* or *money.*

Supponere ova gallīnæ, *to set a hen;* testamentum, *or* subjicĕre, *to forge.*

CANERE alĭquem, *to praise;* signa, classĭcum, bellĭcum, *i. e.* ad arma conclamāre, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle;* receptui, *rarely* -um, *to sound a retreat;* tibiâ, *to play on the pipe;* ad tibiam, *to sing to it;* palinodiam, *to utter a recantation.*

STERNERE lectos, *to spread* or *cover the couches;* equos, *to harness;* viam, *to pave;* æquŏra, *to calm.* Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear;* somnos, quiētem, *to sleep;* viam iter, *to go.* Virg. opĕra alterius, *to censure;* labōres, virtūtes, *to diminish* or *obscure.* Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, *to violate;* vocem *or* silentium, *to speak.* Virg.

Erumpere ex tenĕbris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out;* stomăchum in alĭquem, *to vent passion;* nubem, *to break.* Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, *to seek* or *gain.* Cic. sermōnem, *to beat about for conversation.* Ter. rem mercatūris faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandise;* ex alĭquo, & in alĭquem, de re alĭquâ per tormenta, *to put to the rack;* in domĭnum de servo quæri noluĕrunt Romāni. Cic.

Inquirere alĭquid, *to search after;* alĭquem capĭtis, *or* -te, *to accuse* or *try for a capital crime*

GERERE res, *to perform;* negotium malè, *to manage;* consulātum, *to bear, to manage;* se benè *or* malè, *to behave;* exercĭtum, *to conduct.* Sallust. morem ei, *or* morigerāri, *to humour;* civem, se pro cive, persōnam alicūjus, *to pass for, to bear the character of;* inimicitias *or* simultātem cum alĭquo, *to be at enmity* or *variance with.*

Ingerere convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

Suggerere alĭquid ei, *to suggest, to hint;* sumptus his rebus, *to supply* or *afford:* Horatium Bruto, *to choose in place of, to put after.* Liv.

SERERE crimĭna in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

Conserere manus, manu, certāmen, pugnam, cum hostĭbus, inter se, *to engage.*

Asserere alĭquid, *to affirm;* alĭquem manu, ab injuriâ, in libertātem, *to free;* in servitūtem, *to reduce;* divīnam majestātem, *to claim.*

TO.

PETERE alĭquid alĭcui; id ab eo, *rarely* eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco. Cic. *to ask;* urbem Romam, murum, montes, *to go to, to make for;* alĭquem sagittâ, lapĭde, *to aim at;* consulātum pœnas ab alĭquo, repetĕre, *to punish.*

Competere anĭmo, *to be in one's senses;* in eum compĕtit actio, *an action lies against him.* Cic.

Repetere res, *to demand restitution;* bonâ lege, *or* prosĕqui, lite, *to recover by law;* castra, oppĭdum, huc, *to return to;* alĭquid memoriâ, *to call to mind;* altè, *to trace from the beginning.* Mihi nihil suppĕtit, multa suppĕtunt, *I have;* si vita suppĕtet, *if life shall remain.* Cic.

MITTERE alĭcui *or* ad alĭquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote;* aulæum, mappam, *to drop the curtain;* talos, *to throw the dice;* senātum, *to dismiss;* timōrem, *to lay aside;* in acta, *to register, to record;* sanguĭnem, *or* emittĕre, *to let blood;* noxam, *to forgive;* signa timōris, *to show;* vocem, *to utter, to speak;* habēnas, *or* remittĕre,

to slacken; manu, *or* emittĕre, *to free a slave;* filium emancipāre, *to free a son from the power of his father;* sub jugum, *to make to pass under the yoke;* inferias manĭbus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods;* rem *or* de re, *to omit;* mitto rem, *I say nothing of fortune.* Ter. in possessiōnem bonōrum, *to give the possession of the debtor's effects;* misit orāre, ut venīrem, *i. e.* alĭquem ad orandum. Ter.

Amittere litem *or* causam: vitam, fidem, lumĭna, aspectum, *to lose.* Cic.

Admittere in cubicŭlum, *to admit;* equum immittĕre, & permittĕre, *to gallop;* delictum in se, *to commit a fault;* aves non admisērunt, *have not given a favourable omen.* Liv.

Committere facĭnus, *to commit;* se alĭcui *or* in fidem alicūjus, *to intrust;* prælium, *to engage;* exercitum pugnæ, rem in casum ancipitis eventûs prælii, *to risk a battle.* Liv. iv. 27. alĭquem cum alĭquo, homĭnes inter se, *to set at variance or by the ears;* rem eò, *to bring to that pass;* gladiatōres, pugĭles, Græcos cum Latīnis, *to match* or *pair;* committĕre, ut, *to cause;* incommŏda sua legĭbus & judiciis, *to seek redress by law.*

Compromittere, Candidāti *compromisērunt*, H. S. quingēnis in singŭlos apud M. Catōnem deposĭtis, petĕre ejus arbitrātu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnarētur, *made a compromise* or *agreement, &c.*

Dimittere exercĭtum, *to disband;* uxōrem, & repudiāre, nuntium *or* repudium ad eam remittĕre, *to divorce.*

Promittere id ei, *to promise;* capillum, barbam, *to let grow.* Liv.

Permittere alĭcui, *to allow;* divis cætĕra, *to leave.* Horat. se in fidem *or* fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis popŭli, *to let the people decide;* tribunātum vexandis consulĭbus, *to give up, to employ.* Liv.

Remittere anĭmum, *to ease;* calces, tela, *to throw back;* ex pecuniâ, de supplicio, tribūto, &c. *to abate;* debĭtum, iras alĭcui, *to give up, to forgive;* justitium, *to discontinue;* pugnam, *to slacken,* remittit explorāre, *neglects.* Sall.

Submittere fasces popŭlo, *to lower;* se *or* anĭmum, *to submit, to humble;* percussōres alĭcui, *to suborn assassins.*

Transmittere in Afrĭcam, neut. *to pass over.*

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight;* terga, *to fly;* ab imo, *to overthrow;* solum, *to go into banishment;* id ei vitio, *or* crimĭni, *&* in crimen, *to blame;* in superbiam, *to impute;* Platōnem, Latīnè Græcâ, Græcâ *or* ex Græcis in Latĭnum, *to translate;* pollĭcem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb;* terram, *to plough;* cratēram, *to empty.* Virg. Stilum, *to correct.* Horat. Salus *or* causa in eo vertĭtur, *depends;* fortūna vertĕrat. Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year.* Nep. Res benè vertat, Di bene vertant, *prosper.*

Animadvertere id, *to observe;* in eum verberĭbus, morte, &c. *to punish.*

Advertere agmen urbi, *to bring up to.* Virg. oras, *to arrive at;* aures, mentes, anĭmum *or* anĭmo ad alĭquid, monĭtis, *to attend to;* in alĭquem, *oftener* animadvertĕre, *to punish.*

Antevertere ei, *to come before;* damnatiōnem venēno, *to prevent;* rem rei, *to prefer.* Plaut.

Intervertere pecuniam alicūjus, & alĭquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat;* candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer;* promissum & receptum, *sc.* Dolabellæ consulātum, intervertit, ad seque transtŭlit, *treacherously withheld.* Cic.

Prævertere, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip;* desiderium plebis, *to prevent;* metum supplicii morte voluntariâ. Liv. Alĭquid alĭcui rei, *to put before.* Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in

judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial;* nec sisti posse, *nor could the state be saved.* Liv.

Assistere ei, *to stand by;* ad fores; contra, super eum.

Consistere in digĭtos, *to stand on tiptoe;* in anchŏris, ad anchŏram, *to ride at anchor;* frigŏre, *to be frozen.* Ovid. Spes in velis consistēbat, *depended on;* virtus in actiōne consistit. Cic.

Insistere jacentĭbus, *to stand upon;* vestigiis ejus; viam, *or* viâ; in re aliquâ, in rem, *or* rei; in dolos, negotium. Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge.*

Obsistere ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

Resistere ei, *to resist.*

Subsistere, *to stand still;* sumptui, *to bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay;* versūrâ, *to pay a debt by borrowing from another.* Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise,* or, according to others, *to perform.* Ter. And. IV. 1. 19. litem æstimātam, *to pay the fine imposed on him.* Nep. Votum, *to discharge;* obsidiōnem urbis, *or* urbem obsidiōne, *to raise a siege;* navem, e portu, *to set sail;* epistŏlam, *or* resignāre, *to break open;* alĭquem legĭbus, legum, vincŭlis, *to free from;* solvĭtur in somnos. Virg. Oratio solūta, *i. e.* libĕra, numĕris non astricta & devincta, *prose;* solve metus, *dismiss.* Virg.

Dissolvere societātem, *to break.*

Resolvere vocem, *or* ora, *to break silence.* Virg. jura, *to violate;* vectīgal, *to take off taxes.* Tacit In pulvĕrem, *to reduce to.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE alĭquem, alĭquid ex *or* ab alĭquo, *to hear from one;* de alĭquo, *about one,* also *from one, as,* sæpè hoc audivi de patre, *for* ex patre. Cic. Audīre benè *or* malè apud socios, ab omnĭbus, *to be well spoken of, to have a good character;* rexque paterque audisti, *have been called.* Hor. Antigŏnus credit de suo adventu esse audītum. Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactiōnem, certāmen, manus, nihĭlum, &c. in suspiciōnem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law.* Liv. in circŭlum, *into a company.* Nep. Hærediītas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate;* ei usu venit, *happened.* Nep. Quod in buccam venĕrit, scribĭto, *occurs.* Cic.

Advenire & adventāre ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to.*

Antevenire alĭquem, & antevertĕre, Sall. rei. Plaut. tempus, consilia, & itinĕra, *to anticipate.*

Convenire in colloquium, fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to;* ego et frater conveniēmus, copiæ convenient, *will meet together;* convĕnit mihi cum fratre de hâc re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mēcum conveniunt, *I and my brother are agreed;* sævis inter se convĕnit ursis. Juv. Ipsi secum non convĕnit, *or* ipse, *he is inconsistent;* pax convĕnit, *or* conventa est, *is agreed upon;* rem conventūram putāmus. Cic. conditiōnes non convenērunt; mores conveniunt, *agree;* calcei pedĭbus *or* ad pedes conveniunt, *fit* or *suit;* hoc in illum convĕnit: Catilīnam interfectum esse convĕnit, *ought to have been slain.* Cic. Convenīre in manum, *the usual form of marriage, named* Coemptio, *whereby women were called* matresfamilias.

SENTIRE sonōrem, colōrem, &c. *to perceive;* cum alĭquo, *to be of one's opinion;* benè *or* malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him.*

Consentire tibi, tecum, inter se; alĭcui rei, de *or* in alĭquâ re; ad alĭquid peragendum, *to agree. So* dissentīre; & ab àlĭquo, *to disagree;* ne vita oratiōni dissentiat. Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess, to teach publicly;* se candidătum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office;* pecunias, agros, nomĭna, &c. apud censōrem, *to give an account of, to declare how much one has;* indicium, *to promise to make a discovery.*

LOQUI cum alĭquo, inter se; *sometimes* alĭcui, ad *or* apud alĭquem; alĭquid, de alĭquâ re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsăris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assĕqui, consĕqui, *to overtake;* gloriam, *to attain.* Consĕqui hereditātem, *to get.* Cic.

Prosequi alĭquem amōre, laudĭbus, &c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubĭtum, *to lean*, ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on;* ad gloriam, ad *or* in summam, *to aim at;* in vetĭtum, in adversum, contra alĭquem, pro alĭquo, *to strive;* gradĭbus, *to ascend.*

UTI eo familiarĭter, *to be familiar with one;* ventis adversis, *to have cross winds;* honōre usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni robŏris, *or* -no -re; ejus opiniōnis *or* eâ opiniōne; in maxĭmâ spe; in timōre, luctu, opiniōne, itinĕre, &c.; cum telo, in *or* cum imperio; magno pericŭlo, *or* in pericŭlo; in tuto; apud se, *in his senses;* sui juris, *or* mancipii, sui potens, *or* in suâ potestāte, *to be at his own disposal:* Res est in vado, *is safe.* Ter. Est anĭmus, *sc.* mihi, *I have a mind.* Virg. Est ut, cur, quamŏbrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause;* benè malè est mihi, *with me;* nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you:* Quid est tibi, *sc.* rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernĕre erat, *one might see;* religio est mihi id facĕre, *I scruple to do it;* si est, ut facĕre velit, ut factūrus sit, ut admisĕrit, &c. *for* si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordĭnet arbusta sulcis, *it happens.* Hor. Certum est facĕre, *sc.* mihi, *I am resolved.* Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain.* Id. Cassius quærĕre solèbat, Cui bono fuerit: Omnĭbus bono fuit, *it was of advantage.* Cic.

Adesse pugnæ, in pugnâ, ad exercĭtum, ad tempus, in tempŏre, cum alĭquo, *to be present;* alĭcui, *to favour, to assist;* scribendo, *or* esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate.* Cic. consilio utrīque, *to be a counsellor to.* Nep.

Abesse domo, urbe, a domo ab signis, *to be absent;* alĭcui, *or* deesse, *to be wanting, not to assist;* a sole, *to stand out of the sun;* sumptus funĕri defuit, *he had not money to bury him.* Liv. abesse a persōnâ princĭpis, *to be inconsistent with the character.* Nep. Paulum *or* parum abfuit quin urbem capĕrent, quin occiderĕtur, &c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne enervĕtur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditāte pecuniæ, a societāte scelĕris, &c. Nep.

Interesse convivio, *or* in convivio, *to be at a feast:* anni decem interfuĕrunt, *intervened;* stulto intellĭgens quid intĕrest. Ter. Hoc domĭnus & pater intĕrest. Id. Inter homĭnem & bel'uam hoc interest. Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference;* multum intĕrest, utrum, *it is of great importance.* Pons inter eos intĕrest, *is between.* Cic.

Præesse exercitui, *to command,* comitiis, judicio, quæstiōni, *to preside in* or *at.*

Obesse ei, *to hurt, to hinder.*

Superesse, *to be over and above;* alĭcui, *to survive;* modò vita super

sit, *sc.* mihi, *if I live;* supĕrest, ut, *it remains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war;* in jus, *to go to law;* pedĭbus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with;* viam *or* viâ; res benè eunt. Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis, *it passes.*

Abire magistrātu, *to lay down an office;* a conspectu, *to retire from company;* in ora homĭnum, *to be in every body's mouth;* ab emptiōne, *to retract his bargain;* decem menses abiĕrunt, *have past.* Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abībit, *i. e.* non feres hoc impūne. Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation.*

Adire pericŭlum capĭtis, *to run the hazard of one's life.*

Exire vitâ, e, *or* de vitâ, *to die;* ære aliēno. Cic. Verbum exit ex ore. Id. tela, *to avoid.* Virg. Tempus induciārum cum Vejenti popŭlo exiĕrat, *had expired.* Liv.

Inire magistrātum; suffragium, ratiōnem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin;* gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *or* ab eo, *to gain his favour:* Ineunte æstāte, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of; but we seldom say,* Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætāte, *from our early years.*

Obire diem edicti, *or* auctiōnis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at;* provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through.* Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legatiōnem, sacra, *to perform;* pugnas. Virg. mortem, *or* morte; diem suprēmum, *or* diem, *to die;*

Præire alĭcui, *to go before;* verba, carmen, *or* sacramentum alĭcui, *to repeat* or *read over before;* alicui voce, quid judícet, *to prescribe,* or *direct by crying.* Cic.

Prodire in publĭcum, *to go abroad;* non prætĕrit te, *you are not ignorant.* Cic. Dies induciārum præteriit, *is past.* Nep.

Redire in gratiam cum alĭquo, *to become friends again;* ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses.*

Subire murum *or* -o, ad montes, *to come up to;* labōrem *or* -i, onus, pœnam, pericŭlum, crimen, *to undergo;* spes, timor subiit animum, *came into.*

VELLE alĭquem, *sc.* allŏqui *or* conventum, *to desire to speak with;* alĭcui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good;* tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negātum volo, *I wish to deny.* Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facĕre, hoc a te fiĕri; si quid rectè curātum velis; illos monĭtos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc.* esse, *I will admonish them again and again.* Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done;* nollem huc exĭtum, *sc.* esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here.* Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose* or *make;* privilegium de alĭquo, *to propose* or *pass an act of impeachment against one.* Cic. rogatiōnem ad popŭlum, *to bring in a bill;* conditiōnes ei, *to offer terms;* suffragium, *to vote;* sententiam, *to give an opinion;* centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of;* perdĕre, *to lose it;* victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes,* repulsam, *to be rejected;* fructum, hoc fructi, *to reap.* Ter. lætitiam de re, *to rejoice;* præ se, *to pretend* or *declare openly;* aliēnam persōnam, *to disguise one's self;* in ocŭlis, *to be fond of.* Ter. manus, in prælia, *to engage.* Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic. anĭmus, opinio fert, *inclines;* tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires.*

Conferre benevolentiam alĭcui, in *or* erga alĭquem, *to show;* beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay;* opĕram, tempus, studium ad *or* in rem, & impendĕre, *to apply;* capĭta inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult;* signa, arma, manus, *to engage;* omne bellum circa Corinthum. Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot;* ratiōnes, *to cast up accounts;* castra castris, *to encamp over against one another;* se in *or* ad urbem, *to go to;* tri-

būta, *to pay;* se alĭcui *or* cum alĭquo, *to compare;* nemĭnem cum illo conferendum pietāte puto. Cic. Hæc confĕrunt ad alĭquid; oratōri futūro, *serve, are useful to.* Quinct.

Deferre sitŭlam *or* sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box;* alĭquid ad alĭquem, *to carry word, to tell; rarely* alĭcui; causam ad patrōnos; honōres ei; gubernacŭla reipublĭcæ in eum; summam rērum ad eum, *to confer;* in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service.* Cic. alĭquem ambĭtûs, de ambĭtu, nomen alicujus ad prætōrem, apud magistrātum, *to accuse of bribery;* primas, *sc.* partes ei, *to give him the preference.* Cic.

Differre *or* transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutiōnis, *to put off;* rumōres, *to spread;* ab alĭquo, alĭcui, inter se, morĭbus, *to differ in character;* amōre, cupiditāte, dolorĭbus, differri, *to be distracted* or *torn asunder.* Cic. & Ter.

Efferre fruges, *to produce;* verba, *to utter;* verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate.* Ter. pedem domo, *to go out;* corpus amplo funĕre, & cum funĕre, *to bury;* ad honōrem, ad cœlum laudĭbus, *to praise, to extol;* foras peccātum, *to divulge.*

Inferre bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alĭcui, *to bring upon;* signa, se, pedem, *to advance;* litem, *or* pericŭlum capĭtis alĭcui *or* in alĭquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life.*

Offerre se morti, ad mortem, in discrīmen, *to expose, to present.*

Perferre legem, *to carry through, to pass.*

Præferre facem ei, *to carry before;* salūtem reipublĭcæ suis commŏdis & anteferre, anteponĕre, *to prefer.* Prælātus equo, *riding before.*

Proferre imperium, pomœrium, termĭnos, *to enlarge;* in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish;* nuptias, diem, *to delay;* diem Ilio, *to defer the destruction of.* Hor.

Referre alĭcui, *to answer;* se, gradum, *or* pedem, *to retreat;* gratiam alĭcui, *to make a requital;* par pari. Ter. victoriam ab *or* ex alĭquo, & reportāre, *to gain;* institūtum, *to renew;* judicia ad Equestrem ordĭnem, *to restore to the Equĭtes the right of judging;* alĭquid, de alĭquâ re, ad senātum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad popŭlum, *to lay before;* alĭquid in tabŭlam, codĭcem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down;* alĭquid acceptum alĭcui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted;* pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomĭna *or* summas in codĭcem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts;* aliēnos mores ad suos, *to judge of by;* in *or* inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class;* in numĕrum deōrum, in *or* inter deos, & repōnĕre, *to rank among;* pugnas, res gestas, *to relate;* patrem ore, *to resemble;* amissos colōres, *to regain.* Hor.

Transferre ratiōnes in tabŭlas, *to post one's books, to state accounts;* in Latīnam linguam, *to translate;* verba, *to use metaphorically;* culpam in eum, & rejicĕre, *to lay the blame on him.*

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleŏnasm*, and *Hyperbăton*.

The two first respect the constituent part of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis is the want of one or more words to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhĭbent*, scil. *homĭnes*. *Abĕrant bidui*, sc. *iter* or *itinĕre*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, the figure is called Asyndĕton; as, *Deus optĭmus maxĭmus*, sc. *et*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of Enallăge, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; Antiptōsis, i. e. the putting of one case for another; Hellĕnism or Græcism, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; Synĕsis, i. e. referring the construction, not to the grammatical gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.; thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia* (homĭnum) *Samnitium* (fuĕrunt homĭnes) *cæsi*. Liv. So *Servitia immemŏres*.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his stvle is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

Pleŏnasm is the addition of a word more than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video ocŭlis*, I see with my eyes. *Sic ore locūta est*, Thus she spoke with her mouth. Virg.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, the figure is called Polysyndĕton; as, *Unà Eurusque Notusque ruunt*. Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, the figure is called Hendiădys; as, *Patĕris libāmus et auro*, for *aureis patĕris*. Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, the figure is called Periphrăsis; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*. Virg. *Res voluptātum*, for *voluptātes*. Plaut.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBĂTON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words, which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are *Anastrŏphe, Hystĕron protĕron, Hypallăge, Synchĕsis, Tmesis,* and *Parenthĕsis.*

1. ANASTRŎPHE is an inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii;* for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem, &c.* Virg. *Terram sol facit are,* for *are-facit.* Lucret.

2. HYSTĔRON PROTĔRON is the placing in the former part of the sentence that which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit,* for *vivit atque valet.* Ter.

3. HYPALLĂGE is an exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classĭbus austros,* for *dare classes austris.* Virg.

4. SYNCHĔSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Ităli mediis quæ in fluctĭbus aras;* for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctĭbus Ităli vocant aras.* Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruōrem.* Ovid. Fast. ii. 841.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word, and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta triōni gens,* for *Septentriōni.* Virg. *Quæ meo cunque anĭmo libĭtum est facĕre,* for *quæcunque.* Ter.

6. PARENTHĔSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Titўre, dum redeo,* (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas.* Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words, which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Da-*

rium, or *Darīum vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darīum vicit*, or *Darīum Alexander vicit;* and in each instance the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius.* This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd.* Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given is to *imitate the* Classics.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial;* or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial.*

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analȳsis*, or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next* the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence; supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igĭtur, mi Cicĕro, tibique persuāde esse te quidem mihi carissĭmum; sed multo fore cariōrem, si talĭbus monumentis præceptisque latabĕre. Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igĭtur, mi* (fili) *Cicĕro*, (tu) *vale:* 2. *et* (tu) *persuāde tibi* (ipsi) *te esse quidem* (filium) *carissĭmum mihi:* 3. *sed* (tu persuāde tibi ipsi te) *fore* (filium) *cariōrem* (mihi in) *multo* (negotio): 4. *si* (tu) *lætabĕre talĭbus monumentis:* 5. *et* (si tu lætabĕre talibus) *præceptis.*

1. Fare (*you*) well then, my (*son*) Cicero: 2. and assure (*you*) yourself that you are indeed (*a son*) very dear to me: 3. but (*assure you yourself that you*) shall be (*a son*) much dearer (*to me*): 4. if you shall take delight in such writings: 5. and (*if you shall take delight in such*) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igĭtur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu;* Fare (*thou*) well: second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *valeo, valēre, valui, valĭtum*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igĭtur, then, therefore; a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicĕro*, by Rule 2. *Cicĕro*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicĕro, -ōnis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and; a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuāde* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 59. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Peruāde, scil. *tu*, persuade thou; second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -dēre, -si, -sum*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *suadeo, -si, -sum*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadētur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however, in the third person, *Hoc persuadētur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuāde*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum, esse, fui*, to be.

Quidem, indeed; an adverb, joined with *carissĭmum* or *esse*.

Carissĭmum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissĭmus, -a, -um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus, -a, -um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior, carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me; dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissĭmum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but; an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futūrum*, to be *or* to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *fōrem, -res, -ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse* and *fore*. See Rule 59.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus, -a, -um*, much, put in the ablative, according to Observation 5. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariōrem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior, -us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before · agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, if; a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. Obs. 2.

Lætabĕre, thou shalt rejoice; second person singular of the fûture of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor, lætātus, lætāri*, to rejoice: Future, *læt-ābor, -ābĕris* or *-abĕre, -ābitur*, &c.

Talĭbus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis, tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum, -ti*, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *moneo, -ēre, -ui, -ĭtum*, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum, -ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio, -cipĕre, -cēpi, -ceptum*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capio, capĕre, cēpi, captum*, to take. The *ă* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus *præcĭpio, præcĭpis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflection of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? *or* of you? *Tui*. With thee *or* you? *Te*. Of you? *Vestrûm* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadēbunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*. or much more frequently *possum persuadēre*. They are persuaded? *Persuadētur* or *persuāsum est illis;* according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasūrus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebĭtur*, or *persuāsum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuadēri illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuadēri illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Ei persuāsum iri*.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different

subjects; together with the various turns of thought and ex pression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric.*

IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style *(genĕra dicendi)* are commonly reckoned three; the low, *(humĭle, submissum, tenue;)* the middle, *(medium, temperātum, ornātum, florĭdum;)* and the sublime, *(sublīme, grande.)*

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise;* the *feeble* and *nervous;* the *simple* and *affected,* &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects, and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner;* as the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style *(virtus oratiōnis)* is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity,* in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety,* or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision,* in opposition to superfluity of words, or a *loose style.*

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness,* in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity:* 2. *Unity* and *Strength,* in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate* and *feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony,* or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style *(vitia oratiōnis)* are distinguished by various names:

1. A BARBARISM is the using of a foreign or strange word; *as, croftus,* for *agellus; rigorōsus,* for *rigĭdus* or *sevērus; alterāre,* for *mutāre,* &c. Or, a transgression of the rules of

Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody; as, *charus*, for *carus; stavi*, for *steti; tibĭcen*, for *tibīcen*.

2. A SOLŒCISM is a transgression of the rules of Syntax; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri: We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIŎTISM is the using of a manner of expression peculiar to one language in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribĕre*, for *ego sum scriptūrus;* It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum:* Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me; for *than I; Quem dicunt me esse?* Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLŎGY is a useless repetition of the same words, or of the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is the using of high sounding words without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLŎGY is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacĭde, Romānos vincĕre posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures *(figūræ* or *schemăta)* are of two kinds; figures of words *(figūræ verbōrum,)* and figures of thought *(figūræ sententiārum.)* The former are properly called *Tropes;* and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope (conversio)* is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metăphor*, *Metonўmy*, *Synecdŏche*, and *Irŏny*.

1. METĂPHOR *(translatio)* is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something

to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyfu* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life;* or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* or *Adagia;*) thus, *In silvam ligna ferre.* Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, the figure is called *Catachrēsis* (*abusio;*) as, *a* leaf *of paper, of gold, &c.; the empire* flourished; *parricīda*, for any murderer. Vir *gregis ipse caper.* Virg. *Altum* ædifĭcant *caput.* Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum* propīno, for *trado.* Ter. *Eurus per Sicŭlas* equităvit *undas.* Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is said to be done by *Syllepsis, (comprehensio;)* as, *Galatēa thymo mihi* dulcior *Hyblæ.* Virg. *Ego Sardōis videar tibi* amarior *herbis.* Id.

2. METONY̆MY (*mutatio nomĭnis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:

1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the author for his works; as *Boum labōres*, for *corn; Mars*, for *war; Ceres*, for *grain* or *bread; Bacchus*, for *wine.* Virg. *Cicero, Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works.*

2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallĭda mors*, *pale* death, because it makes pale; *atra cura, &c.*

3. The container for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit patĕram*, for *vinum.* Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *his drink.*

4. The sign for the thing signified; as, The *crown*, for *royal authority; palma* or *laurus*, for *victory*; Cedant arma

togæ, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concēdat paci.*

5. An abstract for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus.* Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*. Cic. *Vires*, for *strong men.* Hor.

6. The parts of the body for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address;* as, *habet cor; vir cordātus*, a man of sense. Plaut. But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart, a warm heart.*

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, this form of expression is called *Metalepsis, (transmutatio;)* thus, *desiderāri*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead, lost*, or *absent:* So, *Fuĭmus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more. Virg. Æn. ii. 325.

3. SYNECDŎCHE *(comprehensio* or *conceptio)* is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as,

1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortāles*, for *homĭnes; summa arbor*, for *summa pars arbŏris; tectum*, the roof, for the whole house. Virg.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis, miles, pedes, eques*, for *hostes, &c.*

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, the figure is called *Antonomasia (pronominatio;)* as the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle;* the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero;* the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil;* the *Wise man*, for *Solomon.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrăsis;* as, *Pelŏpis parens*, for *Tantălus; Anўti reus*, for *Socrătes; Trojāni belli scriptor*, for *Homērus; Chirōnis alumnus*, for *Achilles; Potor Rhodăni*, for *Gallus.* Hor. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatālis et incestus judex, famōsus hospes*, for *Paris.* Hor.

4. IRŎNY is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *He is a Virgil;* or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cœlo cecĭdit Cato.*

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM; as, *Satia te sanguĭne, Cyre.* Justin. Hesperiam *metīre jacens.* Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is

called Litŏtes; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense; Non humĭlis mulier*, for *nobĭlis* or *superba.*

When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, this contrariety is called Antiphrăsis; as, *auri* sacra *fames*, for *execrabĭlis*. Virg. *Pontus* Euxīni *falso nomĭne dictus*, i. e. *hospitālis*. Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, the figure is called Euphemismus; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus; conclamāre suos*, to give up for lost. Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant; mactāre* or *ferīre*, for *occidĕre;* Fecērunt id *servi Milōnis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facĕre voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecērunt*. Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrăsis.*

The Periphrăsis, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, the figure is called a *Paraphrase.*

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, this imitation is called *Onomatopœïa, (nomĭnis fictio;)* as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the abovementioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know, in general, that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiōre notâ Falerni*, with a glass of *old Falernian wine: Ad umbilĭcum ducĕre*, to bring to a conclusion. Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words.* Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHŎRA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littŏre secum, Te veniente die, te decedente canēbat.* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTRŎPHE, or *Conversio*; as, *Pœnos Popŭlus Romānus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitāte vicit.* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLŎCE, or *Complexio;* as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidĭmus victoriam tuam prœliōrum exĭtu terminātum; gladium vagīnâ vacuum in urbe non vidĭmus.* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLŌSIS, or *Reduplicatio;* as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit! imo in senātum venit.* Cic.

When that, which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANŎDOS, or *Regressio;* as, *Crudēlis tu quoque mater; Crudēlis mater magis an puer imprŏbus ille? Imprŏbus ille puer, crudēlis tu quoque mater.* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called EPIZEUXIS; as, *Excitāte, excitāte eum ab infĕris.* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, me, adsum qui feci, in me convertĭte ferrum.* Virg. *Bella, horrĭda bella.* Id. *Ibĭmus, ibĭmus.* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX, or *Gradatio;* as, *Africāno virtūtem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria æmŭlos comparāvit.* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTŌTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientûm voces, plena exemplōrum vetustas.* Cic. *Littŏra littorĭbus contraria, fluctĭbus undas imprĕcor, arma armis.* Virg.

To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam.* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo.* Id. And also EXPOSITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLĀSIS; as, *Amāri jucundum est, si curētur ne quid insit amāri.* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonārum artium, bonārum partium; Consul pravo anĭmo & parvo: de oratōre arātor factus.* Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes.* Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOIOPTŌTON, i. e *similĭter cadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritāte, circumfluit opĭbus, abundat amicis.* Cic. If the

words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMOIOTELEUTON, i. e. *similĭter desĭnens;* as, *Non ejusdem est facĕre fortĭter, & vivĕre turpĭter.* Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbŏle, Prosopopœïa, Apostrŏphe, Simĭle, Antithĕsis, &c.*

1. HYPERBŎLE is the magnifying of a thing above the truth; as, when Virgil, speaking of *Polyphēmus*, says, *Ipse arduus, altaque pulsat sidĕra.* So, *Contracta pisces æquŏra sentiunt.* Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapcinōsis.* The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast.*

2. PROSOPOPŒIA, or *Personification,* is a figure by which we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilīna, sic agit, &c.* Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secūres.* Hor. *Arbŏre nunc aquas culpante.* Id.

3. APOSTRŎPHE, or *Address,* is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it, as, *Trojăque nunc* stares, *Priamīque arx alta manēres.* Virg.

4. SIMĬLE, or *Comparison,* is a figure by which one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another: as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. ANTITHĔSIS, or *Opposition,* is a figure by which things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentiâ magnus habebātur, integritāte vitæ Cato, &c.* Sall. Cat. 54.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis,*) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem, &c.* Cic. *Credĭtis avectos hostes?* Virg. *Heu! quæ me æquŏra possunt accipĕre.* Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subjectio;* as, *Quid ergo? audacissĭmus ego ex omnĭbus? minĭme.* Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation,* when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION *(Ecphonēsis)* is a sudden expression of some passion or emotion; as, *O nomen dulce libertātis*, &c. Cic. *O tempŏra, O mores!* Id. *O patria! O Divûm domus Ilium!* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, *(Hypotypōsis,)* is the painting of any thing in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision;* as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem vidēre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Vidēre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecōro pulvĕre sordĭdos.* Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.

9. EMPHĂSIS is a particular stress of voice laid on some word in a sentence; as Hannĭbal *peto pacem*. Liv. *Proh! Jupĭter ibit* HIC! *i. e.* Æneas. Virg.

10. EPANORTHŌSIS, or *Correction*, is the recalling or correcting by the speaker of what he last said; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habēre me? imò habui.* Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is the pretending to omit, or pass by, what one at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is the branching out into several parts of what might be expressed in fewer words.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

> ——————*Faces in castra tulissem,*
> *Implēssemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque*
> *Cum genere extinxēm, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is the rising of one member above another to the highest; as, *Facĭnus est vincīre civem Romānum, scelus verberāre, parricidium necāre.* Cic.

When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXĒSIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION *(Metabăsis)* is an abrupt introduction of a speech; or the passing of a writer suddenly from one subject to another; as, Hor. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, *a change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustentatio*, is the keeping of the mind of the hearer long in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilĕgus*, &c. *at est bonus imperātor.* Cic. in Verrem, v. 1.

PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is the starting and answering of an objection.

ANACOINŌSIS, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*.

LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more *freedom* than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformīdem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario.

APOSIOPĒSIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego —— sed præstat motos componĕre fluctus*. Virg.

18. SENTENTIA (*Gnome*) a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine litĕris mors est*. Seneca. *Adeò in tenĕris assuescĕre multum est*. Virg. *Probĭtas laudātur et alget; Misĕra est magni custodia censûs; Nobilĭtas sola est atque unĭca virtus.* Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper for the learner to know the parts into which a regular, formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium*, or *Proœmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication:* 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation*, or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

PROSODY.

1 Prosody is that part of grammar which teaches the proper *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, the right *pronunciation* of words, and the structure of verses.

2. *Accent* is a peculiar stress of the voice on some syllable in a word, to distinguish it from the others.

3. The *quantity* of a syllable is the space of time used in pronouncing it.

4. Syllables, with respect to their *quantity*, are either *long*, *short*, or *common*.

5. A *long* syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a *short* one; as, *tēndĕrĕ*.

6. A syllable that is sometimes long, and sometimes short, is *common;* as the second syllable in *volucris*.

7. A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

8. In polysyllables, or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult;* and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*, or *Antepenult*.

9. When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority;* that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlĕgo, perlēgi; relĕgo, -ĕre; relēgo, -āre*, &c.

RULES FOR THE QUANTITY.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mĕus*, *alĭus*: so *nĭhil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *crĕate*, *bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīēbam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*: as, *fĭĕri*, *fĭĕrem*; thus,

Omnia jam fīent, fĭĕri quæ posse negābam. *Ovid.*

Exc. 2. *E*, having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, *&c.* in *Pompēi* *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Hor. Od.* ii. 7. 5.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diāna* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, *ullius*, *nullius*, *&c.* to be read long in prose. *Alīus*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliius*; *alterĭus*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, Danăe, Idĕa, Sophĭa, Symphonĭa, Simŏis, Hy̆ădes, Phăon, Deucalĭon, Pygmalĭon, Thebăis, &c.

Often it is long; as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Pandīon; Nāis, Lāis, Achāïa; Brisēis, Cadmēis; Latōus & Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēïus, Priamēïus; Achelōïus, Minōïus; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Æneās, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darīus, Basilīus, Eugenīus, Bacchīus; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chœronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clīo, Enȳo, Elegīa, Iphigenīa, Alexandrīa, Thalīa, Antiochīa, idololatrīa, litanīa, politīa, &c. Lāertes, Dēïphŏbus, Dēïănīra, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malea, Nereïdes, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphĕa*, *Salmonĕa*, *Capharĕa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomenēa*, *Ilionēa*. Virg. Instead of *Elegīa*, *Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēïa*, *Cythērēïa*. Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot properly be understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *scīence*, *idēa*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by position, as it is called;*) as, *ārma, fāllo, āxis, gāza, mājor;* the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bĭjŭgus, quadrĭjŭgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date telā, scandĭte muros. Virg.

A short vowel at the end of a word, when followed by a word beginning with *sc, sp, sq, st,* is usually lengthened.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ;* thus,

> Et primò simĭlis volŭcri, mox vera volūcris. *Ovid.*
> Nox tenĕbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. *Id.*

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.*

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. 1. The vowel must be naturally short; 2. the mute must go before the liquid; and, 3. be in the same syllable with it. Thus *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris,* is always long, because long by nature or *custom* in *mater* and *acer.* In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum,* is always long; because they are derived from *salus, salūtis,* and *ambulātum.* So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as, *Nīl,* for *nihil; mî,* for *mihi; cōgo,* for *coăgo; alīus,* for *aliius; tibīcen,* for *tibiicen; ît,* for *iit; sōdes,* for *si audes; nōlo,* for *non volo; bīgæ,* for *bijŭgæ; scīlĭcet,* for *scire licet, &c.*

IV. A diphthong is always long; as, *Aurum, Cæsar, Eubœa, &c.* Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus;* thus,

> Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg. Æ.* 5, 186.
> Stipitĭbus duris agĭtur sudibusque præustis. *Ib.* 7, 524.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

> ——— cùm vacuus domìno præīret Arīon. *Theb.* 6, 519.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bĭbi, scĭdi* from *scindo, fĭdi* from *findo, tŭli, dĕdi,* and *stĕti,* which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Except *sătum,* from *sĕro; cĭtum,* from *cico; lĭtum,* from *lino; sĭtum,* from *sĭno; stătum,* from *sisto; ĭtum,* from *eo; dătum,* from *do; rŭtum,* from the compounds of *ruo; quĭtum,* from *queo; rătus,* from *reor.*

Preterites which double the first Syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi: except *cĕcīdi,* from *cædo; pĕpēdi,* from *pēdo;* and when two consonants intervene; as, *fĕfelli, tĕtendi, pĕpendi, mŏmordi,* &c.

Other verbs of two syllables in the preterite and supine retain the quantity of the present; except *pŏsui, pŏsĭtum,* from *pōno; pŏtui,* from *possum; sŏlūtum* and *vŏlūtum,* from *solvo* and *volvo.*

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, rēgis; sermo, sermōnis; interpres, interprĕtis.* Here *re, mo, pre,* is each called the *increase* or *crement,* and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a *crement.*

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinĕris; anceps, ancĭpĭtis.*

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, genĕri; genĕrōrum; regĭbus, sermonĭbus,* &c.

Except nouns of the *first, fourth,* and *fifth* declensions, which do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructŭi; res, rĕi;* and falls under Rule I. These nouns are considered as increasing in the plural, and come under Rule IX.

Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the crement; as, *tener, tenĕri; vir, vĭri; duumvir, -vĭri; satur, satŭri;* except *Iber,* a Spaniard, *Ibēri;* and its compound *Celtibēri.*

CREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i,* and *u* short; as,

Pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive of the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

Nouns in A shorten *ătis,* in the genitive; as, *dogma, -ătis; poēma, -ătis.*

O.

O shortens *ĭnis,* but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis;* as, *Cardo, -ĭnis; Virgo, -ĭnis; Anio, -ēnis; Cicero, -ōnis.* Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macĕdo, -ŏnis; Saxo, -ŏnis.* So, *Lingŏnes, Senŏnes, Teutŏnes,* or *-ŏni, Vangiŏnes, Vascŏnes.* Some are long; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes. Brittones* is common; it is shortened by Juvenal, 15, 124, and lengthened by Martial, 11, 21, 9.

I. C. D. L.

I shortens *itis;* as, *Hydromĕli, -ĭtis. Ec* lengthens *ecis;* as, *Halec, -ēcis.*

Nouns in D shorten the crement; as, *David, -ĭdis; Bogud, -ŭdis.*—Ecclesiastical poets often lengthen *Davidis.*

Masculines in AL shorten *alis;* as, *Sal, sălis; Hannĭbal, -ălis; Hasdrŭbal, -ălis;* but neuters lengthen it; as, *anĭmal, -ālis.*

Sōlis from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el;* as, *Michael, -ēlis.* Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as *Vigil, -ĭlis; consul, -ŭlis.*

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helĭcon, -ōnis; Chiron, -ōnis.* Some shorten it; as, *Memnon, -ŏnis; Actæon, -ŏnis.*

EN shortens *inis;* as, *flumen, -ĭnis; tibĭcen, -ĭnis.* Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis;* as, *Titan, -ānis:* EN *ēnis;* as, *Siren, -ēnis:* IN *īnis;* as, *delphin, -īnis:* YN *ȳnis;* as, *Phorcyn, -ȳnis.*

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris;* as, *calcar, -āris.* Except the following: *bacchar, -ăris; jubar, -ăris; nectar, -ăris:* Also the adjective *par, păris,* and its compounds, *impar, -ăris, dispar, -ăris,* &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive; *Nar, Nāris,* the name of a river; *fur, fūris; ver, vēris:* Also *Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris,* proper names; and *Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris,* names of people or states.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris;* as, *crater, -ēris; character, -ēris.* Except *æther, -ĕris.*

4. OR lengthens *oris;* as, *amor, -ōris.* Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ŏris; æquor, -ŏris:* Greek nouns in *tor;* as, *Hector, -ŏris; Actor, -ŏris; rhetor, -ŏris.* Also, *arbor, -ŏris,* and *memor, -ŏris.*

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *ăris,* masc.; as, *Cæsar, -ăris; Hamilcar, -ăris; lar, lăris.* ER *ĕris* of any gender; as, *aër, aĕris; mulier, -ĕris; cadāver, -ĕris; iter,* anciently *itĭner, itinĕris; verbĕris,* from the obsolete *verber.* UR *ŭris;* as, *vultur, -ŭris; murmur, -ŭris.* YR *y̆ris;* as *Martyr, -y̆ris.*

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis,* lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis; Mæcēnas, -ātis.* Except *anas, -ătis.*

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as Greek nouns having the genitive in *ădis, ătis,* and *ănis;* thus *Pallas, -ădis; artocreas, -eătis; Melas, -ănis,* the name of a river. So *vas, vădis; mas, măris.* But *vas, vāsis* is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles, -ĭtis; Ceres, -ĕris; pes, pĕdis.*

Except *locŭples, -ētis; quies, -ētis; mansues, -ētis; hæres, -ēdis; merces, -ēdis:* also Greek nouns; as, *lebes, -ētis; Thales, -ētis.*

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis, -ĭdis; sanguis, -ĭnis; Phyllis, -ĭdis; cinis, cinĕris.*

Except *Glis, glīris;* and Latin nouns which have *ītis;* as, *lis, lītis; dis, dītis; Quiris, -ītis; Samnis, -ītis.* But *Charis,* a Greek noun, has *Charĭtis.*

The following also lengthen the crement: *Crenis, -īdis, Psophis, -īdis, Nesis, -īdis,* proper names. And Greek nouns in *is,* which have also *in,* as, *Salămis* or *-in, Salamīnis.*

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -ōtis; flos, flōris.*

Except *Bos, bŏvis; compos, -ŏtis;* and *impos, -ŏtis.*

US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus, -ŏris; vellus, -ĕris; tripus, -ŏdis.*

Except nouns which have *ūdis, ūris,* and *ūtis;* as, *incus, -ūdis; jus, jūris; salus, -ūtis.* But *Ligus* has *Ligŭris;* the obsolete *pecus, pecŭdis;* and *intercus, -ŭtis.*

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris;* as, *melius, -ōris.*

YS.

YS shortens *y̆dis* or *y̆dos;* as, *chlamys, -y̆dis* or *-y̆dos;* and lengthens *ȳnis;* as, *Trachys, -ȳnis.*

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as *cælebs, -ĭbis; inops, -ŏpis; hiems, hiĕmis; auceps, aucŭpis; Dolops, -ŏpis;* also *anceps, ancĭpitis; biceps, bicĭpĭtis;* and similar compounds of *caput.*

Except *Cyclops, -ōpis; seps, sēpis; gryps, grȳphis; Cercops, -ōpis; plebs, plēbis; hydrops, -ōpis.*

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput, -ĭtis:* so *sinciput, -ĭtis.*

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux, -ŭgis; remex, -ĭgis; Allobrox, -ŏgis; Phryx, Phrўgis*. But *lex, lēgis;* and *rex, rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis; vertex, -ĭcis:* except *vibex* or *vibix, -īcis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax, pācis; radix, -īcis; vox, vōcis; lux, lūcis; Pollux, -ūcis*, &c.

Except *făcis, nĕcis, vĭcis, prĕcis, calĭcis, cilĭcis, pĭcis, fornĭcis, nĭvis, Cappadŏcis, dŭcis, nŭcis, crŭcis, trŭcis, onўchis, Erўcis, mastyx, -ўchis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or mastich tree; and many others, the quantity of which can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax, -ācis*, or *-ăcis; Sandyx, -īcis*, or *-ĭcis; Bebryx, -ўcis*, or *-ȳcis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A, E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U;* as,

musārum, rērum, dominōrum; rēgĭbus, portŭbus; except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bŏvĭbus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement:* for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas, amābāmĭni;* in which case it is said to have a *first, second*, or *third increase.*

X. In the increase of verbs, *a, e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

The poets sometimes shorten *dĕdĕrunt* and *stĕtĕrunt;* and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as —— *transierītis aquas*. Ovid. DO, with its compounds, is the only verb of the first conjugation that shortens the first crement, but not the second; as, *dăre, dămus, dăbam*, &c. *circumdăre, -ămus, -ătis, -ăbam, -ăbāmus, -ăbo, -ărem; -ăris, -ătur*, &c. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority;* and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

Remarks on the Quantity of the Penult of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes, Atlantiădes,* &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus;* as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes,* &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE,* and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Æneīs, Memphītis, Latōis, Icariōtis, Nerīne, Acrisiōne.* Except *Thebăis,* and *Phocăis;* and *Nereïs,* which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS, ICUS, IDUS,* and *IMUS,* for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus;* also superlatives; as, *fortissĭmus,* &c. Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, antīcus, postīcus, fīdus, infīdus,* (but *perfĭdus,* of *per* and *fĭdes,* is short,) *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus;* and two superlatives, *īmus, prīmus.*

4. Adjectives in *ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS,* lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arenōsus.* Except *barbărus, opipărus.*

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agĭlis, facĭlis,* &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, herīlis,* &c. To these add, *exīlis, subtīlis;* and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quinctīlis, Sextīlis:* Except *humĭlis, parĭlis;* and also *simĭlis.* But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versătĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis, plicatĭlis, fluviatĭlis, saxatĭlis,* &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS,* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus; adamantĭnus, crystallĭnus, crastĭnus, pristĭnus, perendĭnus, carĭnus, annotĭnus,* &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus, canīnus, leporīnus, bīnus, trīnus, quīnus, austrīnus, clandestīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vespertīnus,* &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM;* and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM,* always shorten the penult; as, *urceŏlus, filiŏla, musæŏlum; lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum,* &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātim, virītim, tribūtim.* Except *affătim, perpĕtim,* and *stătim.*

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esŭrio, esŭris, esŭrit.* But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris,* &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult: Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristīdes, Aristobūlus, Aristogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīci, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabālus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Messāla, Messāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Polītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sardanapālus, Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Thessalonīca; Verōna, Veronīca

The following are short: Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabăsis, Anticȳra, Antigŏnus & -ne, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Anȳtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimĭnum, Arměnus, Athĕsis, Attălus, Attĭca; Bitŭrix, Bructĕri; Calăber, Callicrătes, Callistrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chrysostŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomĕnes, Corȳcos, Constantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Cratȳlus, Cremĕra, Crustumĕri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus: Dalmătæ, Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didȳmus, Dĭogĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephĕsus, Evĕrgĕtes, Eumĕnes, Eurymĕdon, Euripȳlus; Fucĭnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecȳra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Hesiŏdus, Hesiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta, Hypănis; Icărus, Icĕtas, Illȳris, Iphĭtus, Ismărus, Ithăca; Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamȳrus, Lapĭthæ, Lucretĭlis, Libănus, Lipăre *or* -a, Lysimăchus, Longimănus; Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmărica, Massagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megăra, Melĭtus & -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutĭna, Mycŏnus; Neŏcles, Nerĭtos, Norĭcum; Omphăle; Patăra, Pegăsus, Pharnăces, Pisistrătus, Polydămus, Polyxĕna, Porsĕna *or* Porsenna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Pylădes, Pythagŏras; Sarmătæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni & -a, Sisȳphus, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongȳle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygĕtus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco. Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomȳris; Urbĭcus; Venĕti, Vologĕsus, Volŭsus; Xenocrătes; Zoĭlus, Zopȳrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*. Lucan. *Batăvi*. Juv. & Mart. *Fortuĭtus*. Hor. *Fortuītas*. Martial. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuĭtus*. Stat. *Patrimus, matrimus, præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă, templă, Tydeă, lampădă.*

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musâ, Ænēâ;* and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as;* as, *O Ænēā, O Pallā*

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā.*

Exc. *Ită, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută,* (adv.), are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contră, ultră,* and the compounds of *ginta;* as, *trigintă,* &c. *Contra* and *ultra,* when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

Natĕ, sedīlĕ, ipsĕ, currĕ, possĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē;* except these enclitic conjunctions, *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ;* and these syllabical adjections, *ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ;* as, *suaptĕ, hujuscĕ, tutĕ;* but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions are long; as, *Calliŏpē, Anchīsē, fidē.* So, *rē* and *diē,* with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidiē:* Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē, melē, Tempē;* and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docē, manē;* but *cave, vale,* and *vide,* are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placĭdē, pulchrē, valdē,* contracted for *valĭdē:* To these add *fermē, ferē,* and *ohē;* also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissĭmē, fortissĭmē:* But *benĕ* and *malĕ, infernĕ, supernĕ,* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long; as, *Domĭnī, patrī, docērī.*

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexĭ, Amaryllĭ.*

Exc. 2. The dative of Greeks nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common; as, *Pallădi, Minoĭdi.*

Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi;* and *cui,* when a dissyllable, which is seldom the case. *Sicŭtĭ, sicŭbĭ,* and *necŭbĭ,* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō.* The dative and ablative singular of the second declension are

long; as, *librō, domĭnō:* Also Greek nouns, as *Didō, Sapphō,* and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos;* and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To these add *quō, eō,* and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō;* likewise *illō, idcircō, citrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Exc. 2. The following words are short; *Egŏ, sciŏ, cedŏ,* a defective verb, *homŏ, citŏ, illĭcŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ,* with its compounds, *quomŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, postmŏdŏ:* but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergô,* on account of, is long; *ergo,* therefore, is doubtful.

U and *Y.*

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū; Molў.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R,* and *T,* in the end of a word, are short; as, *ăb, apŭd, semĕl, precŏr, capŭt.*

The following words are long; *sāl, sōl, nīl, pār* and its compounds, *impār, dispār,* &c.; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr;* also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr;* likewise *aēr, æthēr:* to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl;* but *David, Bogud,* &c. are common.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Milĭtŭm octo.* Ennius. But, by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo;* except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo, circŭmeo.*

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N,* in the end of a word, are long; as, *āc, sīc, illūc; splēn, ēn, nōn,* &c.

So Greek nouns in *n;* as, *Tītān, Sirēn, Salămīn; Ænēān, Anchīsēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn,* &c.

The following words are short; *nĕc* and *donĕc: Forsĭtăn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, vidĕn;* likewise nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive; as *carmĕn, crimĕn;* also the nom. and accus. sing. of Greek nouns in *on,* when written with a small *o* (ο μικρόν), as, *Iliŏn, Pylŏn, Erotiŏn;* and the accusative, if the termination of the nominative be short; as, *Maïăn, Æginăn, Orpheŏn, Alexĭn, Ibĭn, chelўn:* so the dative plural in *sin;* as, *Arcăsĭn, Troăsĭn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES,* and *OS,* in the end of a word, are long, as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are short; *anăs, ĕs,* from *sum,* and *penĕs; ŏs,* having *ossis* in the genitive, *compŏs,* and *impŏs;* also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcăs* and *Arcădăs, hcrōăs, Phrygĕs, Arcădŏs, Tenĕdŏs, Mĕlŏs,* &c. and Latin nouns in *es,* having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alĕs, hebĕs, obsĕs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs,* and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US,* and *YS,* in the end of a word, are short; as,

Turrĭs, legĭs, legĭmŭs, annŭs, Capȳs.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnîs,* for *omnes, fructûs, manûs;* also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portûs.* But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *florĭbŭs, fructĭbŭs, rebŭs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis,* or *entis;* as, *līs, Samnīs, Salămīs, Simŏīs:* To these add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs;* the noun *glīs,* and *vīs,* whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītis;* as, *audīs, abīs, possīs. Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is lengthened by Ovid, Fast. 1, 17. but it is always shortened by Horace, Od. 4, 7, 20. Sat. 1, 4, 41. 2, 3, 220. 2, 6, 39. Art. 47.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs:* also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis,* or *ŏdis;* as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, Amăthūs, tripūs.* To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ending in *o;* as, *Cliûs, Sapphûs, Mantûs;* also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs:*—so *Iēsūs.*

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys,* which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs* or *Phorcȳn,* and *Trachȳs* or *Trachȳn.*

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause *or suspension* of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Ămīcus,	*from*	ămo.	Decŏro,	*from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,		auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,		exul, -ŭlis.
Auctōro,		auctor, -ōris.	Păvĭdus,		păveo.
Audītor,		audītum.	Quirīto,		Quirīs, -ītis.
Auspĭcor,		auspex, -ĭcis.	Radīcĭtus,		radix, -īcis
Caupōnor,		caupo, -ōnis.	Sospĭto,		sospes, -ĭtis.
Compĕtītor,		compĕtītum.	Nātūra,		nātus.
Cornīcor,		cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,		māter.
Custōdio,		custos, -ōdis.	Lĕgēbam, *&c.*		lĕgo.
Decōrus,		decor, ōris.	Lēgĕram, *&c.*		lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from Short.*

Dēni, *from*	dĕcem.	Suspīcio, *from*	suspĭcor.	Mōbĭlis, *from*	mŏveo.
Fōmes,	fŏveo.	Sēdes,	sĕdeo.	Hūmor,	hŭmus.
Hūmānus,	hŏmo.	Sēcius,	sĕcus.	Jūmentum,	jŭvo.
Rēgŭla,	rĕgo.	Pēnūria,	pĕnus.	Vox, vōcis,	vŏco, *&c.*

2. *Short from Long.*

Ărēna *and* ărista, *from*	āreo.	Lŭcerna, *from*	lūceo.
Nŏta *and* nŏto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ŭcis,	dūco.
Vădum,	vādo.	Stăbĭlis,	stābam.
Fĭdes,	fīdo.	Dĭtio,	dis, dītis.
Sŏpor,	sōpio.	Quăsillus,	quālus, *&c.*

II. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco.* So *prōfĕro, antĕfĕro, consōlor dēnŏto, dēpecŭlor, deprāvo, despēro, despūmo, desquāmo, ēnōdo, ērŭdio, exsūdo, exăro, expăveo, incēro, inhŭmo, investīgo, prægrăvo, prænăto, rĕgĕlo, appăro, appāreo, concăvus, prægrăvis, dēsōlo, suffōco* & *suffŏco; diffĭdit* from *diffindo,* and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo; indĭco, -āre,* and *indīco, -ĕre; permănet* from *permăneo,* and *permānet* from *permāno; effŏdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so, *exĕdit* and *exēdit; devĕnit* and *devēnit; devĕnīmus* and *devēnīmus; reperīmus* and *reperĭmus; effŭgit* and *effūgit,* &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incĭdo* from *in* and *cădo*; *incīdo, from in and cædo; suffōco,* from *sub* and *faux, faucis.* Un-

less the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ădmitto, percĕllo, dĕoscŭlor, prŏhibeo.*

Exc. *Agnĭtum, cognĭtum, dējĕro, pējĕro, innŭba, pronŭba, malediĭcus, veridĭcus, nihĭlum, semisōpītus;* from *nōtus, jūro, nūbo, dīco, hīlum,* and *sōpio; ambītus,* a participle from *ambio,* is long; but the substantives *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Obs. 1. The preposition *PRO* in Greek words, for *ante,* before, is short; as, *prŏphēta, prŏlŏgus:* PRO in Latin words is long; as, *prōdo, prōmitto,* &c. but it is short in the following words: *prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfŭgus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏfestus, prŏfāri, prŏfiteor, prŏfānus, prŏfecto, prŏcella, prŏtervus,* and *prŏpāgo,* a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo,* a vine-stock, *or* shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful; *propāgo,* to propagate; *propīno, profundo, propello, propulso, procūro,* and *Proserpĭna.*

Obs. 2. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpăro, dīvello;* except *dĭrĭmo, dĭsertus. Re* is short; as, *rĕmitto, rĕfĕro:* except in the impersonal verb *rēfert,* compounded of *res* and *fero.*

Obs. 3. *I* and *O,* in the end of the former compounding word, are usually shortened; as, *Caprĭcornus, omnĭpŏtens, agrĭcŏla, signĭfĭco, bĭformis, alĭger, Trĭvia, tubĭcen, vatĭcĭnor, archĭtectus, bimĕter, trimĕter,* &c. *duŏdĕcim, hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus, Arctŏphўlax, Argŏnauta, bibliŏthēca, philŏsŏphus,* &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem,* &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludīmagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis,* &c. —or when a contraction is made by *Crasis* or *Syncŏpe;* as, *trīgæ,* for *trijŭgæ; īlĭcet,* for *īre licet,* &c.—So in the compounds of *dies,* as, *bīduum, trīduum, merīdies, prīdie, postrīdie;* but the second syllable is sometimes shortened in *quotidie* & *quotidiānus. Idem* in the masc. is long, (in the neuter short;) also *ubīque, ibīdem.* But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque,* the *i* is doubtful.

O is lengthened in the compounds of *intro, retro, contro,* and *quando;* as, *intrōdūco, intrōmitto, retrōcēdo, retrōgrădus, contrōversus, contrōversia, quandōque, quandōcunque;* but *quandŏquĭdem* has the second syllable short. *O* is also long in *aliōquin, cæterōquin, utrōbīque:* So likewise in Greek words, written with a large *o,* or ω μέγα; as, *geōmetra, Mīnōtaurus, lagōpus.*

Obs. 4. *A* in the former compounding part of a word is long; as,

quăre, quăpropter, quăcunque; So, *trādo, trādūco, trāno,* for *transno, &c.* *Eădem* is short, except in the abl. sing. *eādem.*

E is short; as, *nĕfas, nĕfastus, nĕfandus, nĕfarius, nĕque, nĕqueo; trĕdĕcim, trĕcenti, ĕquĭdem, sĕlibra, valĕdīco, madĕfacio, tĕpĕfacio, patĕfacio,* &c. *hujuscĕmŏdi, ejuscĕmŏdi*—Except *sēdĕcim, sēmodius, nēquis, nēquam, nēquitia, nēquando, nēmo, crēdo, mēmet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum; venēfĭcus, vidēlĭcet.*

U also is short; as, *dŭcenti, dŭpondium; quadrŭpes, centŭplum, Trojŭgĕna, cornŭpĕta;* but *jūdĭco* is long.—Y likewise in Greek words is short; as, *Polȳdōrus, Polȳdămas, Polȳphēmus, Dorȳphŏrus.*

VERSE.

A Verse is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet.*

A verse is divided into different feet, both to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, and to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūră,* which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two Syllables.*

Spondēus, consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs.*
Pyrrhichius, two short; as, *dĕŭs.*
Iambus, a short and a long; as, *ămāns.*
Trochæus or *Chorēus,* a long and a short; as, *sērvŭs.*

2. *Feet of three Syllables.*

Dactȳlus, a long and two short; as, *scrībĕrĕ.*
Anapæstus, two short and a long; as, *pĭĕtās.*
Amphimăcer, a long, a short, and a long; as *chārĭtās.*
Tribrăchys, three short; as, *dŏmĭnŭs.*

The following are not so much used:

Molossus,	*dēlēctānt.*	Dispondēus,	*ōrātōrēs.*
Amphibrăchys,	*hŏnōrĕ.*	Dijambus,	*ămœnĭtās.*
Bacchīus,	*dŏlōrēs.*	Choriambus,	*pōntĭfĭcēs.*
Antibacchīus,	*pēlūntŭr.*	Dichorēus,	*Cāntĭlēnă.*
		Antispastus,	*Ălēxāndĕr.*

3. *Feet of four Syllables.*

Proceleusmatĭcus,	*hŏmĭnĭbŭs.*	Ionĭcus minor,	*prŏpĕrābānt.*
		Ionĭcus major,	*cālcārĭbŭs.*

Pæon primus,	*tĕmpŏrĭbŭs.*	Epitrītus primus,	*vŏlūptātēs.*
Pæon secundus,	*pŏtĕntĭă.*	Epitrītus secundus,	*pœnĭtēntēs.*
Pæon tertius,	*ănĭmātŭs.*	Epitrītus tertius,	*dīscōrdĭās.*
Pæon quartus,	*cĕlĕrĭtās.*	Epitrītus quartus,	*fōrtūnātŭs.*

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse: if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectĭcus*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectĭcus*, or *Hypermĕter*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausŭla*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexamĕter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lēm călă- | mō pĕr- | mīsĭt ă- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Infān- | dŭm Rē- | gīnă jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondāic;* as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sōbŏ- | lēs mă- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mĕrcŭrī- | ō sĭmĭ- | lĭs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque.
Et flavos crines——

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi. Virg

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

> Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
> Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
> Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
> Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the CÆSURA.

Cæsūra is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

> At rē-gīnă gră-vī jam-dudum, &c.

The *cæsūra* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimĕris:* when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris:* when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimĕris:* and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennečmimĕris.*

All these different species of the *cæsūra* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

> Illĕ lă-tūs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hy̆ă-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *cæsūra* is the penthĕmim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed; whence they call it the *cæsūral pause;* as,

> Tityre, dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsūra* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsūra.* Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

> Rōmæ mœnĭă tĕrrŭĭt īmpĭgĕr Hānnĭbăl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just

pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentamĕter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third, always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quīs- | quĕ sŭæ. *Propert.*
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕīs. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr | sēmĭnă | quīsquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbŭs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 1, 1.

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsūra; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ătă- | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbŭs.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtŭm. *Hor. Od.* 1, 3, 5.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; *thus,*

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ | crēdĭtŭm.

5. SAPPHIC AND ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, a spondee, a dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gĕr vī- | tæ, scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 1.

An Adonian, or Adonic verse consists only of a dactyle and a spondee; as,

Jūpĭtĕr | ūrgĕt. *Hor. ibid. v.* 20.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, a dactyle, and a spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquŏră | vēntīs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 5, 7.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmūm | nĕc mĕtŭ- | ās dĭ- | ēm, nĕc | ōptĕs. *Martial,* 10, 47. f.

8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcāic, called likewise *Dactȳlic,* consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsūra, then two dactyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpūl- | sæ | nēscĭă | sōrdĭdæ
Intā- | mĭnā- | tīs | fūlgĕt hŏ- | nōrĭbŭs. *Hor. Od.* 3, 2, 17.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or an iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsūra; as,

Nĕc sū- | mĭt, aūt | pōnit | sĕcū- | rēs. *Hor. ibid.*

10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactȳlic Alcāic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ō pŏpŭ- | lārĭs | aūræ. *Ibid.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named

from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochāic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimĕter;* the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimĕter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimĕter *quaternarius*, and the trimĕter *senarius*.

Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimĕter, Inăr- | sĭt æ- | stŭō- | sĭūs. *Hor.*
Trimĕter, Sŭis | ĕt ī- | psă Rō- | mă vī- | rĭbūs | rŭĭt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrăchys. We also find a tribrăchys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimĕter, Cānĭdĭ- | ă trāc- | tāvīt | dăpēs. *Hor.*
Vīdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- | rāntēs | dŏmūm. *Id.*
Trimĕter, Quōquō | scĕlēs- | tī rūl- | tĭs aūt | cūr dēx- | tĕrīs. *Id.*
Păvīdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aūt ād- | vĕnām | lăquĕō | grŭēm. *Id.*
Alĭtĭ- | bŭs āt- | quĕ cănĭ- | bŭs hŏmĭ- | cīd' Hēc- | tŏrēm. *Id.*

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetramĕter* or *Octonarius.*

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, Systŏle,* and *Diastŏle.*

1. Synalœpha is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēnti- | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbant.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô, heu, ah, proh, væ, vah, hei;* as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto. *Id.*
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. *Id.*
Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

2. Ecthlipsis is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbūs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspĭcit; r' Ardua.*

3. Synærĕsis is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis;* as, *Phæthon* for *Phaĕthon.* So *eï* in *Thesei, Orphei, deinde, Pompei; uï* in *huic, cui; oï* in *proinde; ëâ* in *aureâ;* thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*
Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*
Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*
Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antĕhac, eadem, alvearia, deest, deĕrit, vehĕmens, anteit eōdem, alveo, graveolentis, omnia, semianĭmis, semihŏmo, fluviōrum, totius, promontorium,* &c. as,

Unâ eàdemque viâ sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*
Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. Od.* 1, 35, 17.
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*
Inde ubi venĕre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*
Bis patriæ cecidĕre manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genvă, tenvis, arjĕtat, tenvia, abjĕte, pitvīta, parjetĭbus, Nasidjēnus;* for *genua, tenuis,* &c.; as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
Arjetat in portas et duros objice postes. *Id.*
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
Parjetibusque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

4 DIÆRĔSIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulāi,* for *aulæ; Troïæ,* for *Trojæ; Persĕus,* for *Perseus; milŭus,* for *milvus; solŭit,* for *solvit; volŭit,* for *volvit; aqŭæ, sŭetus, sŭasit, Sŭevos, relangŭit, reliqŭas,* for *aquæ, suetus,* &c.; as,

Aulaï in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
Stamina non ulli dissolŭenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
Debuerant fusos evolŭisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
Quæ calidum faciunt aqŭæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque sŭetæ. *Hor.*
Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque sŭadent. *Lucr.*
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sŭevos. *Lucan.*
Imposito fratri moribunda relangŭit ore. *Ovid.*
Reliqŭas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis: *Lucr.*

5. SYSTŎLE makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulĕrunt;* thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E.* 4. 61.

6. DIASTŎLE makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Considant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg. Æ.* 11. 323.

To the above may be added the following, which, though

chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

FIGURES OF DICTION.

1. *Prosthĕsis** prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnavus* for *navus*. In Latin there are but few examples of this, but in Greek they abound; as, ἔειπε for εἶπε, ὄρωρα for ὥρα.

2. *Epenthĕsis*† inserts something in the middle; as, *rettŭlit* for *retŭlit*, μαχεσσάμενος for μαχεσάμενος.

3. *Paragōge*‡ adds to the end; as, *dicier* for *dici*, τουτονί for τοῦτον.

4. *Aphærĕsis*§ takes away from the beginning; as, *conia* for *ciconia*. Of this, also, examples are rare in Latin, but frequent in Greek; as, ἦ for ἔφη. *Il.* 1. 219.

5. *Syncŏpe*‖ takes out something from the middle; as, *peccâsse* for *peccavisse*, ἔβαν for ἔβησαν.

6. *Apocŏpe*¶ takes from the end; as *pecūlî* for *peculii*, δῶ for δῶμα. *Il.* 1. 426.

7. *Metathĕsis*** transposes letters; as *pistris* for *pristis*, ἔδρακον for ἔδαρκον, 2. *a. of* δέρκω.

8. *Antithĕsis*†† changes one letter for another; as *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *olli* for *illi*, ξύν for σύν.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poēma* or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: a poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram is called its *Point*. A poem expressing

---

* Πρόσθεσις, *adjectio*; προστίθημι, *addo*, to prefix.
† Ἐπένθεσις, *insertio*; ἐπεντίθημι, *insĕro in medium*, to insert.
‡ Παραγωγή, *productio*; παράγω, *prodūco*, to lengthen out.
§ Ἀφαίρεσις, *ablatio*; ἀφαιρέω, *aufĕro*, to take away.
‖ Συγκοπή, from συγκόπτω, *concīdo*, to cut out.
¶ Ἀποκοπή, *amputatio*; ἀποκόπτω, *ampŭto*, to cut off.
** Μετάθεσις, *transpositio*; the change of places.
†† From ἀντί, *instead of*, and τίθημι, to place.

the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA OR RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cœl I,
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E;
S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V,
S olem justitiæ S ese probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic, Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphōses, Lucan, Silius Italĭcus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexamĕter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON, sc. *poēma* or *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode;* that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICŌLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is

called DICŌLON DISTRŎPHON;* as when a single Pentamĕter is alternately placed after an HEXAMĔTĔR; which is named *Elegīac verse*, (carmen Elegīăcum,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

> Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;
> Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrŏphon;* when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrŏphon;* as,

> Auream quisquis mediocritatem
> Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
> Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
> Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrŏphon;* but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetrastrŏphon;* as, when after two greater dactylic Alcaic verses are subjoined an Archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic Alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatiānum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

> Virtus recludens immeritis mori
> Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
> Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
> Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

HORACE uses *twenty* different species of metre, combining them in *nineteen* different ways, and of course forming *nineteen* different stanzas. These are as follow, arranged according to the order of preference given them by the poet:—

No 1. The stanza of four lines. The first two are *greater Alcaic*,† measured thus: a spondee or iambus, an iambus with a cæsūra, then two dactyles; as,

> Vĭdēs ŭt āltă stĕt nĭvĕ cāndĭdŭm.
> | | | |

* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means *a turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

† From *Alcæus*, a famous poet of Lesbos, whom Horace frequently celebrates.

Pæon primus,	*tĕmpŏrĭbŭs.*	Epitrītus primus,	*vŏlūptātēs.*
Pæon secundus,	*pŏtĕntĭă.*	Epitrītus secundus,	*pœnĭtēntēs.*
Pæon tertius,	*ănĭmātŭs.*	Epitrītus tertius,	*dīscōrdĭās.*
Pæon quartus,	*cĕlĕrĭtās.*	Epitrītus quartus,	*fōrtūnātŭs.*

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning.*

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus* or *Acatalectĭcus*, an Acatalectic verse : if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectĭcus*: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectĭcus*, or *Hypermĕter.*

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausŭla.*

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexamĕter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vēl- | lēm călă- | mō pĕr- | mīsĭt ă- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnă jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrĕm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondāic;* as,

Cără Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mērcūrĭ- | ō sĭmĭ- | līs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmque.
Et flavos crines——

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere, quæ vellem, calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre, tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi. Virg.

It is esteemed a great beauty in a hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
Illi inter sese magnâ vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum. *Id.*
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention, in scanning hexameter verse, is the CÆSURA.

Cæsūra is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rĕ-gīnă gră-vī jam-dudum, &c.

The *cæsūra* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimĕris:* when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris:* when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimĕris:* and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Enneëmimĕris.*

All these different species of the *cæsūra* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illĕ lă-tūs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hyă-cĭnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *cæsūra* is the penthĕmim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice, in reading a hexameter verse thus composed; whence they call it the *cæsūral pause;* as,

Tityre, dum redeO, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *cæsūra* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of a hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *cæsūra.* Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ mœnĭă tĕrrŭĭt ĭmpĭgĕr Hānnĭbăl ărmĭs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They observed not only the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just

pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse, as has been before observed.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentamĕter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third, always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquī- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quīs- | quĕ sŭæ. *Propert.*
Cărmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕĭs. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsūra; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsūra; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquī- | tūr | sēmĭnă | quīsquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | īs.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gĭbŭs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 1, 1.

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsūra; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ătă- | vīs | ēdĭtĕ | rēgĭbŭs.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtŭm. *Hor. Od.* 1, 3, 5.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; *thus,*

Nāvīs | quæ tĭbĭ | crēdĭtŭm.

5. SAPPHIC AND ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, a spondee, a dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gĕr vī- | tæ, scĕlĕ- | rīsquĕ | pūrŭs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 22, 1.

An Adonian, or Adonic verse consists only of a dactyle and a spondee; as,

Jūpĭtĕr | ūrgēt. *Hor. ibid. v.* 20.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, a dactyle, and a spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquŏrā | vēntīs. *Hor. Od.* 1, 5, 7.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmūm | nēc mĕtŭ- | ās dĭ- | ēm, nĕc | ōptĕs. *Martial,* 10, 47. f.

8. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcāic, called likewise *Dactўlic,* consists of four feet, a spondee or iāmbus, iambus and cæsūra, then two dactyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpūl- | sæ | nēscĭă | sōrdĭdæ
Intā- | mĭnā- | tīs | fūlgĕt hŏ- | nōrĭbŭs. *Hor. Od.* 3, 2, 17.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian Iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or an iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsūra; as,

Nēc sū- | mĭt, aūt | pōnit | sĕcū- | rēs. *Hor. ibid.*

10. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactўlic Alcāic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ō pŏpŭ- | lārĭs | aūræ. *Ibid.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named

from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochāic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimĕter;* the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimĕter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimĕter *quaternarius*, and the trimĕter *senarius*.

Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimĕter, Inăr- | sĭt æ- | stŭō- | sĭūs. *Hor.*
Trimĕter, Sŭis | ĕt ī- | psă Rō- | mă vī- | rĭbūs | rŭīt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrăchys. We also find a tribrăchys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimĕter, Cănĭdĭ- | ă trāc- | tāvĭt | dăpēs. *Hor.*
Vĭdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- | rāntēs | dŏmŭm. *Id.*
Trimĕter, Quōquō | scĕlēs- | tī rŭī- | tĭs aūt | cūr dĕx- | tĕrīs. *Id.*
Păvĭdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aūt ăd- | vĕnām | lăquĕō | grŭĕm. *Id.*
Alĭtĭ- | būs āt- | quĕ cănĭ- | būs hŏmĭ- | cīd' Hĕc- | tŏrēm. *Id.*

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetramĕter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words, to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha, Ecthlipsis, Synærĕsis, Diærĕsis, Systŏle,* and *Diastŏle*.

1. Synalœpha is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ēr' ōm- | nēs in- | tēnti- | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto. *Id.*
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam. *Id.*
Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ. *Id.*

2. Ecthlipsis is the cutting off of *m*, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbūs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspĭcit; r' Ardua.*

3. Synærĕsis is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon* for *Phaëthon.* So *eï* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *uï* in *huic*, *cui*; *oï* in *proinde*; *ëâ* in *aureâ*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*
Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*
Filius huic contrà, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*
Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antĕhac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deĕrit*, *vehĕmens*, *anteit* *eōdem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianĭmis*, *semihŏmo*, *fluviōrum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguis animusque sequuntur. *Virg.*
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*
Divitis uber agri, Trojæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*
Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*
Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor. Od.* 1, 35, 17.
Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, et jam se condidit alveo. *Virg.*
Inde ubi venĕre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*
Bis patriæ cecidêre manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*
Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as, in *genvă, tenvis, arjĕtat, tenvia, abjĕte, pitvīta, parjetĭbus, Nasidjēnus;* for *genua, tenuis,* &c.; as,

Propterea quia corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
Arjetat in portas et duros objice postes. *Id.*
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
Parjetibusque premunt arctis, et quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

4 Diærĕsis divides one syllable into two; as, *aulaï,* for *aulæ; Troïæ,* for *Trojæ; Persëus,* for *Perseus; milüus,* for *milvus; solüit,* for *solvit; volüit,* for *volvit; aqüæ, süetus, süasit, Süevos, relangüit, reliqüas,* for *aquæ, suetus,* &c.; as,

Aulaï in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
Stamina non ulli dissolüenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
Debuerant fusos evolüisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
Quæ calidum faciünt aqüæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque süetæ. *Hor.*
Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque süadent. *Lucr.*
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Süevos. *Lucan.*
Imposito fratri moribunda relangüit ore. *Ovid.*
Reliqüas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. Systŏle makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *tulĕrunt;* thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt fastidia menses. *Virg. E.* 4. 61.

6. Diastŏle makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *amor* in the following verse:

Considant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg. Æ.* 11. 323.

To the above may be added the following, which, though

chiefly used by the poets, often occur in prose; and are called

FIGURES OF DICTION.

1. *Prosthĕsis** prefixes a letter or syllable; as, *gnavus* for *navus*. In Latin there are but few examples of this, but in Greek they abound; as, ἔειπε for εἶπε, ὄρωρα for ὦρα.

2. *Epenthĕsis*† inserts something in the middle; as, *rettŭlit* for *retŭlit*, μαχεσσάμενος for μαχεσάμενος.

3. *Paragōge*‡ adds to the end; as, *dicier* for *dici*, τουτονὶ for τοῦτον.

4. *Aphærĕsis*§ takes away from the beginning; as, *conia* for *ciconia*. Of this, also, examples are rare in Latin, but frequent in Greek; as, ἦ for ἔφη. *Il.* 1. 219.

5. *Syncŏpe*‖ takes out something from the middle; as, *peccâsse* for *peccavisse*, ἔβαν for ἔβησαν.

6. *Apocŏpe*¶ takes from the end; as *pecūlî* for *peculii*, δῶ for δῶμα. *Il.* 1. 426.

7. *Metathĕsis*** transposes letters; as *pistris* for *pristis*, ἔδρακον for ἔδαρκον, 2. *a. of* δέρκω.

8. *Antithĕsis*†† changes one letter for another; as *faciundum* for *faciendum*, *olli* for *illi*, ξύν for σύν.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem* (*Poēma* or *Carmen.*)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A short poem, adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems:* a poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram is called its *Point.* A poem expressing

---

* Πρόσθεσις, *adjectio;* προστίθημι, *addo*, to prefix.
† Ἐπένθεσις, *insertio;* ἐπεντίθημι, *insĕro in medium*, to insert.
‡ Παραγωγή, *productio;* παράγω, *prodūco*, to lengthen out.
§ Ἀφαίρεσις, *ablatio;* ἀφαιρέω, *aufĕro*, to take away.
‖ Συγκοπή, from συγκόπτω, *concīdo*, to cut out.
¶ Ἀποκοπή, *amputatio;* ἀποκόπτω, *ampŭto*, to cut off.
** Μετάθεσις, *transpositio;* the change of places.
†† From ἀντὶ, *instead of*, and τίθημι, to place.

the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:

I *nter cuncta micans* I *gniti sidera cœl* I,
E *xpellit tenebras* E *toto Phœbus ut orb* E;
S *ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra* S,
V *ivificansque simul* V *ero præcordia mot* V,
S *olem justitiæ* S *ese probat esse beati* S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle,) and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue; to which may be added *Pastoral Poems*, or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great, illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphōses, Lucan, Silius Italĭcus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use the Hexamĕter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem, which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON, sc. *poēma* or *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verse, TRICŌLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is

called Dicōlon Distrŏphon;* as when a single Pentamĕter is alternately placed after an Hexamĕtĕr; which is named *Elegīac verse*, (carmen Elegīăcum,) because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegēia, solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicōlon Tristrŏphon;* when after four lines, *Dicōlon Tetrastrŏphon;* as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricōlon Tristrŏphon;* but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricōlon Tetrastrŏphon;* as, when after two greater dactylic Alcaic verses are subjoined an Archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic Alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatiānum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

THE VARIOUS COMBINATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT METRES USED BY HORACE.

Horace uses *twenty* different species of metre, combining them in *nineteen* different ways, and of course forming *nineteen* different stanzas. These are as follow, arranged according to the order of preference given them by the poet:—

No 1. The stanza of four lines. The first two are *greater Alcaic*,† measured thus: a spondee or iambus, an iambus with a cæsūra, then two dactyles; as,

Vĭdēs ŭt āltă stēt nĭvĕ cāndĭdŭm.
| | | |

* A *Strophe* or *Stanza* includes as many lines as are necessary to show all the different kinds of measure in an ode. It is called *Strophe*, which in Greek literally means *a turning*, because at the end of it, you turn back to the same kind of verse with which you began.

† From *Alcæus*, a famous poet of Lesbos, whom Horace frequently celebrates.

The third line is *Archilochiăn*,* measured thus: the first and third feet are spondees or iambi; the second and fourth, iambi, with a cæsūra remaining; as,

Sīlvæ lăbōrāntēs gĕlūque.

The fourth line is *lesser Alcaic*, measured by two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Flūmĭnă cōnstĭtĕrīnt ăcūto.

This is called the Horatian stanza, *because Horace delighted in it above all others. More than one third of his odes are in this stanza.*

No. 2. The stanza of four lines. The first three lines are *Sapphic*,† measured by a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and then two trochees; as,

Jām sătĭs tērrīs nĭvĭs ātquĕ dīræ.

The fourth line is *Adonic*, consisting of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Tĕrrŭĭt ūrbēm.

No. 3. The stanza of two lines. The first is *Glyconic*,‡ measured by a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Sīc tē Dīvă pŏtēns Cȳpri.

The second is *Asclepiadēan*,§ consisting of a spondee, two choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Sīc frātrēs Hĕlĕnaē lūcĭdă sīdĕra.

Or thus,

Sīc frātres Hĕlĕnaē lūcĭdă sīdĕră.

No. 4. The stanza of two lines. The first has six iambi, the second has four. But sometimes a spondee, dactyle, anapæst, or tribrăchys, is admitted into the odd places; that is, in the first, third and fifth. A tribrăchys is also found in the even places. The first ten epodes are in this stanza.

No. 5. The stanza of four lines; three Asclepiads and one Glyconic. See No. 3.

* Invented by *Archilŏchus*, a poet of Paros.
† Invented by *Sappho*, the celebrated poetess of Lesbos.
‡ From *Glycon*, the inventor. § From *Asclepias*, the inventor.

No. 6. The stanza of four lines. The first two are *Asclepiadēan*, the third is *Pherecratian*, consisting of a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; as,

Grātō Pȳrrhă sŭb āntrō.

The fourth line is *Glyconic*, No. 3.

No. 7. The stanza of one line. *Asclepiadēan*, measured by a spondee, two choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcēnās ătăvīs ēdĭtĕ rēgĭbŭs.

No. 8. The stanza of two lines. A *hexamĕter*, and the last four feet of a hexamĕter; as,

Laudābūnt ălĭī clārām Rhŏdŏn aūt Mĭtȳlēnēn.
Aūt Ephĕsūm bĭmărīsvĕ Cŏrīnthi.

No. 9. The stanza of one line, measured by a spondee, three choriambi, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Tū nē quaēsīĕrīs scīrĕ nĕfās quēm mĭhĭ quēm tĭbĭ.

No. 10. The stanza of two lines. The first is hexamĕter; the second has four iambi, and sometimes spondees, &c. in the odd places.

No. 11. The stanza of one line, containing six iambi, or other feet in the odd places.

No. 12. The stanza of two lines. The first is measured by a choriambus and bacchīus; the second, by three choriambi and a bacchīus.

Lȳdĭă dīc pĕr ōmnēs,
Tē Dĕōs ōrō Sȳbărīn cūr prŏpĕrēs ămāndō.

Observe, however, in the second line, that the first choriambus is imperfect, having its third syllable long instead of short.*

No. 13. The stanza of two lines; the first line hexamĕter, the second containing six iambi, admitting other feet in the odd places.

* Attilius, a learned grammarian, remarks, that Horace was guilty of this error from being inexpert in this kind of measure, and that, having once begun it, he chose to persevere in it to the end. Some, however, call the first foot an *Epitrĭtus*, others divide it into a trochee and *spondee*.

No. 14. The stanza of two lines; the first a hexamĕter, the second has two dactyles and a cæsūra; as,

Arbŏrĭbŭsquĕ cŏmæ.

No. 15. The stanza of three lines. The first is a hexamĕter; the second has four iambi, admitting spondees in the odd places; and the third line has two dactyles and a cæsūra, as in the preceding No.

No. 16. The stanza of three lines; the first having six iambi, and the third having four, admitting spondees, &c. as before; the middle line has two dactyles and a cæsūra.

No. 17. The stanza of two lines. The first line contains seven feet, of which the first four are either dactyles or spondees; the last three are trochees; as,

Sŏlvĭtŭr ācrĭs hĭēms grātā vĭcĕ vērĭs ēt Făvōni.

The second line has five iambi and a remaining syllable, admitting spondees as before; as,

Trăhūntquĕ sĭccās māchĭnaē cărīnas.

No. 18. The stanza of two lines. The first has three iambi, preceded by a long syllable; as,

Nōn ĕbūr nĕque' aūrĕūm.

The second line has five iambi and a cæsūra, admitting spondees in the odd places.

No. 19. The stanza of three lines. The first two contain three ionics; the third contains four; as,

Mĭsĕrārum' ĕst nĕque' ămōrī dărĕ lūdum.

INDEX TO THE ODES OF HORACE,

EXHIBITING THE FIRST WORDS OF EACH, WITH REFERENCES TO THE PRECEDING NUMBERS, ACCORDING TO WHICH THEY ARE SCANNED.

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation; Capitals; Abbreviations; Division of the Roman Months; Tables of Roman Coins, Weights, and Measures; Golden, Silver, and Brazen Ages of Roman Literature.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points.*

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, Punctum, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthĕsis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, a colon, or a period, as the *sense requires.* The *Parenthĕsis* usually requires a moderate *depression of* the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a *comma.* But these rules are liable to many exceptions.

The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are the *Apostrŏphe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§) *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* [ ]; *Brace* ({); *Ellipsis* (. . . or —); *Caret* (∧); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decius*, or *Decĭmus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintus*, or *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos; as* M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti;* S. C. *Senātûs Consultum;* P. R. *Popŭlus Romānus;* S. P. Q. R. *Senātus Populusque Romānus;* U. C. *Urbs Condĭta;* S. P. D. *Salūtem plurĭmum dicit;* D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedĭcat;* D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque;* H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books A. D. marks *Anno Domĭni*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicīnæ Doctor;** LL. D. *Legum Doctor;* N. B. *Nota benè*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætĕra;* Ap. *Appius;* Cn. *Cneius;* Op. *Opĭter;* Sp. *Spurius;* Ti. *Tiberius;* Sex. *Sextus;* Cos. *Consul;* Coss. *Consŭles;* Imp. *Imperātor;* Impp. *Imperatōres.*

In like manner, in English, Esq. *Esquire;* Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor;* Acct. *Account;* MS. *Manuscript;* MSS. *Manuscripts;* Do. *Ditto;* Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*, that is; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*, for example; v. g. *verbi gratiâ.*

---

* Two capitals in this way denote the plural number; as, L. D. *Legis Doctor; LL. D. Legum Doctor*

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by **Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends;* the fifth day was called the *Nones;* and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides;* except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteenth.

In reck ning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or, by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias*, or *Januarii*, scil. *ante.* The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante;* or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idĭbus Decembrĭbus*, or *Decembris:* the day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante:* the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembrĭbus*, or *Decembris:* the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

> JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;
> Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
> At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
> Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
> Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
> Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
> Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
> Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *November*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprīlis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

In *Leap year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii*, or *Martias;* and hence this year is called *Bissextīlis*.

---

* *Kalends*, or *Calends*, is derived from *Calo*, *-āre*, to call. In the infancy of Rome, a priest summoned the people together in the Capitol, on the first day of the month, or of the *new moon*, and called over the days that intervened between that and the *Nones*. In *later times the Fasti*, or Calendar, used to be put up in public places.

The Nones [*Nonæ*] are so called, because they are nine days from the Ides. Ides, (*Idus*, *from the obsolete verb Iduare*, to divide, because they divide the month nearly equally

TABLE.

	Mar. Mai. Jul. Oct.	Jan. Aug. Dec	Apr. Jun. Sep. Nov.	Februarius.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.	4° Nonas.
3	5 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas.	3 Nonas
4	4 Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	3 Nonas.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Pridie Nonas.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.	8° Idus.
7	Nonæ.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.	7 Idus.
8	8° Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.	6 Idus.
9	7 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.	5 Idus.
10	6 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.	4 Idus.
11	5 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.	3 Idus.
12	4 Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	3 Idus.	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	19° Kalendas.	18° Kalendas.	16° Kalendas.
15	Idus.	18 Kal.	17 Kal.	15 Kal.
16	17° Kalendas.	17 Kal.	16 Kal.	14 Kal.
17	16 Kal.	16 Kal.	15 Kal.	13 Kal.
18	15 Kal.	15 Kal.	14 Kal.	12 Kal.
19	14 Kal	14 Kal.	13 Kal.	11 Kal.
20	13 Kal.	13 Kal.	12 Kal.	10 Kal.
21	12 Kal.	12 Kal.	11 Kal.	9 Kal.
22	11 Kal.	11 Kal.	10 Kal.	8 Kal.
23	10 Kal.	10 Kal.	9 Kal.	7 Kal.
24	9 Kal.	9 Kal.	8 Kal.	6 Kal.
25	8 Kal.	8 Kal.	7 Kal.	5 Kal.
26	7 Kal.	7 Kal.	6 Kal.	4 Kal.
27	6 Kal.	6 Kal.	5 Kal.	3 Kal.
28	5 Kal.	5 Kal.	4 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.
29	4 Kal.	4 Kal.	3 Kal.	
30	3 Kal.	3 Kal.	Pridie Kalendas.	
31	Pridie Kalendas.	Pridie Kalendas.		

The Romans, counting *in* the day on which they dated, called the *second* day before the Kalends, Nones or Ides, *tertio*, and so on. And, as the Kalends are not the last day of the current month, but the first day of the month following; we must take this additional day into consideration in accommodating our calendar to their dates; according to the following method:

RULE. Add *one* to the number of the Nones and Ides, and *two* to the number of days in the month for the Kalends; then subtract the number of the day: e. g. to find the Roman date of the 21st July; to 31, add 2,=33; from this take 21, the day of the month, and the remainder, 12, is the Roman date, 12mo. Kal. Aug.

THE

DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE,

WITH REFERENCE TO THE

PURITY OF THE LANGUAGE.

The *golden* age is generally computed from the time of the second *Punic* war to the latter end of the reign of *Augustus Cæsar*, and comprehends the oldest authors in the *Latin* tongue now extant, excepting the fragments of *Livius Andronicus*; though, for a considerable time after the commencement of this period, the language was but yet forming, and by gradual improvements afterwards arrived at its most perfect state under *Augustus*.

The *silver* age is reckoned to have commenced on the death of *Augustus*, and continued to the end of *Trajan's* reign.

The *brazen* age began at the death of *Trajan*, and lasted till the time that *Rome* was taken by the *Goths*, about four hundred and ten years after the birth of *Christ*.

The *iron* age commenced from the sacking of *Rome* above mentioned; after which, the purity and beauty of the *Latin* tongue declined very much, and many base words were introduced into the language, especially by the ecclesiastical and medical writers, the use of which ought to be carefully avoided by all persons studious of writing in a good *Latin* style; the surest way of obtaining which is carefully to read, make observations upon, and imitate, the purest *Latin* writers, especially those who come the nearest to Cicero, to whose valuable writings this language is very much indebted.

THE LATIN WRITERS,

Arranged according to the Ages in which they flourished.

The golden age begins at the time of the second Punic war, and extends to the latter end of the reign of Augustus; extending from the 514th to the 767th year after the foundation of Rome, or the 14th year of our Lord.

Writers of the GOLDEN AGE.*

P. Nigidius Figŭlus.
C. Decius Laberius.
M. Verrius Flaccus.
P. Syrus.
M. Accius Plautus.
P. Terentius Afer.
M. Portius Cato.
T. Lucretius Carus.
C. Valerius Catullus.
C. Julius Cæsar.
Cornelius Nepos.
M. Tullius Cicĕro.
Sex. Aurelius Propertius.
C. Sallustius Crispus.
M. Terentius Varro.
Albius Tibullus.
Publius Virgilius Maro.
T. Livius.
M. Manilius.
P. Ovidius Naso.
Q. Horatius Flaccus.
C. Pedo Albinovānus.
Gratius Faliscus.
T. Phædrus.
C. Cornificius.
Aulus Hirtius, *or* Oppius. [One of whom completed the Commentaries of Cæsar.]
P. Cornelius Sevērus. [He lived during the reign of Augustus, but the poetry attributed to him is said by critics to have been written by a certain Maximiānus, a man of a weak mind.]

Fragments only of the following lawyers remain in the Digests.

Q. Mutius Scævŏla.
Alfēnus Varus.
M. Antistius Labeo.
Masurius Sabīnus.

Writers of the SILVER AGE.

Cornelius Celsus.
M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
P. Velleius Patercŭlus.
M. Annæus Senĕca.
L. Annæus Senĕca.
M. Annæus Lucānus.
T. Petronius Arbĭter.
C. Plinius Secundus.
C. Silius Italĭcus.
C. Valerius Flaccus.
M. Valerius Martiālis.
C. Julius Solīnus.
D. Junius Juvenālis.
D. Papinius Statius.
Sex. Julius Frontīnus.
C. Cornelius Tacĭtus.
C. Plinius Cæcilius Secundus.
L. Annæus Florus.
C. Suetonius Tranquillus.

Of an uncertain Age.

Q. Curtius Rufus.
Val. Probus, [a grammarian.]
Sulpitia, [a noble Roman poetess, whose satire against Domitian is still extant.]
Scribonius Largus.
L. Fenestella.

---

* Of the following only fragments remain.

Livius Andronīcus.
C. Nævius.
Statius Cæcilius.
Q. Ennius.
M. Pacuvius.
L. Attilius.
C. Lucilius.
L. Afranius.
L. Cornelius Sisenna.

These authors are ranked among the writers of the golden age, but rather on account of their antiquity than their elegance. Their writings contain much wisdom and instruction, but are often deficient in the qualities of a finished style.

Noltenius ranks among the writers of the Silver Age,

Phædrus, [who perhaps more properly belongs to this than to the golden age.]
Valerius Maxĭmus.
Palladius Rutilius Taurus.
Justĭnus.
Aulus Gellius.
Æmilius Macer.
Terentiānus Maurus.

Writers of the BRAZEN AGE.

Aulus Gellius.
L. Apuleius.
Q. Septimius Tertulliānus.
Q. Serēnus Sammonĭcus.
Censorīnus.
Cæcilius Cypriānus.
T. Junius Calpurnius.
M. Aurelius Nemesiānus.
Ælius Spartiānus.
Julius Capitolīnus.
Ælius Lampridius.
Vulcatius Gallicānus.
Trebellius Pollio.
Flavius Vopiscus.
Cœlius Aureliānus.
Flavius Eutropius.
Rhemnius Fannius.
Arnobius Afer.
L. Cœlius Lactantius.
Ælius Donātus.
Commodiānus.
C. Vettus Juvencus.
D. Hilarius.
Julius Firmicus.
Fab. Marius Victorīnus.
Sextus Rufus.
Festus Historĭcus.
Ammiānus Marcellīnus.
Fl. Vegetius Renātus.
Aurel. Theod. Macrobius.
Q. Aurelius Symmăchus.
Dec. Magnus Ausonius.
Sex. Aurelius Victor.
D. Ambrosius.
Aur. Prudentius Clemens.
Cl. Claudiānus.
Marcellus Empirĭcus.
Proba Falconia.

Lawyers, fragments of whose writings remain in the Digests.

Licinius Procŭlus
Neratius Priscus.
P. Juvencius Celsus.
Priscus Jabolēnus.
Domitius Ulpiānus.
Herennius Modestīnus.
Salvius Juliānus.
Julius Caius.
Callistrătus.
Æmilius Papiliānus.
Julius Paulus.
Sextius Pomponius.
Venuleius Saturnīnus.
Ælius Marciānus.
Ælius Gallus, and others.

Laurentius Valla praises exceedingly the pure Latinity of these authors, and affirms, that the Latin language, if it had perished, could be revived by means of the writings of the ancient lawyers alone.

The following are of a somewhat uncertain age.

Valerius Maxĭmus.
Justĭnus.
Fest. Aviānus *or* Aviēnus.
Terentiānus Maurus.
Minutius Felix.
Sosipăter Charisius.

ROMAN COINS REDUCED TO FEDERAL MONEY.

BRASS.

		$	cts.	
*1⅓	A Quadrans,† or teruncius, is equal to	0	00,35	of a cent.
1½	A Triens		,47	"
2	A Semissis, or semi-æs		,71	"
	An As, or æs		1,43	"

SILVER.

2	A Teruncius is equal to	,35	of a cent.
2	A Sembella	,71	"
2½	A Libella	1,43	"
2	A Sestertius, or Nummus, marked L. L. S. or IIS, commonly written HS. . . .	3,57	"
2	A Quinarius, or Victoriātus, marked V. .	7,17	"
	A Denarius, marked X.	14,35	"

GOLD.

An Aureus, or aureus nummus . . . $3 58,79 of a cent.
The gold is reckoned at £4 sterling, ($17 77⅞) and the silver at 5 shillings, ($1 11⅛) an ounce.

GREEK COINS MENTIONED BY ROMAN AUTHORS.

6	An Obŏlus is equal to	2,39	of a cent.
4	A Drachma	14,35	"
25	A Tetradrachma or -um	57,40	"
	according to Livy,	43,05	"
60	A Mina	$14 35,18	"
	A Talentum	$861 11⅛	"

The Romans usually computed sums of money by *sestertii*, or *sestertia*. *Sestertium* is the name of a sum, not of a coin. When a numeral adjective is joined with *sestertii*, it means just so many sesterces; thus, *decem sestertii* = ten sesterces: but when it is joined with *sestertia*, it means so many thousand *sestertii;* thus, *decem sestertia* = 10,000 sesterces.

---

* These numbers show how many of each denomination it takes to make one of the next following, nearly.

† *Quadrans* signifies a *quarter* of the as; *triens*, a *third;* *teruncius*, *three uncius* of brass, (12 of which made an as,) or a silver coin of that value; *libella*, a diminutive of *libra*, being equivalent to the as, which originally weighed a *pound; sembella*, *semi-libella; sestertius*, *semis tertius*, or *three* asses *less a half* (after the Greek idiom ἥμισυ τρίτον, for δύο ἥμισυ); *quinarius*, *five* asses, called also victoriātus, from the *image of Victory*, its usual device; *denarius*, ten asses.

If a numeral adjective of another case is joined with the genitive plural, it denotes so many thousand; as, *decem sestertiûm*, 10,000 sestertii. If a numeral adverb is joined, it denotes so many hundred thousand; as, *decies sestertiûm*, ten hundred thousand sestertii. If the numeral adverb stands by itself, the signification is the same.

ROMAN LONG MEASURES REDUCED TO ENGLISH.

		Eng. Paces.	Ft.	In.	Dec.
4	1 Hordei granum, or barley corn, is equal to	0	0	0	,181 5/16
1 1/3	1 Digĭtus transversus, or finger's breadth	0	0	0	,725 1/4
3	1 Uncia, thumb's breadth, or inch . .	0	0	0	,967
4	1 Palmus minor, or hand's breadth . .	0	0	2	,901
1 1/4	1 Pes, or foot	0	0	11	,604
1 1/5	1 Palmĭpes, a foot and hand's breadth	0	1	2	,505
1 2/3	1 Cubĭtus	0	1	5	,406
2	1 Gradus	0	2	5	,010
125	1 Passus, or pace	0	4	10	,020
8	1 Stadium, or furlong	120	4	.4	,5
	1 Milliāre, mille passus or passuum .	967	0	0	,0

ANCIENT ROMAN LAND MEASURE.

100	Square Roman feet equal . .	1 Scrupŭlum of land.
4	Scrupŭla	1 Sextŭlus.
1 1/5	Sextŭlus	1 Actus.
6	Sextŭli, or 5 Actus	1 Uncia of land.
6	Unciæ	1 Square Actus.
2	Square Actus	1 Jugĕrum.
3	Jugĕra	1 Heredium.
100	Heredia	1 Centuria.

ROMAN MEASURES OF CAPACITY FOR LIQUIDS, REDUCED TO ENGLISH WINE MEASURE.

		Gal.	Pts.	Sol.In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to	0	1/48	0	,117 5/12
1 1/2	1 Cyăthus	0	1/12	0	,469 2/3
2	1 Acetabŭlum	0	1/8	0	,704 1/2
2	1 Quartarius	0	1/4	1	,409
2	1 Hemĭna	0	1/2	2	,818
6	1 Sextarius	0	1	5	,636
4	1 Congius	0	7	4	,942
2	1 Urna	3	4 1/2	5	,33
20	1 Amphŏra	7	1	10	,66
	1 Culeus	143	3	11	,095

The *quadrantal* is the same with the *amphŏra; congiarius, dolium*, and *cadus* mean no certain measure, but a *cask* or *keg*.

The Romans divided the *sextarius*, as well as the *libra*, into twelve equal parts, called *cyăthi;* and therefore they called their *calĭces* either *sextantes, quadrantes*, or *trientes ;* according to the number of *cyăthi* they contained.

The *cyăthus* corresponded, in use and size, nearly to our wine glass.

ROMAN DRY MEASURE REDUCED TO ENGLISH CORN MEASURE.

		Pk.	Gal.	Pt.	Sol.In.	Dec.
4	1 Ligŭla is equal to	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{48}$	0	,01
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1 Cyăthus	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{12}$	0	,04
4	1 Acetabŭlum	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{8}$	0	,06
2	1 Hemĭna	0	0	0 $\frac{1}{2}$	0	,24
8	1 Sextarius	0	0	1	0	,48
2	1 Semi-modius	0	1	0	3	,84
	1 Modius	1	0	0	7	,68

GRECIAN AND ROMAN WEIGHTS REDUCED TO ENGLISH TROY WEIGHT.

		lbs.	oz.	dwts.	grs.
4	1 Lens is equal to	0	0	0	0 $\frac{85}{112}$
3	1 Silĭqua	0	0	0	3 $\frac{1}{28}$
2	1 Obŏlus	0	0	0	9 $\frac{3}{28}$
3	1 Scriptŭlum	0	0	0	18 $\frac{3}{14}$
$1\frac{1}{3}$	1 Drachma	0	0	2	6 $\frac{9}{14}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1 Sextŭla	0	0	3	0 $\frac{6}{7}$
$1\frac{1}{3}$	1 Sicilĭcus or -um	0	0	4	13 $\frac{2}{7}$
3	1 Duella	0	0	6	1 $\frac{5}{7}$
12	1 Uncia	0	0	18	5 $\frac{1}{7}$
	1 Libra	0	10	18	13 $\frac{5}{7}$

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON ROMAN MONEY.

In the preceding tables of money the authority of Dr. Adam, as given in his "Roman Antiquities," has been followed. And perhaps no one could in general be followed with more safety. But on some few points he differs from writers of great respectability. Forcellinus and Eckhel agree in resolving HS, not into LLS, but into IIS ; that is, *two* asses and a half; giving the letters or lines II their usual numerical power This solution seems much more satisfactory than the

former, and is supported by strong probabilities. We find, for example, on ancient coins, HVIR, for DUUMVIR; and an X standing for *ten*, has sometimes a mark drawn across it thus, $\frac{\text{V}}{\Lambda}$; as it is frequently found on the denarius, where it evidently stands for *ten* asses

The following account of the Roman mode of reckoning by sesterces is taken from a treatise on the subject by Mr. Raper, in the Philosophical Transactions, vol. LXI.

"The Romans reckoned by *Asses* before they coined silver, after which they kept their accounts in Sesterces. The word *Sestertius* is an adjective, and signifies two and a half of any substantive to which it refers. In money matters its substantive is either *As*, or *pondus;* and *Sestertius As* is two *Asses* and a half; *Sestertium pondus*, two *pondĕra* and a half [of silver], or 250 *Denarii.*

"When the *Denarius* passed for ten *Asses*, the Sesterce of 2½ *Asses* was a quarter of it; and the Romans continued to keep their accounts in these Sesterces long after the *Denarius* passed for sixteen *Asses;* till, growing rich, they found it more convenient to reckon by quarters of the *Denarius*, which they called *Nummi*, and used the words *Nummus* and *Sestertius*, indifferently, as synonymous terms, and sometimes both together, as, *Sestertius nummus;* in which case, the word *Sestertius*, having lost its original signification, was used as a substantive; for *Sestertius nummus* was not two *Nummi* and a half, but a single *Nummus* of four *Asses*.

"They called any sum under 2000 Sesterces so many *Sestertii*, in the masculine gender; 2000 Sesterces they called *duo* or *bina Sestertia*, in the neuter; so many quarters making 500 *Denarii*, which was twice the *Sestertium;* and they said *dena vicēna*, &c. *Sestertia*, till the sum amounted to a thousand *Sestertia*, which was a million of Sesterces. But, to avoid ambiguity, they did not use the neuter *Sestertium* in the singular number, when the whole sum amounted to no more than 1000 Sesterces, or one *Sestertium*.

"They called a million of Sesterces *Decies nummûm*, or *Decies Sestertiûm*, for *Decies centēna millia nummōrum*, or *Sestertiōrum* (in the masculine gender), omitting *centēna millia*, for the sake of brevity; they likewise called the same sum *Decies Sestertium* (in the neuter gender), for *Decies centies Sestertium*, omitting *Centies* for the reason above mentioned; or simply *Decies*, omitting *centēna millia Sestertiûm*,

or *centies Sestertium;* and with the numeral adverbs ***Decies, Vicies, Centies, Millies***, and the like, either *centēna millia*, or *centies*, was always understood."

The learned, while they agree as to the substance of the foregoing rules, and arrive at the same results in applying them to sums of money mentioned in the classics, yet differ widely with respect to the grammatical construction of the word *sestertius*. Forcellinus* contends, that *sestertium* is always the contracted genitive plural of the masculine *sestertius;* that the use of *sestertia* in the neuter, is confined to the poets, who form the word by a metaplasm, for the sake of the metre; and that, where it is found in printed editions of prose writers, it has been arbitrarily substituted for the sign HS in the original manuscript, which sign stands in every such instance for *sestertiûm*, the genitive plural of *sestertius*.

Eckhel† considers the numeral adverbs *decies*, &c. as taking the nature of neuter substantives, as in the expressions *hoc decies, decies plenum*, &c. which occur in ancient authors; and since *sestertius* is in its nature an adjective (e. g. *sestertius pes, sestertius nummus*), he regards *decies sestertium, decies plenum*, &c. as phrases of similar construction. Hence we find the adjective *sestertius* varied through almost all the cases, as in the following examples: *Decem arbusculārum umbram tricies sestertii summâ compenses.* Val. Max. *Bis et vicies millies sestertium donationĭbus Nero effudĕrat.* Tac. *Sexagies sestertio margarītam mercātus es.* Sueton.

* Totius Latinitatis Lexicon.
† Doctrina Numorum Veterum, vol. v. p. 25.

GENERAL RULES

OF

CONSTRUCTION.*

TO BE LEARNED BY BEGINNERS.

RULE I. CONSTRUE the nominative case first (with the words thereto belonging, if any;) then the verb; then the word or words governed of the verb; lastly the preposition, (if any,) with the word depending on it.

II. A genitive case is usually construed after another noun, or a verbal adjective.

III. An infinitive mode is generally construed after another verb, or a participle.

IV. An adjective or participle, if no other word depend on it, must be construed before its substantive.

V. If an adjective or participle govern a word after it, it must be construed after its substantive.

VI. In an ablative absolute, construe the participle or adjective last, i. e. after the substantive or word with which it agrees.

VII. If two adjectives or participles agree with the same substantive, they must not be construed one before, and the other after that substantive; but either both before, by Rule IV. or both after, by Rule V.

VIII. Let the relative *and its clause* be construed as soon as possible after the antecedent.

---

* *The following* Rules are from Lyne's Latin Primer.

IX. Certain adverbs and conjunctions are construed before the nominative case and verb; i. e. they are construed first in their own clause or sentence: so is the relative *qui;* and so are *quis* the interrogative, *quantus, quicunque,* and such like words, *(with their accompaniments,)* in whatever case.

X. When a question is asked, construe the nominative case *(unless it be the interrogative quis, quotus, quantus, uter, &c.)* after the verb, or else between the English verb and its auxiliary, expressing the auxiliary first.

XI. After the verb *sum,* a verb passive, and a verb neuter, a nominative case is sometimes construed; but then there is usually another nominative case, expressed or implied, to come before.

XII. An adverb is not to be construed with a substantive but rather with a verb, or an adjective, or participle.

XIII. After a preposition, constantly look for an accusative, or ablative case.

XIV. The word governed must be construed after *(generally immediately after)* that word which governs it; except such words as Rule IX. specifies; and even they must be construed after prepositions.

XV. When in a sentence there is no finite verb, but only an infinitive, with a nominative case, expressed or understood, construe such an infinitive like an indicative, or some other finite mode, the nominative being construed in its proper place.

XVI. When there occur an accusative case and an infinitive mode, *quod or ut being left out,* construe the accusative first, with the word *that* before it, because it is there virtually a nominative, and should therefore, with its adjuncts, be construed like a nominative before the verb.

XVII. Words in apposition must be construed as near to each other as possible.

XVIII. All correspondent words must be construed as near to each other as possible.

XIX. Generally construe every word in any clause you have entered on after the nominative case, before you proceed to another clause; beginning each clause, as you pass from one to another, with the nominative case and verb, if there be such in it, and finishing it according to Rule I.

XX. An oblique case, unless it be an adjunct to the nominative, should be construed after the verb; and when more obliques than one depend on the same word, construe accusatives before datives, datives before ablatives, and genitives immediately after the words which govern them.

XXI. When *sum* is put for *habeo*, the English nominative is expressed in Latin by a dative, and the accusative by a nominative: in this case construe the dative first, like a nominative; then the verb, as if declined from *habeo;* and then the nominative after the verb, like an accusative.

XXII. By a very common ellipsis, the verb *sum* may be understood in any mode or tense; when it is so, it must be supplied in construing, as the sense requires.

XXIII. By a most elegant ellipsis, any finite verb may be understood, and inferred by reflection from another verb of like import, actually expressed within the period.

XXIV. Adjectives are often elegantly used as adverbs; and are then joined with verbs in the construction, and rendered adverbially.

THE

POSITION OF WORDS

IN

LATIN COMPOSITION.

THE great mystery of the position of words in the Latin tongue lies principally in these two points, viz.

1. *That the word governed be placed before the word which governs it.*

2. *That the word agreeing be placed after the word with which it agrees.*

These two may be termed the maxims of position; and from them result various rules, which may be conveniently divided into two classes, viz.

1. Rules resulting from the government of words.

2. Rules resulting from the agreement of words.

To which add a third class, viz.

3. Miscellaneous rules, not reducible to either of the two classes foregoing.

RULES OF POSITION.

CLASS I.

RULES RESULTING FROM THE GOVERNMENT OF WORDS.

RULE I. A VERB in the infinitive mode (if it be governed) is usually placed before the word which governs it.

II. A noun in an oblique case is commonly placed before the word which governs it; whether that word be a verb, or another noun-substantive, adjective, or participle.

III. Dependent clauses, as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb, on which such clauses do mainly depend.

IV. The finite verb is commonly placed last in its own clause.

V. Prepositions usually precede the cases governed by them.

CLASS II.

RULES RESULTING FROM THE AGREEMENT OF WORDS

VI. *First Concord.* The finite verb is usually placed after its nominative case, sometimes at the distance of many words.

VII. *Second Concord.* The adjective or participle is commonly placed after the substantive with which it agrees.

VIII. *Third Concord.* The relative is commonly placed after the antecedent with which it agrees.

IX. *Third Concord.* The relative is placed as near to the antecedent as possible.

CLASS III.

MISCELLANEOUS RULES.

X. *Adverbs.* Adverbs are placed before rather than after the words to which they belong.

XI. *Adverbs.* Adverbs are in general placed immediately before the words to which they belong; no extraneous words coming between.

XII. *Igĭtur, autem, enim, etiam,* are very seldom placed first in a clause or sentence. The enclitics, *que, ne, ve,* are *never placed first.*

XIII. *Tamen* is very often and elegantly placed after the first, second, or third word of the clause in which it stands.

XIV. Connected words should go together; that is, they may not be separated from one another by words that are extraneous, and have no relation to them.

XV. *Cadence.* The cadence, or concluding part of a clause or sentence, should very seldom consist of monosyllables.

XVI. So far as other rules and perspicuity will allow, in the arrangement and choice of words, when the foregoing ends with a vowel, let the next begin with a consonant; and *vice versâ.*

XVII. In general a redundancy of short words must be avoided.

XVIII. In general a redundancy of long words must be avoided.

XIX. In general there must be no redundancy of long measures.

XX. In general there must be no redundancy of short measures.

XXI. The last syllables of the foregoing word must not be the same as the first syllables of the word following.

XXII. Many words, which bear the same quantity, which begin alike or end alike, or which have the same characteristic letter in declension or conjugation, (many such words,) may not come together.

THE END.

THE ANCIENT

NAMES OF THE VARIOUS WINDS.

